



Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

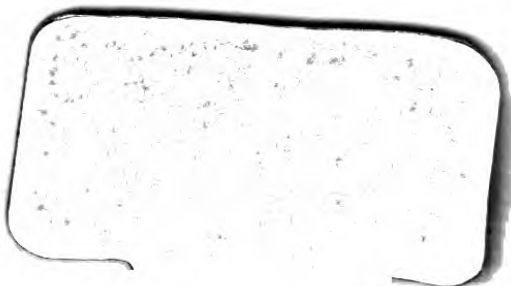
<http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks>



This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.



3 d 10



A
GRAMMAR
OF THE
GERMAN LANGUAGE.

BY
K. F. BECKER, M.D.

THIRD EDITION,
CAREFULLY REVISED AND ADAPTED TO THE USE OF
ENGLISH STUDENTS,
BY
J. W. FRAEDERSDORF, PH. D.
TEACHER OF GERMAN AT SIR R. TAYLOR'S INSTITUTION, OXFORD.

LONDON:
WILLIAMS AND NORGATE,
14, HENRIETTA STREET, COVENT GARDEN.

1855.

2

1
2
3
4



—

P R E F A C E.

In laying before the public a third edition of the late Dr. K. F. Becker's *compendious systematic German Grammar*, it appears necessary to offer a very few preliminary remarks on the plan in general, on which this new edition has been conducted.

As regards the first (i. e. the etymological) part of the work, but little material alteration has been found requisite, whereas in the second, or syntactical part, many portions have been entirely changed, new matter has been introduced, and passages of less importance omitted, the whole in fact, thoroughly revised and as far as was consistent with the nature of the work, frequently remodelled. In some places, where the rules did not appear to be sufficiently copious to convey the author's ideas to the English student, those rules have been extended, some on the other hand, which appeared needlessly diffuse, have been given in a clearer and more concise form. A similar remark

is applicable, in many cases, to the *examples* illustrating the several rules, which have been, both in length and in number, increased or diminished, as the case seemed, to require. In other places, examples have been substituted, different from those given in either of the preceding editions, especially selected from Schiller, Göthe etc. and chiefly from the *prose* writings of those authors, as being, generally speaking, more adapted to the special purpose of training the pupil in the composition of German *prose* — while, on the other hand, quotations from purely *poetical* writers as Uhland and others (however valuable in their kind in other respects), have been for the same reason, in many instances replaced by examples selected from German *prose* writers — at the same time a considerable number of poetical examples has been retained with a view of introducing the pupil gradually to the forms peculiar to German poetry — one of the principal objects however aimed at in the present work, has been to furnish the student, as much as possible, with a number of definitions relating to Dr. Becker's very scientific *grammatical terminology*, chiefly employed in the *syntactical* part of this grammar, in order to make him more easily acquainted with the learned authors system, which is now almost universally adopted in German schools, and by so doing, to avoid, as much as possible, laying before him rules framed in such language as could only be intelligible, and conse-

quently of any practical use, to persons already familiar with Dr. Becker's peculiar grammatical system, instead of first clearly explaining that system to him. — In fine, every thing has been endeavoured, as far as the revision of an existing work admitted, to render this edition as useful as possible to the English student of the German language. As the present work claims the rank of a *compendious*, and at the same time a *complete systematic* Grammar, it has, for various reasons, been thought proper, to let it remain so, without introducing any *exercises* for a more extended practical use. In the latter respect however the pupil is referred (relating to the etymological portion of the grammar) to the Exercises contained in Arnold and Frädersdorff's '*First German Book*', and respecting the second, or syntactical portion, to those of the *Second German Book* *).

*) Containing a compendious etymological vocabulary, in which the words are traced to their *roots*, with *derivatives* and *compounds*, and arranged according to their respective *families*, with quotations from the best German authorities.

Taylor Institution.

Oxford, July 1855.

C O N T E N T S.

PART I.

E t y m o l o g y.

	Pag.
Chap. I. Of the letters and their pronunciation. §§. 1—20	1
I. Vowels p. 2. Accent 3. Long and short vowels 4. II. Consonants 7. Capital letters 9. Reading exercises 10.	
Chap. II. Of the parts of speech. §§. 21—49 .	24
Subject and Predicate p. 24. Notional words and Relational words 25. Relations of Notions to other Notions 26. Compound sentence 28. Re- lations of Notions to the speaker 31. Relation of sentences to the speaker 33. Notional words, Verb 36. Substantive 37. Adjective, Adverbs 38. Relational words, Auxiliary verbs 38. Article, Pronouns 39. Numerals, Prepositions, Conjun- ctions, Relational Adverbs 40. Interjections 41.	
Chap. III. Of the Formation of words. §§. 50—64	41
1. Derivation p. 41. I. Primary Derivatives 42. II. Secondary Derivatives 45. Affixes 47. 2. Composition 58.	
Chap. IV. Of Verbs. §§. 65—95	67
Conjugation p 72. Simple forms of the Verb 76. Compound forms of Conjugation 79. Change of vowel in the Ancient Form 83. Alphabetic list of Verbs of the Ancient Form 85. Use of the Auxiliary Verbs <i>haben</i> and <i>sein</i> 92. Specimen of Conjugation 96.	

	Pag.
Chap. V. Of Substantives. §§. 96—126 . . .	113
Gender p. 114. Declension 122. Of Proper Names 130. Use of the Articles 131. Plural Number 134	
Chap. VI. Of Adjectives. §§. 127—136 . . .	137
Declension p. 138. Comparison 145.	
Chap. VII. Of Pronouns. §§. 137—156 . . .	147
Personal Pronouns p. 148. Demonstrative 149. Interrogative 150. Pronouns contracted with Pre- positions 151. On the Use of Pronouns 151. Per- sonal 151. Reflective 154. Possessive 155. De- monstrative 156. Correlative 159. Interrogative 162. Indefinite Pronouns 163.	
Chap. VIII. Of Numerals. §§. 157—165 . . .	165
Definite p. 166. Indefinite Numerals 169.	
Chap. IX. Of Adverbs. §§. 166—174 . . .	174
Adverbs of Manner p. 175. of Locality 175. of Time 178. of Causality 179. of Intensity 179. of Frequency 180. of Modality 180.	
Chap. X. Of Prepositions. §. 175—177 . . .	181
Original Prepositions p. 181. Derivative Prepo- sitions 183.	
Chap. XI. Of Conjunctions. §§. 178—182 . . .	185
Subordinative p. 185. Co-ordinative Conjunctions 187.	

PART II.

Syntax §. 183	190
Section I. Syntax of the Predicative Combination.	
Chap. I. Of the Subject and Predicate, and their forms. §§. 184—201	191
Construction p. 192. Forms of the Subject 199. Predicate 200. its Forms 201.	
Chap. II. Of Active, Passive, Reflective and Im- personal Verbs. §§. 202—212	207
Use of the Passive Form p. 208. of the Reflective Verb 211. Impersonal Sentences 216.	

Chap. III. Modality of the Predicate. §§. 213 —
 220 219
 Affirmation and Negation p. 219. Possibility and
 Necessity of the Predicate 220.

Chap. IV. Of the Use of the Tenses. §§. 221 —
 225 225

Chap. V. Of the Use of the Moods. §§. 226 — 232 230

Section II. Syntax of the Attributive Combination.

Chap. VI. §§. 233 — 245 239
 Forms of the Attribute p. 239. Attributive Ad-
 jective 240. Apposition 242. Attributive Sub-
 stantive in the Genitive Case 243. Partitive Geni-
 tive 245. Attributive Substantive with a Prepo-
 sition 248. Attributive Combination expressed by
 Compounds 249.

Section III. Syntax of the Objective Combination.

Chap. VII. Classification of Objects. §§. 246 —
 259 251
 Completing and Adverbial Objects p. 251. Com-
 pleting Objects 253. Adverbial Objects 257. Ana-
 lysis 259. Arrangement of Objects 261.

Chap. VIII. Object in the Accusative Case. §§.
 260 — 263 265

Chap. IX. Personal Object in the Dative Case.
 §§. 264 — 273 270

Chap. X. Genitive Object. §§. 274 — 279 . . . 279

Chap. XI. Factitive Object. §§. 280 — 289 . . . 291

Chap. XII. Object of Locality. §§. 290 — 299 . 300
 Locality in a proper sense p. 302. in a meta-
 phorical sense 306. Adverbs of Locality 307.

Chap. XIII. Object of Time. §§. 300 — 308 . 313
 Point of Time p. 310. Duration of Time 314.
 Adverbs of Time 315.

Chap. XIV. Object of Manner. §§. 309 — 310 317

Chap. XV. Object of Causality. §§. 311 — 319 321
 Cause p. 322. The Means, the Materials 323.
 The Argument, the Motive 324. The Purpose
 325.

	Pag ^e
Chap. XVI. Object of Co-existence. §. 320—323	328
Gerund p. 329. Prepositions 330.	
Section IV. Syntax of the Compound Sentence.	
§. 324	333
Chap. XVII. Accessory Sentences. §§. 325—344	334
Substantive p. 336. Adjective 337. Adverbial	
Accessory Sentences 342. of Time 343. of Man-	
ner 346. of Causality 350. of Co-existence 355.	
Chap. XVIII. Of Verbals, and contracted Ac-	
cessory Sentences. §§. 345—350 . . .	356
Infinitive p. 357. Participle 359. Contracted Ac-	
cessory Sentences 359.	
Chap. XIX. Co-ordination. §. 351	364

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

PART I. ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE LETTERS AND THEIR PRONUNCIATION.

The German alphabet contains the same letters as the English:

A	a = a	I	i = j	S	f s = soft s
B	b = b	K	k = k	ß	= sharp s
C	c = c	L	l = l	T	t = t
D	d = d	M	m = m	U	u = u
E	e = e	N	n = n	V	v = v
F	f = f	O	o = o	W	w = w
G	g = g	P	p = p	X	x = x
H	h = h	Q	q = q	Y	y = y
I	i = i	R	r = r	Z	z = z

but some of these letters are pronounced in a manner different from the English.

OBSERVATION. *f* is used in the beginning, *s* in the end of syllables, e. g. *sehr*, *singen*, *le-sen*, *las*, *Haus*, *Häu-ser*, *häu-s-lich*.

I. V o w e l s.

- 2 The sounds of the vowels in German are not materially altered by their position, as is the case in English: they are generally pronounced in the same manner in every position. *)

German grammar divides the vowel sounds into:

1. the *primary* vowels:

a	pronounced like the French a, or E. a	in: father,
e	„ „ „ „	é, „ „ e, a in: lend, name,
i	„ „ „ „	i, „ „ i, e in: bit, we,
o	„ „ „ „	o, „ „ o in: on, rose,
u	„ „ „ „	ou, „ „ u in: bull, rude.

These are either *long* as in: *fam, Hahn, sehr, Meer, den, dir, mir, Ohr, Sohn, Thron, Huhn, Stuhl, du,*

or *short* as in: *Kamm, kann, Karl, Herr, Fell, Welt, toll, Nord, Ort, Schutt, Hund, rund.*

2. the *modified* vowels:

ä	pronounced like the French è,
ö	„ „ „ „ eu,
ü	„ „ „ „ u.

These are *modifications* of the vowels a, o, u, caused by certain transformations of the words, e. g. in the formation of the plural number of many substantives, e. g.

long:	<i>Hahn,</i>	plural	<i>Hähne,</i>
	<i>Sohn,</i>	„	<i>Söhne,</i>
	<i>Stuhl,</i>	„	<i>Stühle,</i>
short:	<i>Kamm,</i>	„	<i>Kämme,</i>
	<i>Ort,</i>	„	<i>Orter,</i>
	<i>Sturm,</i>	„	<i>Stürme.</i>

*) Different languages always differ even in the pronunciation of the same sounds, and it is not possible to explain the peculiar sounds of the vowels of one language, by comparing them with those of another. The following directions concerning the pronunciation of German vowels, accordingly, are not to be considered as sufficient, and the learner in this respect must be referred to oral instruction.

3. the *diphthongs* :

ei*) pronounced like the E. y in: my, why,

eu " " " " oy in: boy,

au " " " " ou in: now, how,

au is modified into äu, which is pronounced like eu.

Diphthongs are *long*, e. g. mein, dein, sein, neu, Heu, treu, Baum, Traum, Bäume, Träume.

OBSERVATION 1. The German letter η (ypsilon) is never used as the sign of a consonant like the English y, but is always a vowel. Instead of the English y e. g. in such words as year, yes, the German language uses j, as in Jahr, ja. The letter η only occurs at present in words of Greek origin, and then takes the sound of ü, e. g. Tyrann tyrant, Mythologie mythology. Formerly the letter η was used in some German words instead of i, principally in the diphthong ei, eh (seyn to be, bey at, instead of sein, bei). But this mode of spelling has been entirely rejected in modern German grammar.

OBSERVATION 2. The diphthong ai occurs in a few words only (der Main the river Main, der Hain the forest, die Waise orphan, der Aain grass-plot, Baiern Bavaria), and is pronounced almost like ei or like the E. aye

The only difference in the pronunciation of German vowels arises from their being

- a. either accented or unaccented,
- b. either long or short.

a. **A c c e n t.**

The accent of German words is regulated according to the same principles by which that of English words of Anglo-saxon origin is regulated. The primitive syllable, which is in general the first syllable of the word, takes the *principal accent*, whilst prefixes and affixes take either the *subordinate accent* or none at all, e. g.

*) This diphthong ei is not to be confounded with ie which is no diphthong, but denotes a simple sound viz. that of long i, e. g. fiel is pronounced like feel, vier like fear

Vater father,	erstaunen astonish,
Wetter weather,	erwachen awake,
golden golden,	beweinen bewail,
mächtig mighty,	Erlaubniß allowance,
Freundschaft friendship,	Unternehmer undertaker,
Christenthum christendom,	Unternehmung undertaking.

In some *verbs* compound with a *preposition*, different meanings are conveyed distinguished by the circumstance of the *accent* being placed on the *preposition* or on the *verb*, e. g.

Ü'bergehen, to go over, cross (with *accent* or the *prepos.*). Ueberge'hen, to omit, pass unnoticed (with *accent* on the *verb.*).

Um'gehen, to go round. Umgé'hen, to evade etc.

In particular, all terminations and affixes are *unaccented*, except: lei, lein, ling, heit, feit, schaft, thum, sal, ung, bar, sam, haft, icht, which take the semi-accent, and ei, iren, which take the principal accent.

The prefixes be, er, ver, ent, zer and the augment ge (see §. 51) are *unaccented*; the prefixes durch, hinter, über, unter, um, wider, miß, voll, are *semi accented*, or take the *principal accent*, according to their different value (see §. 63); all other prefixes take the *principal accent*.

The personal pronouns, articles, and the monosyllable forms of the verb sein (to be) are *unaccented*. All other auxiliary verbs, pronouns, prepositions, and conjunctions are *semi-accented*.

b. Long and short vowels.

4 All diphthongs are *long*.

All unaccented vowel are *short*.

A simple vowels accented is *short* when followed by a double consonant or two consonants originally belonging to the same syllable*).

*) If the connexion of two consonants is effected merely by a combination of two words, this has no influence upon the preceding vowel: thus the vowel is long in the first part of the following compound words: Tagwerk days-work,

Exceptions 1. The letter *h*, when connected with an other consonant, is only a sign of length; the preceding vowel accordingly is long, e. g. *Wuth* rage, *Rath* council, *roth* red etc.

2. The following words have a long vowel, although followed by two consonants:

Art kind,	Herd hearth,	todt dead,
Bart beard,	Pferd horse,	Bogt bailiff,
zart tender,	Schwert sword,	Mond moon,
Arzt physician,	Werth value,	Trost consolation,
Warze wart,	werth worth,	wüßt waste,
Magd maid-servant,	Erde earth,	Wüste desert,
	Heerde flock,	husten to cough,
	werden to become,	Obst fruit.

Double consonants.

If a short vowel is followed by a single consonant, 5 this consonant is in writing always *doubled*.

Long vowel.	Short vowel.
Ram, Rāme,	Ramm, Rämme,
Stahl, stählen,	Stall, Ställe,
stehlen, reden,	stellen, retten,
Beet, beten,	Bett, betten,
Stiel, ihm,	still, nimm,
rieth, schien,	ritt, Schiff,
Sohn, schon,	Sonne, Lonne,
Bruder, Brüder etc.	Mutter, Mütter etc.

It must be observed that

ck	is the double	k , e. g.	Glück, Rock, Stock,
ß	" "	"	Bliß, Rußen, trocken,
ff	" "	"	wissen, lassen, essen,

Tobbett death-bed, Blutdurst thirst after blood. The same is the case, if the second consonant belongs to an affix or termination, added by inflection or derivation: the preceding vowel is then long, e. g. in lieblich lovely, geliebt loved (from lieben), Geburt birth (from gebären to bear), Fahrt driving (from fahren to drive).

and that **ff** is not written but when followed by a vowel, e. g. Fluß plur. Flüße, Faß plur. Fässer, Haß, haßen, haßte.

ch and **sch** which express simple sounds (§. 7) must be considered as simple consonants: still they are never doubled in writing, although **ch** is often and **sch** always preceded by a short vowel, e. g. Loch, Bach, mach, Fisch, Tisch, waschen.

Consonants are not doubled in unaccented syllables and words e. g. ich bin I am, er hat he has, an at, von from, mit with, ob if etc. and in the adverbs hin hence, weg away, ab off, which commonly take the accent.

Signs of length.

6 Although it seems sufficient to mark short vowels in the manner already pointed out, German orthography, in a great many instances, distinguishes long vowels by particular *signs of length*, i. e. by letters which are not pronounced, but only mark the length of the vowel to which they are joined. This is done:

1. By *doubling* the vowels a, e, o in the following words:

Mal eel,	Schnee snow,	Moor moor, fen,
Haar hair,	See sea,	Moos moss,
Baar pair,	Klee clover,	Boot boat,
Schaar troop, band,	Heer army,	and some words
Saat seed,	leer empty,	less usual.
Saal saloon,	Meer sea,	
Staat state,	Speer spear,	
	Bett garden-bed,	
	Seele soul,	

2. By placing the vowel **e**, after long **i**, e. g. Bier beer, hier here (except in: mir to me, dir to thee, ihm to him, ihn him, ihnen to them or to you, wir we, ihr you or to her).

3. By placing the letter **h** after all other vowels,
e. g.

Jahr year,	mehr more,	Sohn son,	Ruhm glory,
Hahn cock,	sehr very,	Ohr ear,	Huhn hen,
wahr true,	stehen to stand,	Kohle coal,	ruhen to rest.

II. C o n s o n a n t s.

The consonants in German are classed 1) according to the degree of their more or less perfect articulation, into *Semi-consonants*, *Liquids*, and *Mutes*; and 2) according to the organs, by the action of which they are formed, into *Palatal*, *Lingual*, and *Labial* sounds. The following table exhibits this classification of consonants and the English sounds, corresponding to them:

	Palatal	Lingual	Labial
Semi-consonants:	i (y)	ſ (soft s) ſch (sh)	w (v)
Liquids:	ng (ng)	n (n) r (r) l (l)	m (m)
Mutes			
a. Tenués:	t (k) q (q)	t or th (t)	p (p)
b. Mediae:	g (g, hard)	d (d)	b (b)
c. Aspirate:	ch (Scotch ch)	ß (sharp s) t (ts)	f or v (f).

All consonants, used in the spelling of German words, must be pronounced in reading or speaking, e. g. Knabe, Knecht, Licht, Halm, Löwe, Wunde, Freundschaft, jetzt etc. The letter **h** (h) alone is silent, when standing at the end of words or between two vowels; thus the words froh glad, nah near, nahen to approach, blühen to bloom, are pronounced like fro, na, na-en, blü-en.

The sound of **th** differs in no respect from that of t, e. g. the words der Thau dew, der Thon clay, are pronounced like daß Tau rope, der Ton tone. The sound of the English th is not known in German.

9 The soft consonants **b**, **d**, **s**, when employed as *final* consonants are *hardened*, and pronounced

b	like p,	e. g. gab, lieb,	like gap, liep,
d	„ t,	Bad, Tod,	„ Bat, Tot,
s	„ ß,	daß, Graß,	„ daß, Graß,

g (*final*) when preceded by one of the vowels, assumes a guttural sound, e. g.

Tag day,
 Weg way, slightly guttural only,
 ewig eternal „ „ „
 Trog trough,
 Betrug deceit.

When the preceding long vowel is shortened by derivation or inflection, the media is frequently changed into a tenuis, as in *fliegen*, *flüch*, *leiden*, *litt*, *sieden*, *sott*. When, at the same time, the tenuis *t* is added to the media as a termination, the media is commonly changed into the corresponding aspirate, as in *Schlacht*, *Bucht*, *Macht*, *möchte*, from *schlagen*, *biegen*, *mögen*; and *Gift*, *Schrift*, *Trift*, from *geben*, *schreiben*, *treiben*. In the same way the semi-consonant *h* is frequently changed into *ch*, as in *Flucht*, *Gesicht*, *Geschichte*, from *fliehen*, *sehen*, *geschehen*.

10 The aspirata **ch** has two different sounds when standing after *a*, *o*, *u*, and when after *e*, *i*. There is in E. no sound similar to that of the aspirata *ch*, but it entirely corresponds with that of the Scotch and Irish *ch* and *gh* in *loch* or *lough* (lake), *laigh* (low). When, in words of Greek origin, *ch* stands as initial before *a*, *o*, *u*, or before a consonant, as in *Chor*, *Christ*, *Chronik*, it is sounded like *f*. In words originally German, *ch* is sounded like *f* only when it stands before *s* (*s*), as in *Wachs*, *wachsen*, *Ochs*, *Ochsen* (like *wax*, *oxen*); provided the *s* does not belong to a termination, or to another part of a compound, as in *wach=sam*, *Nach=sucht*, *nach=sehen*, *Buch=s* (*Buches*).

The letters **z** and **ß** and their reduplications **zz** and **ff** are to be pronounced as hard as possible, **z** and **ß**

like *ts* in *wits*, *writs*; *ß* and *ff* like *ss* in *kiss*, *loss*, *less*, e. g. *Zeit* time, *Zwerg* dwarf, *zerreißen* to tear, *Wiß* wit, *zerrißen* torn.

The sound of **v** does not differ from that of *f*. It ¹¹ is employed only as an initial letter in the prefix *ver*, the prepositions *von* of, *vor* before, and in

Vater father,	Veilchen violet,	Better cousin,
Vieh cattle,	viel much,	vier four,
Vließ fleece,	Vogel bird,	Vogt bailiff,
Volk people,	voll full,	

and in their Compounds and Derivatives.

In some words the initial *f* is sharpened to *ff*, e. g. *Pfund* pound, *Pfeife* pipe.

In words of Greek origin, the sound of *f* is expressed by *ph*, as in English.

The semi-consonant **j** corresponds to the English *y*, ¹²

"	"	"	w	"	"	"	v, e. g.
Jahr year,				jung young,			
Joch yoke,				ja yes,			
Wein wine,			(pron. like vine),				
Werk work,			" "	verk,			
Wunder wonder,			" "	vunder.			

The sounds of the E. *j* and *w* do not occur in German.

The sound of **z** is almost as soft as that of the Engl. *z* in *zone*, *zeal* (except the final *s* which is hardened, §. 9), e. g. *Sohn* son, *Sonne* sun, *Seele* soul, *reisen* to travel, *Haus* house, *Gras* grass etc.

Capital Letters

are used in German in all those cases, in which they ¹³ are employed in English. Capital letters are more-over used in the beginning of

1. all substantives and all words used substantively,
2. all pronouns used in addressing persons.

The pronoun *ich* I, on the contrary, is written with a capital initial after a full stop only.

READING EXERCICES.

- 14 Der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt.
 Man devises, God disposes.
 (Litr. Man thinks, God guides. *)
- Die Jugend vergeht, die Tugend besteht.
 Youth fades, virtue endures.
- Noth kennt kein Gebot.
 Necessity knows (= has) no law.
- Noth bricht Eisen.
 Necessity will break iron.
- Neue Besen kehren gut.
 New brooms sweep clean (well).
- Der Abend krönt den Tag.
 The evening crowns the day.
- Übung macht den Meister.
 Practice makes perfect.
 (Litr. makes the [i. e. any one] master.)
- Ein gebranntes Kind scheut das Feuer.
 A burnt child dreads the fire.
- Gelegenheit macht Diebe.
 Opportunity makes thieves.
- Ein edles Herz glänzt hell und hold,
 Ein gutes ist gediegenes Gold.
 A noble heart shines bright and gently,
 A good heart is solid gold.
- Noth lehrt beten.
 Need teaches to pray.

*) The French: 'L'homme propose, Dieu dispose'.

Salz und Brot macht Wangen roth.
Salt and bread make cheeks red.

Aller Anfang ist schwer. 1
All beginning is difficult.

Die Kunst ist lang, das Leben ist kurz.
Art is long, life is short.

Stille Wasser sind tief.
Still waters are (= run) deep.

Schweigen ist nicht immer gut.
Silence is not always good.

Ein Wolf im Schlaf fängt nie ein Schaf.
A wolf in sleep [a sleeping wolf] will never
catch a sheep.

Ein tröstliches Wort ist des Gemüthes Speise.
A consolatory word is food for the mind.

Man soll den Tag nicht vor dem Abend loben.
One must not praise the day before night.

Ein guter Nachbar ist ein edles Kleinod.
A good neighbour is a precious jewel.

Eine böse Zunge richtet oft viel Unglück an*
An evil tongue often causes much misfortune.

Gestrenge Herren regieren nicht lange.
Severe masters do not govern long.

An Gottes Segen ist Alles gelegen.
Every thing depends on God's blessing.

Morgenstunde hat Gold im Munde.
Early rising brings wealth.
(Litr. Morning hour has gold in [its] mouth.**)

Armuth ist keine Schande.
Poverty is no disgrace.

*) Sep. from anrichten, to produce.

***) Answering to the Engl. prov.:
Early to bed and early to rise,
Makes a man healthy and wealthy and wise.

Bei Nacht sind alle Katzen grau.

By night all cats are grey.

Jeder ist seines Glückes Schmied.

Every man is the architect of his own fortune.

Des Volkes Stimme ist Gottes Stimme.

The people's voice is God's voice.

Geduld überwindet Alles.

Patience overcomes every thing.

Wer rasch steigt, fällt plötzlich.

He who mounts rapidly, falls suddenly.

16 Wer bald gibt, gibt doppelt.

He who gives quickly, gives double*).

Wenn die Noth am größten ist, ist Gott am nächsten.

When need is at the greatest (= at highest), God is nearest.

Leichter träget, was er träget,

Wer Geduld zur Bürde leget.

He can carry what he bears with greater ease, who adds patience to his burdens.

Mit einem Herren steht es gut,

Der, was er befohlen, selber thut.

That master fares well who himself does what he commands.

Ehre ist des Mannes Herz,

Demuth führt uns himmelwärts;

Strenge, die sich selbst bezwingt,

Schafft im Leben, was gelingt;

Treu' umfaßt sie alle drei,

Lieb' und Frieden noch dabei.

Honour is the soul (= heart) of man,

Humility guides us heavenwards;

Severity which conquers itself**),

*) Lat. : Bis dat, qui dat cito.

**) A reflexive v., litr. 'conquers itself'; the true meaning is: 'severity by which we conquer ourselves' (i. e. our passions).

Produces in life, what(ever) succeeds *),
 Truth embraces (or comprehends) them all three,
 With love and peace in addition.

Wer Freunde sucht, ist sie zu finden werth;
 Wer keinen hat, hat keinen noch begehrt.

He who seeks friends, deserves to find them. He
 who has none, has never wished for any.

Geld bringt Gunst, aber nicht Kunst.
 Money brings favour, but not skill.

Gott läßt uns wol sinken, aber nicht ertrinken.
 God suffers us to sink, but not to be drowned.

Die Wahrheit richtet sich nicht nach uns, sondern wir
 müssen uns nach ihr richten.

Truth does not conform herself to us, but we
 must conform ourselves to her.

Wer da redet, was ihn gelüstet, der muß oft hören, was
 er nicht gern höret.

He who speaks whatever he likes, must often
 hear that which he does not like.

Epheu und ein zärtlich Gemüth
 Heftet sich an und grünt und blüht;
 Kann es weder Stamm noch Mauer finden,
 Es muß verdorren, es muß verschwinden. Goethe.

A tender heart is like ivy, it cleaves (to the ob-
 ject of its affection) and puts forth leaves and blos-
 soms; but if it finds neither tree nor wall, it speedily
 withers away.

*) 'Was gelingt' litr. 'what succeeds', i. e. 'whatever is
 productive of success'.

- 17 Ach, was soll der Mensch verlangen?
Ist es besser ruhig bleiben?
Klammernd fest sich anzuhängen *)?
Ist es besser, sich zu treiben **)?
Soll er sich ein Häuslein bauen?
Soll er unter Zelten leben?
Soll er auf die Felsen trauen?
Selbst die festen Felsen beben.
Eines schickt sich nicht für Alle.
Sehe Jeder, wie er's treibet †)!
Sehe Jeder, wo er bleibe ††),
Und wer steht, daß er nicht falle!

Goethe.

Geh! gehorche meinen Winken,
Ruhe deine jungen Tage,
Lerne zeitig klüger sein!
Auf des Glückes großer Wage
Steht die Zunge selten ein.
Du mußt steigen oder sinken,
Du mußt herrschen und gewinnen,
Oder dienen und verlieren,
Leiden oder triumphiren,
Amboß oder Hammer sein.

Goethe.

Lied eines alten schwäbischen Ritters an seinen Sohn.

Sohn, da hast du meinen Speer,
Meinem Arm ist er zu schwer;
Nimm den Schild und dies Geschöß,
Lummle du fortan mein Roß.

*) Littr. 'To adhere to, by closely embracing (anything)'.

***) 'To urge oneself speedily on'.

†) Littr. 'To drive' (= how he carries on his own business).

††) Littr. 'To remain' (= take his stand, or take up his position).

Ah, what shall man wish for?
Is it better to remain quiet
in confiding trustfulness?
Or is it better to wander around?

Shall he build himself a cabin?
Shall he live under tents?
Shall he place his trust in rocks?
Even the strong rocks tremble.

The same thing does not suit every body.
Let each see to his own actions,
each to his own station,
and let him who stands, take heed lest he fall.

Go, follow my advice*),
profit by your youth,
and learn betimes to be wise.
In the great balance (scales) of fortune
the tongue is rarely steady.
Thou must rise or fall,
rule and win,
or serve and lose,
suffer or triumph,
be the anvil or the hammer.

Song of an old Suabian knight to his son.

Son, there hast thou my spear,
it is too heavy for my arm;
take the shield and this dart,
manage thou henceforth my (battle) steed.

*) Litr. 'my nods'.

Siehe, dieses greise Haar,
 Deckt der Helm schon fünfzig Jahr;
 Jedes Jahr hat eine Schlacht,
 Schwert und Streitart stumpf gemacht.

Herzog Rudolf hat dies Schwert,
 Art und Kolbe mir verehrt;
 Denn ich blieb dem Herzog hold
 Und verschmähte Heinrichs Gold.

Für die Freiheit floß das Blut
 Seiner Rechten; Rudolfs Muth
 That mit seiner linken Hand
 Noch dem Franken Widerstand.

Nimm die Wehr und wappne dich!
 Kaiser Konrad rüstet sich.
 Sohn, entlaste mich des Harms
 Ob der Schwäche meines Arms.

Zücker nie umsonst dies Schwert
 Für der Väter freien Herd!
 Sei behutsam auf der Wacht,
 Sei ein Wetter in der Schlacht!

Immer sei zum Kampf bereit,
 Suche stets den wärmsten Streit!
 Schone deß, der wehrlos fleht,
 Haue den, der widersteht!

Wenn dein Hause wankend steht,
 Ihm umsonst das Fähnlein weht,
 Troge dann, ein fester Thurm,
 Der vereinten Feinde Sturm.

Deine Brüder fraß das Schwert,
 Sieben Knaben, Deutschlands werth;
 Deine Mutter härmte sich
 Stumm und starrend, und verblich.

Einsam bin ich nun und schwach;
 Aber, Knabe, deine Schmach

See, the helmet covers
this white hair for fifty years;
every year has a battle
blunted sword and battle-axe.

Duke Rodolf has this sword,
axe and club to me presented;
for I remained faithful to the Duke,
and despised Henry's gold.

The blood of his right hand for freedom flow'd;
with his left hand
Rodolph's courage still
opposed the Frank (Henry).

Take the weapon and arm thyself!
Emperor Conrad equips himself.
Son, unburden me of sorrow
on account of the weakness of my arm.

Never draw this sword in vain
for the free hearth of thy fathers!
Be careful when upon the watch,
be a tempest in the battle.

Always be ready for the combat,
constantly seek the warmest struggle!
Spare him who unarmed implores,
strike him who resists!

If thy party waver*),
if in vain their banner waves,
then defy, like a strong tower,
the storm of the combined enemy.

The sword devoured thy brothers,
seven youths, worthy of Germany;
thy mother grieved,
silent and aghast, and died.

Lonely am I now and weak,
but, boy, thy dishonour

*) Littr. 'When the crowd stands wavering'.

Wär' mir herber siebenmal,
Denn der sieben Andern Fall.

Drum so scheue nicht den Tod,
Und vertraue deinem Gott!
So du kämpfest ritterlich,
Freut dein alter Vater sich.

Stolberg.

Fabeln von Lessing.

Der Adler.

18 Man fragte den Adler: Warum erziehst du deine Jungen so hoch in der Luft?

Der Adler antwortete: Würden sie sich, erwachsen, so nahe zur Sonne wagen, wenn ich sie tief an der Erde erzöge?

Der Wolf und der Schäfer.

Ein Schäfer hatte durch eine grausame Seuche seine ganze Heerde verloren. Das erfuhr der Wolf, und kam seine Condolenz abzustatten.

Schäfer, sprach er, ist es wahr, daß dich ein so grausames Unglück betroffen (hat)? Du bist um deine ganze Heerde gekommen? Die liebe, fromme, fette Heerde! Du dauerst mich, und ich möchte blutige Thränen weinen.

Habe Dank, Meister Isgrim, versetzte der Schäfer. Ich sehe, du hast ein sehr mitleidiges Herz.

Das hat er auch wirklich, fügte des Schäfers Hund hinzu, so oft er unter dem Unglück seines Nächsten selbst leidet.

Das Ross und der Stier.

Auf einem feurigen Rosse flog stolz ein Knabe daher. Da rief ein wilder Stier dem Rosse zu: Schande! von einem Knaben ließ' ich mich nicht regieren!

Aber ich, versetzte das Ross. Denn was für Ehre könnte es mir bringen, einen Knaben abzuwerfen?

were seventimes more bitter to me
than the fall of the seven others.

Do not then shun death,
but trust in thy God!
If thou fightest warrior like,
thy old father will be rejoiced.

FABLES BY LESSING.

The eagle.

The eagle was asked: Why do you bring up your 18
young ones so high in the air?

The eagle answered: Would they, when grown up,
venture so near the sun, if I were to bring them up
below, near the earth?

The wolf and the shepherd.

A shepherd had lost all his flock by a grievous dis-
ease. The wolf heard this, and came to offer his
condolence.

Shepherd, said he, is it true, that so cruel a cala-
mity has befallen you? You are deprived of your
whole flock? The dear, harmless, fat flock! I pity
you, and I could shed tears of blood.

I thank you, master wolf, replied the shepherd. I
see, you have a very compassionate heart.

That he has indeed, added the shepherd's dog, as
often as he himself suffers by the misfortunes of his
neighbour.

The horse and the bull.

A daring boy was galloping proudly along on a
fiery horse. A wild bull cried out to the horse: Shame!
I would not let myself be governed by a boy!

But I will, replied the horse. What honour could
it bring me to throw a boy?

Die Sperlinge.

- 19 Eine alte Kirche, welche den Sperlingen unzählige Nester gab, ward ausgebessert. Als sie nun in ihrem neuen Glanze da stand, kamen die Sperlinge wieder, ihre alten Wohnungen zu suchen. Allein sie fanden sie alle vermauert. Zu was, schrien sie, taugt denn nun das große Gebäude? Kommt, verlaßt den unbrauchbaren Steinhaufen!

Der Fuchs und der Storch.

Erzähle mir doch etwas von den fremden Ländern, die du alle gesehen hast, sagte der Fuchs zu dem weitgereisten Storch.

Hierauf fing der Storch an, ihm jeden Sumpf und jede feuchte Wiese zu nennen, wo er die schmackhaftesten Würmer und die fettesten Frösche geschmaust hatte.

Sie sind lange in Paris gewesen, mein Herr. Wo speiset man da am besten? Was für Weine haben Sie da am meisten nach Ihrem Geschmacke gefunden?

Herkules.

Als Herkules in den Himmel aufgenommen wurde, machte er seinen Gruß unter allen Göttern der Juno zuerst. Der ganze Himmel und Juno erstaunte darüber. Deiner Feindin, rief man ihm zu, begegnest du so vorzüglich? Ja, ihr selbst, erwiederte Herkules. Nur ihre Verfolgungen sind es, die mir zu den Thaten Gelegenheit gegeben, womit ich den Himmel verdient habe.

Der Olymp billigte die Antwort des neuen Gottes, und Juno ward versöhnt.

Der Wolf auf dem Todtbette.

- 20 Der Wolf lag in den letzten Zügen und schickte einen prüfenden Blick auf sein vergangenes Leben zurück. Ich bin freilich ein Sünder, sagte er; aber doch, hoffe ich, keiner von

The sparrows.

An old church, which afforded innumerable nests 19 to the sparrows, was under repair. When it stood there in its new splendour, the sparrows came back to seek for their old habitations. But they found them all built up. Of what use now is that large edifice, cried they, come, leave the useless mass of stones!

The fox and the stork.

Tell me, if you please, something about all the foreign lands, which you have seen, said the fox to the far travelled stork.

Whereupon the stork began to mention to him every pool and every moist meadow, where he had tasted the most savoury worms and the fattest frogs.

You have been staying at Paris a long time, Sir. Where did you get the best dinners? Which wine did you find most to your taste there?

Hercules.

When Hercules was received into heaven, he greeted Juno the first of all the Gods. The whole heaven and Juno were astonished. Meetest thou thine enemy, cried they to him, with such preference? Yes, replied Hercules, it is only her persecutions which have given me an opportunity of performing those acts by which I have merited heaven.

Olympus applauded the answer of the new god, and Juno was appeased.

The wolf on his death bed.

The wolf was lying in his last extremities and cast 20 an examining glance on his past life. I am indeed a sinner, said he, but still, I hope, not one of

den größten. Ich habe Böses gethan, aber auch viel Gutes. Einstmals, erinnere ich mich, kam mir ein blökendes Lamm, welches sich von der Heerde verirrt hatte, so nahe, daß ich es leicht hätte erwürgen können; und ich that ihm nichts. Zu eben dieser Zeit hörte ich die Spöttereien und Schmähungen eines Schafes mit der bewundernswürdigsten Gleichgültigkeit an, ob ich schon keine schüzenden Hunde zu fürchten hatte.

Und das alles kann ich dir bezeugen, fiel ihm Freund Fuchs, der ihn zum Tode bereiten half, ins Wort. Denn ich erinnere mich noch gar wohl aller Umstände dabei. Es war zu eben der Zeit, als du dich an dem Beine so jämmerlich würgtest, das dir der gutherzige Kranich hernach aus dem Schlunde zog.

Der Esel und der Wolf.

Ein Esel begegnete einem hungrigen Wolfe. Habe Mitleiden mit mir, sagte der zitternde Esel; ich bin ein armes krankes Thier; sieh nur, was für einen Dorn ich mir in den Fuß getreten habe!

Wahrhaftig, du dauerst mich, versetzte der Wolf; und ich finde mich in meinem Gewissen verbunden, dich von diesen Schmerzen zu befreien.

Raum war das Wort gesagt, so war der Esel zerrissen.

the greatest. I have done what is evil, but also much that is good. Once upon a time, I remember, a bleating lamb, which had strayed from the herd, came so near me, that I could easily have despatched it; but I did it no injury. Just at the same time I heard the reproaches and abuse of a sheep with the most admirable indifference, although I had no protecting dogs to fear.

I can bear witness of all that, said his friend the fox, who came to prepare him for death. For I remember very well all the circumstances attendant on it. It was at the very time that you were so pitifully throttled by the bone, which the goodhearted crane afterwards drew out of your throat.

The ass and the wolf.

An ass met a hungry wolf. Have pity on me, said the ass, trembling; I am a poor sick animal; see what a thorn I have got in my foot!

Really, I pity you, replied the wolf; and I find myself bound in conscience, to relieve you from your pain.

These words were scarcely spoken, when the ass was torn to pieces.

CHAPTER II. OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

21 Speech is the expression of thoughts by words. A thought expressed by words is a *Sentence*. Sentences are either

1. *simple*, as those in §. 14 and 15, or
2. *compound*, i. e. consisting of two or more simple sentences joined together, as those in §. 16.

A simple sentence, such as any of the preceding: Der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt. Jugend vergeht, Jugend besteht etc. (§. 14), consists of *two component parts*, viz:

1. The *Subject*, i. e. the person or thing spoken of, e. g. Mensch (man); Jugend (youth); Jugend (virtue) etc.

2. The *Predicate*, i. e. that which is affirmed of the subject, e. g. denkt (thinks); lenkt (guides, disposes); vergeht (perishes, fades) etc.

22 The *subject* as well as the *predicate* may be either *simple* or *compound*; e. g. in the examples above (§. 21) Mensch, Gott, Jugend etc., are *simple* subjects, and denkt, lenkt, vergeht etc. are *simple* predicates. The *subject* is compound when preceded by an adjective, as edles Herz — a noble heart (§. 14), or when it has a genitive dependent on it, as: Gottes Stimme. The *predicate* is compound when it is preceded or followed by an adverb, as: rasch steigt, fällt plötzlich (§. 15).

1. *Simple subject and simple predicate.*

The simple subject is expressed by a *substantive* (as above), e. g. Mensch, Gott etc.

The simple predicate is expressed by a *verb*, e. g. denkt, lenkt etc.

A *substantive* is a word, denoting either a person or thing, as: Mensch (man), Eisen (iron), or any *abstract quality*, such as: Jugend (youth), Jugend (virtue).

A verb is a word which affirms and generally conveys the notion of an action performed by the subject, or represents the subject in a *passive* state.

2. *Compound subject and compound predicate.*

Substantives and verbs express *notions*, i. e. ideas ²³ of beings or actions, formed in the mind. They are the essential parts of speech, and are termed *Notional words*. All notional words, however, express ideas in a *general* way, without distinguishing the particular species or individual being, or the particulars of an action. If therefore a *particular* species or individual or the particulars of an action are to be expressed, we add to the notional word other words *individualizing* its signification, in order to *limit* its general extent to a particular species or individual being or to a particular action, by expressing the particular *relations* which the notion bears either to *other notions* or to *the person speaking*. Thus, *child*, is a general term to denote the whole of a species; in order to define the individual, the child of which we are speaking, we must say: *The young child*, or, *the child of my brother*, *my child*, *this child* etc. The verbs, *to read*, *to go* etc., are *general terms* denoting such actions; we must therefore add, *what* the child reads, *where* it goes etc. — *reads a novel*, *goes to church*, *will go home* etc.

Thus the subject as well as the predicate is often found to be *compound*, and we have to distinguish from the substantive (subject) and verb (predicate) those accessory parts, which are added to explain in a more distinct manner the particular *Relations*, which the notions are conveying.

I. *to other notions*,

II. *to the person speaking*.

These relations are expressed

a. by **Relational words**, i. e. words which do not in themselves represent an idea or notion, like verbs and substantives, but merely point out the *relation* (the particular kind of connexion), existing between two *notional* words, or between a notional word and the speaker. Thus, in the sentence, '*the brother of my friend just arrived from town*' the words *brother*, *friend*, *arrive*, *town* are notional words; *the*, *of*, *my*, *just*, *from* are *relational words*; the word '*of*' connects *friend* and *brother*; '*from*' connects *arrived* and *town*, '*my*' friend, explains whose friend is meant, with reference to the speaker; '*just*' points out the time, when he arrived (i. e. relative to a time present to the *speaker*).

b. by forms of inflection, viz. by *declension* and *conjugation*. Thus in the sentence 'William's brother arrived' etc. the termination **s** expresses the relation between William and brother; **ed** indicates the time of his arrival, with reference to the time in which the statement contained in the sentence, is made.

Relations of notions to other notions.

- 24 The relation of the *predicate* to the *subject* is termed the *Predicative relation*, and the combination of the subject and predicate, the *Predicative combination*, e. g. *Jugend vergeht* (youth fades) etc.

All words, qualifying or individualizing a *substantive*, are termed its *Attributes*. The relation of an attribute to its substantive is termed the *Attributive relation*, and the combination of a substantive with its attribute, the *Attributive combination*, e. g. *ein junges Kind* (a young child); *das Kind meines Bruders* (the child of my brother).

A word which qualifies a substantive, is termed an *Adjective*, e. g. *young* (child). Adjectives however are not only used as *attributes* qualifying substantives, but

also when connected with the *auxiliary verb to be*, take the place of a predicate, e. g. the child *is**) young.

All words qualifying or individualizing a *verb* or *adjective* are termed its *Objects*. The relation of an object to its verb or adjective is termed the *Objective relation*, and the combination of a verb or adjective with its object, the *Objective combination*, e. g. Roth bricht Eisen. Der Abend krönt den Tag (§. 14). Er geht nach Hause, he goes home. Einem Jeden nützlich, useful to every body etc.

A word which qualifies a verb or adjective, is termed *Adverb*, e. g. *very young, reads correctly*. Adverbs can only be used as objects qualifying a verb or adjective in a particular manner (see Chapter VI.). Thus the words *immer always, bald soon*, can take no other place in the sentence but that of an *object of time*; *hier here, da there, himmelwärts heavenwards*, are always *objects of place* etc.

When *Attributes* and *Objects* are expressed by *substantives*, the particular relation is expressed

1. by the *cases* of the substantive, e. g. Gottes Segen. Des Volkes Stimme ist Gottes Stimme. Roth kennt kein Gebot. Roth bricht Eisen. Das Werk lobt den Meister;

2. by particular relational words, termed *Prepositions*, e. g. ein Wolf im Schafspelz. Bei Nacht sind alle Ragen grau. Die Wahrheit richtet sich nicht nach uns.

The German language, like the Latin and Greek, distinguishes *four cases*, by particular terminations, viz.:

the *Nominative*, denoting the Subject;

the *Accusative*,
the *Dative*, } denoting the Objects;

the *Genitive*, denot. Attributes and sometimes Objects.

*) The word 'is' connecting the two notions, viz. *subject* and *predicate*, is grammatically termed the '*copula*'.

The English language, having lost almost all inflection, is to a greater extent reduced to the use of prepositions than the ancient languages or the German; thus the Genitive case, still employed in: my father's house, the king's bench etc., is generally expressed by the preposition *of*, e. g. the house *of* my father. The Dative case is either denoted by the preposition *to*, e. g. he has given the book *to* your brother; or it is not distinguished from the Accusative case, which has no sign, e. g. he has given your brother the books.

Exercises.

Analyze the sentences in §. 14 and 15 in the following way:

1) Distinguish the Subject and the Predicate of each, e. g.

Subject.	Predicate.
Der Mensch	denkt.
Gott	lenkt.
Noth	kennt kein Gebot.
Neue Befehle	lehren gut.

2) Distinguish in the same sentences the Subject and its Attributes, the Predicate and its Objects, in the following way:

1. Ein gebranntes	Attribute of 2.
2. Kind	Subject of 3.
3. scheuet	Predicate of 2.
4. das Feuer	Object of 3.

Compound sentence.

27 Simple sentences are connected with one another so as to form compound sentences. This is done either

1. by way of *Subordination*, or
2. by way of *Co-ordination*.

1. *Subordination.*

One sentence, being dependent on another sentence in such a manner as to be merely its subject or its attribute or object, is termed an *Accessory sentence*; the other is the *Principal sentence*. For instance in the sentence: 'He who mounts rapidly, falls suddenly', the predicate is 'falls suddenly' and the whole sentence 'who mounts rapidly' is its subject. It is therefore termed a *subjective accessory sentence*.

In: 'He can carry what he bears, with great ease', 'he can carry with great ease', is the *principal sentence*, the predicate of which (can carry) is explained by the accessory sentence 'what he bears', which being the object of the verb 'carry' is termed an *objective accessory sentence*. 'That master fares well who himself does what he commands.' 'That master fares well' is the principal sentence; in order to explain the subject (master), an accessory sentence is added 'who himself does what he commands', which accordingly is termed an *attributive accessory sentence*. This accessory sentence however contains again another accessory sentence (what he commands), which being an explanation of the predicate *does*, must be its object and consequently is an *objective accessory sentence*.

2. *Co-ordination.*

Two sentences, each of which has an independent 28 meaning, or is intelligible without the other, as: Die Jugend vergeht — Die Jugend besteht, form a *compound sentence* by way of *Co-ordination*, if there exists between them

1) a *relation of opposition*,

e. g. Die Jugend vergeht, aber die Jugend besteht. — Die Wahrheit richtet sich nicht nach uns, sondern wir müssen uns nach ihr richten (§. 16), and

2) a *relation of Causality*,

that is to say: When the *one* part of the sentence denotes a *cause*, e. g.

Herzog Rudolf hat dies Schwert,
 Art und Kolbe mir verehrt;
 Denn ich blieb dem Herzog hold
 Und verschmähte Heinrich's Sold (§. 17).

The second part 'Denn ich blieb dem Herzog hold' (for I remained loyal to the Duke) implies or expresses the *cause* of the first statement, viz. 'Herzog Rudolf hat' etc. (Duke Rudolph has presented me with this sword), namely: he has done so by the *cause* or on the *grounds* of my remaining loyal to him, and hence the *grammatical term of Causality*.

Co-ordinate sentences are generally *contracted*, when they have the same subject or the same predicate, thus Geld bringt Gunst, aber Geld bringt nicht Kunst, is contracted into: Geld bringt Gunst, aber nicht Kunst (§. 16).

The different relations by which two members or clauses of a sentence are connected, either in subordination or co-ordination are generally expressed by particular *relational words*, termed *Conjunctions*, as, aber *but*, sondern *but*, denn *for*, und *and* etc.

Exercises.

Analyze the sentences in §. 16 in the following way:

1. Wer	}	Accessory.	Subject of 3.
2. rasch		Sentence.	Object of 3.
3. steigt,		Subject of 4.	Predicate of 1.
4. fällt	}	Predicate of 1—3.	
5. plötzlich		Object of 4.	
1. Ehre	}	Princ. Sent.	Subject of 4.
2. ist			Attrib. of 4.
3. des Mannes			Predicate of 1 *).
4. Herz,			

*) The Predicate is sometimes expressed by a Substantive; see Syntax, Chapter I.

5. Demuth			Subject of 6.	
6. führt	}	Princ.	Predicate of 5.	
7. uns			Sent.	Object of 6.
8. himmelwärts.			Object of 6.	
9. Strenge,			Subject of 13.	
10. die	}	Princ.	Subject of 12.	
11. sich selbst			Acc.	Object of 12.
12. bezwingt,			Sent.	Predicate of 10.
13. schafft			Attr. of 9.	Predicate of 9.
14. im Leben,				Object of 13.
15. was			Acc. Sent.	Subject of 16.
16. gelingt.	Obj. of 13.	Predicate of 15.		

Relations of notions to the speaker.

Persons or things as well as their actions are pointed out as individual beings and actions by *their relations to the speaker*, which are either *relations of notions of being*, or *relations of notions of action*.

1. Relations of Beings to the speaker.

a. *Personality*. Three *Persons* are distinguished, 30 viz.:

1. the person speaking (first person);
2. " " spoken to (second person);
3. " " or thing spoken of (third person).

These different persons are expressed by the *Personal pronouns*: *I, thou, he* etc.

b. *Limitation*. Substantives, being (§.25) expressive of general ideas of a whole class of beings, their signification is limited and individualised,

1. by the *Demonstrative pronouns*, e. g. *this* man, *that* man, *such* a man, which points out exactly the person meant by the speaker,

2. by the *Article* which, being either *definite*, e. g. *the* man, or *indefinite*, e. g. *a* man, merely serves to in-

dicare, whether the person or thing which is the subject of discourse, has been already pointed out and individualised by other means, or not

c. *Number*. All substantives are either in the

1. *Singular*, or
2. *Plural number*.

Number and quantity are moreover expressed by particular relational words, termed *Numerals*.

2. *Relations of Actions to the speaker*.

31 a. *Time*. The time in which an action is performed is *present*, *past*, or *future*, with reference to the time in which we are speaking. This is expressed by the *Tenses* of the verb, and in a particular manner by *Adverbs of Time*, e. g. he goes, he went, he will go, he goes *now*, he will *soon* go.

32 b. *Modality*. All actions are conceived in the mind as being either:

1. *Real actions*, e. g. he *goes*, or
2. *Possible*, e. g. he *may go*, he *likes to go*, or
3. *Necessary*, e. g. he *must go*, he *certainly* will go.

Possibility and necessity are expressed by relational words, viz.:

α) *Auxiliary verbs of Modality*, e. g. *may*, *can*, *shall*, *will*, *must* etc.

β) *Adverbs of Modality*, e. g. *certainly*; 'he *likes to go*', is in German: er *geh*et *ger*n.

Positive and Negative assertion is also comprehended under the head of modality. An assertion is made negative by the *Adverbs of Negation* *not*, *no**).

*) In this place some other relations of less importance are neglected, for sake of greater simplicity. The above mentioned alone are essential to every predicate.

**Relations of sentences with peculiar reference
to the speaker.**

A sentence formed by the combination of a subject **33**
and predicate is either

1. an *Asserting sentence*, e. g. the master teaches, he does not teach; the scholars learn, they do not learn;
2. or an *Interrogative sentence*, expressing a question, e. g. does the master teach? do the scholars learn?
3. or an *Imperative sentence*, expressing command or entreaty, e. g. teach him German! learn German!

In imperative sentences, the subject, being generally the person spoken to, is often suppressed.

There are moreover three moods of assertion: **34**

- a. The sentence is a *real assertion* of the speaker, e. g. the master teaches.

This mood is termed the *Indicative mood*.

- b. The sentence is an imaginary or rather a *presumed* assertion, contradicting reality, e. g. *if* the master would teach better, the scholars would learn more.

This mood is termed the *Conditional mood*.

- c. The sentence is an assertion of an other person, spoken of, or quoted by the speaker, e. g. Charles says, that his master teaches him German.

This mood, which is not distinguished in the English language, is termed in German grammar the *Conjunctive mood*.

These various conceptions of the same thought, affecting not any single part of the sentence, but the whole of it, and depending not so much upon the nature of things, as upon their conception in the mind

of the speaker, are considered as *Relations of the Sentence with regard to the speaker*, and comprehended under the term *Mood of the sentence*.

Mood is expressed

1. by a different arrangement in the order of the words, as in questions;

2. by the *moods of the verb* (Indicative, Conjunctive, Conditional, Imperative).

35 The following table will give a proper view of the different relations, which are represented by language.

TABLE OF RELATIONS.

- 1. **Predicative combination of the Subject and its Predicate.**
- 2. **Attributive combination of the Substantive and its Attribute.**
- 3. **Objective combination of the Verb (or Adjective) and its Objects.**

to other
notions

Relations
of
Notions
(words)

Personality
Limitation
Number
Modality
Time

of the Substantive.
of the Verb.

to other
sentences
referring
to the
speaker

Relations
of
Thoughts
(sentences)

Co-ordination of two independent sentences.
Subordination of the accessory sentence.

Mood of the assertion, 1. Asserting sentence. a. Indicative mood.
b. Conditional ”
c. Conjunctive ”

2. Interrogative ”
3. Imperative ”

The following table shows the different classes of words, or *parts of speech*, by means of which thoughts are expressed:

TABLE OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

I. Notional words §. 23.

1. Verb §. 22.
2. Substantive §. 22.
3. Adjective §. 24.
4. Adverb §. 25.

II. Relational words §. 23.

5. Auxiliary verbs §. 31 and 32.
6. Article §. 30.
7. Pronouns §. 29 and 30.
8. Numerals §. 30.
9. Prepositions §. 26.
10. Conjunctions §. 28.
11. Adverbs §. 25.

I. NOTIONAL WORDS.

1. Verb.

Verbs are either *Objective* or *Subjective*.

- 36 A verb is said to be *objective*, when it requires an object in order to be understood; e. g. I love him, he gives lessons, he pays his debts, he insists upon your coming, he complained of his bad health. A verb is *subjective*, when it requires no object, e. g. he sleeps, I shall go.

Verbs are either *Transitive* or *Intransitive*.

- 37 A verb is said to be *transitive*, when the action requires an *object* acted upon, which is represented in a *passive* state, as receiving the action of the *subject*, and which object stands in the *accusative* case; all other verbs are *intransitive*. Thus in: I love him, he gives lessons, he pays his debts, the verbs (love, give, pay) are transitive, whereas in: he insists upon your com-

ing, he complained of his bad health, he sleeps, I shall go, the verbs are intransitive.

All transitive verbs are objective, and all subjective verbs are intransitive. The particulars of these definitions will be explained in Syntax.

Verbs are inflected by *Tense*, *Mood* and *Person*, in order to express the different relations of the predicate.

When a verb assumes the form and value of an adjective, it is termed *Participle*; when it takes that of a substantive, it is termed *Infinitive*, or more *properly* speaking becomes a *verbal substantive*, e. g. das Lesen nützlicher Bücher, the reading of useful books.

2. Substantive.

Substantives are divided into *Concrete and Abstract*. 38

Concrete substantives are the names of persons or things, e. g. man, town, house, Frederick, Berlin. Abstract nouns are the names of actions, qualities or conditions, e. g. journey, question, splendour, friendship.

Concrete substantives are either

Common names, i. e. names common to all the individuals of persons or things which constitute a class, e. g. house, man, town; — or

Proper names, i. e. names proper to one individual, e. g. Frederick, Berlin, Germany; — or

Names of materials, i. e. of things in which there is no idea of individuality, but only an aggregate notion, e. g. water, sand, milk.

Substantives which comprehend a multitude of individuals under one name, such as society, clergy, government, are termed *Collective* substantives.

Substantives are, moreover, either

Substantives proper, i. e. words used as substantives only, e. g. John, father, virtue, house; — or

Adjective substantives, i. e. adjectives used as substantives, e. g. the learned, the ancients; — or

Verbal substantives or *Infinitives*, i. e. verbs used as substantives, e. g. *to sing* (or: *singing*) is pleasant, I like *walking*.

Substantives are inflected by *Number* and *Case*.

3. Adjective.

- 40 Adjectives (and Participles) take the place of an attribute qualifying a substantive, or of a predicate. The attributive adjective is in German inflected by *Gender*, *Number* and *Case* in order to agree with its substantive.

Adjectives are in the *Positive*, *Comparative*, or *Superlative degree*, e. g. good, better, best.

4. Notional Adverbs.

- 41 Adverbs are words which express the manner, time, or place of an action, e. g. he writes *well*, he reads *correctly*; he will arrive *early*, the troops marched *eastward*.

Adverbs admit of no inflection.

In German, adjectives, when used as *adverbs of manner*, commonly do not assume an affix, like the English *ly* in *hastily*, *correctly*; the words *rasch*, *richtig* etc. being used both as adjectives and as adverbs.

II. RELATIONAL WORDS.

5. Auxiliary verbs.

- 42 a. The verb *sein* *to be* is used to join the predicate with its subject, e. g. *der Mensch ist sterblich* man is mortal, *die Erde ist ein Planet* the earth is a planet. It is therefore termed *Copula*.

When it implies the notion of *existing*, e. g. there is a God, it is rather to be considered as a notional word.

b. The *Auxiliary verbs of Tense*, *haben to have* and *sein to be*, for the past, and *werden* for the future tenses.

The verb *werden* is also employed in German in the formation of the passive voice.

The verb *haben* when signifying *to possess* and *werden to become, to grow* (e. g. *der Mann hat Geld* the man has money; *er wird alt* he grows old), must be considered as notional words.

c. The *Auxiliary verbs of Modality*, *können, mögen, dürfen, wollen, sollen, müssen*, express the relation of modality (§. 32), i. e. possibility or necessity of an action. They are used in a manner different from the English (can, may, dare, will, shall, must), as will be explained in Syntax.

6. Article.

An article is a word placed before a substantive 43 to limit its signification (§. 30).

There is a *definite* and an *indefinite* article in German as in English, e. g. *der Mann the man, ein Mann a man*.

7. Pronouns.

Pronouns express the relations of *personality* (first, 44 second, or third person §. 29), or *demonstrative and interrogative limitation* (§. 30), e. g. I saw *him*; *this man, that book, what book?* Pronouns are either:

Substantive pronouns, when indicating persons or things themselves, e. g. I saw *him*; *that* is not true; —or

Adjective pronouns, when added to a substantive, e. g. *my friend, that book*.

Pronouns are inflected by *Gender, Number and Case*.

8. Numerals.

- 45 Numerals express number or quantity in a definite or indefinite manner. They are either:

Definite numerals, e. g. *one, two, three* etc.; — or

Indefinite numerals, e. g. *some, many* etc.

9. Prepositions.

- 46 Prepositions connect an object with its verb or adjective, or an attribute with its substantive, and show the relation between them, e. g. I go *to* England; he lives *in* England; I speak *with* him *of* you; he is content *with* his fate — the difference *between* them; a treatise *on* that subject etc.

10. Conjunctions.

- 47 Conjunctions connect two sentences, and show the relation between them; e. g. my father arrived *and* I met him; *but* he would not speak with me.

In contracted sentences (§. 28) conjunctions also connect corresponding parts of two sentences; e. g. my father *and* mother are come, which is a contraction of: my father is come, and my mother is come.

11. Relational Adverbs.

- 48 Relational adverbs limit the signification of the predicate by relations to the speaker. The following kinds of relational adverbs must be distinguished.

a. *Adverbs of Place*, formed from prepositions or pronouns; e. g. he lives *here, there, below, behind*.

b. *Adverbs of Time*; e. g. *now, soon, then*.

c. *Adverbs of Manner*; e. g. *so, thus*, with which may be classed the *adverbs of Intensity*: *very, much, almost, nearly* etc.: and the *adverbs of Frequency*, *often, sometimes, frequently, generally* etc.

d. *Adverbs of Modality*; e. g. *perhaps, certainly, indeed, not, no.*

12. Interjections.

Interjections express neither notions nor relations, 49 and are not in a grammatical connection with the sentence; we therefore do not consider them as parts of the sentence, but rather as sounds produced by the immediate impulse of the sensation of joy, sorrow, admiration etc. In German *joy* is expressed by *ah!* *heiß!* *juchhei!* *sorrow* by *ach!* *oh!* *admiration* by *ei!* *oh!* *disgust* by *fi,* *pfui!*

The expressions *wehe!* *o wehe!* *wehe dir!* *woe to you!* *leider!* *alas!* *Himmel!* *heaven!* *Gott lob!* *thank God!* and other of the same description which are frequently employed as interjections, are to be regarded as elliptical sentences, as f. i. in English: *enough!* = *it is enough.*

CHAPTER III.

OF THE FORMATION OF WORDS.

There are two ways of forming words: 50

1. *Derivation*, by which new words are formed by means of affixes, or by changing their vowel;

2. *Composition*, by which new words are formed by joining two words into one.

1. Derivation.

All notional words are either *Roots* or *Derivative words.*

Roots are those primitive words, from which other words are derived, but which are themselves underived.

All roots are verbs (radical verbs). All verbs however are not roots; for there are a great number of derivative verbs. Radical and derivative verbs are distinguished from each other by different conjugation, as will be explained in Chapter IV.

All radical verbs are *monosyllable*; e. g. bind=en to bind, schieß=en to shoot, geh=en to go, schlaf=en to sleep. They are however frequently connected with *Prefixes*, e. g. ver=binden to conjoin, ge=nießen to enjoy, be=gehen to commit.

OBSERVATION. — The signification of radical verbs is generally very indefinite, a great variety of meanings being frequently expressed by one word; and in many cases we are not able to find English verbs which precisely correspond with the German. In this respect the learner must consult good dictionaries *).

Derivative words are either Primary or Secondary derivatives.

I. *Primary derivatives* are those formed from roots by a change of the radical vowel.

II. *Secondary derivatives* are those formed by means of significant *affixes* **).

I. Primary derivatives.

51 Substantives †) and adjectives are formed from radical verbs.

*) The pupil is also recommended to consult in this respect Dr. I's '*Etymological Vocabulary*' forming an appendix to the *Second German Book*, by Arnold and I.

**) The subject of *Primary* and *Secondary derivatives* has been more amply treated upon in Arnold and I's '*First German Book*' (*Fourth Edit.*) (vid. Index to that work).

†) The simplest form of a primary derivative substantive is a *verbal* root, thus, the verbal root of fall=en, to fall, is 'Fall' (=en being the *termination* only), but Fall (fall) is a substantive.

OBSERVATION. — In other cases the radical vowel of the verb is changed, e.g. werf=en (to throw) root 'werf', but the substantive formed from it is Wurf (throw, cast); in a similar manner brech=en (to break), subst. Bruch (breach, fracture).

a. without any affix;

b. by the addition of one of the terminations *er, el, en, t, e* which however do not, like the affixes of secondary derivatives, affect the meaning of the words.

The following examples will illustrate the formation of primary derivatives:

Radical verbs.

Primary derivatives.

a. without any affix. b. with one of the terminations *er, el, en, t, e*.

bind= <i>en</i> to bind,	der Band volume,	die Bind= <i>e</i> band,
	der Bund league,	der Bünd= <i>el</i> bundle,
schlag= <i>en</i> to beat,	der Schlag stroke	die Schlach= <i>t</i> battle,
to strike,		
sprech= <i>en</i> to speak	der Spruch sen-	die Sprach= <i>e</i> language,
	tence,	
flieg= <i>en</i> to fly,	der Flug flight,	die Flieg= <i>e</i> fly, der Flü-
		gel wing,
flieh= <i>en</i> to flee,	der Floh flea,	die Fluch= <i>t</i> flight,
grab= <i>en</i> to dig,	das Grab grave,	die Gruf= <i>t</i> tomb, die
		Grub= <i>e</i> pit,
		der Grab= <i>en</i> ditch,
bieg= <i>en</i> to bend,	der Bug bow of	die Buch= <i>t</i> bay, der Bo-
	a ship,	gen arch, bow,
		der Büg= <i>el</i> stirrup,
		der Buck= <i>el</i> humpback.

1. *Primary substantives.*

der Mann man,	der Schnee snow,
der Kopf head,	der See lake,
der Arm arm,	der Hirsch stag,
der Fuß foot,	der Hund dog,
der Fluß river,	der Sand sand,
der Bach brook,	der Wein wine,
der Berg mountain,	der Stein stone,
der Zwerg dwarf,	der Traum dream,
der Baum tree,	der Schaum foam,
der Wald forest,	der Stall stable,

der Busch bush,
 der Weg way,
 der Ort place,
 der Thurm tower,
 der Wurm worm,
 der Sturm storm,
 der Stern star,
 der Mond moon,
 der Schuh shoe,
 der Stuhl chair,
 der Tisch table,
 der Fisch fish,

der Wall rampart,
 der Zorn anger,
 der Dorn thorn,
 der Staub dust,
 der Raub prey,
 der Scherz joke,
 der Schmerz pain,
 der Klang sound,
 der Gang walking,
 der Trank drink,
 der Muth courage,
 der Hut hat.

der Vater father,
 der Hammer hammer,
 der Jammer lamentation,
 der Kummer grief,
 der Schlummer slumber,

der Bruder brother,
 der Keller cellar,
 der Teller plate,
 der Finger finger,
 der Hunger hunger.

der Flügel wing,
 der Zügel rein,
 der Adel nobility,
 der Tadel blame,

der Vogel bird,
 der Nagel nail,
 der Spiegel looking-glass,
 der Hügel hill.

der Garten garden,
 der Boden bottom,
 der Wagen carriage,
 der Bogen bow,

der Braten roast meat,
 der Laden shop, shutter,
 der Husten cough,
 der Schnupfen cold (having
 a cold).

die Sonne sun,
 die Tonne tun,
 die Fliege fly,
 die Ziege goat,
 die Frage question,
 die Lage situation,
 die Taube dove,
 die Traube a bunch of
 grapes,

die Schlange snake,
 die Stange pole,
 die Decke cover,
 die Ecke corner,
 die Mitte middle,
 die Bitte request,
 die Pfeife pipe,
 die Seife soap.

The syllable *Ge-* is prefixed to many primary derivatives without affecting their signification, and is then termed *Augment*, as in the words:

der Geruch smell,	das Gesicht face, sight,
der Geschmack taste,	das Gehör hearing,
der Gesang song,	das Gesetz law,
die Geduld patience,	das Geschütz artillery,
die Gefahr danger,	das Gebiß teeth.

2. Primary adjectives.

Primary adjectives are formed in the same way as primary substantives, either without any affix, or by *er, el, en, e*; some of them also have assumed the augment *ge*.

weiß white,	groß great,
schwarz black,	klein small,
grün green,	lang long,
roth red,	kurz short,
gelb yellow,	alt old,
blau blue,	jung young.
bitter bitter,	edel noble,
sauer sour,	eitel vain,
heiter serene,	übel ill,
mager lean,	eben even, plain.
träge lazy,	gesund sound,
streng severe,	gewiß certain,
weise wise,	gering small, little,
leise not loud,	gerade straight.

II. Secondary derivatives.

1. Derivative verbs.

Derivative verbs are formed from substantives and 52 adjectives, merely by assuming the terminations of conjugation. In most of them however the vowel is

modified (§. 2). Thus the verbs tränk-en to give drink, fällt-en to fell, dräng-en to press, schlacht-en to slaughter, stärk-en to strengthen, schwäch-en to weaken, würdig-en to deign, heilig-en to consecrate etc., are derived from the substantives Trank, Fall, Drang, Schlacht and the adjectives stark, schwach, würdig, heilig.

2. Substantives and Adjectives.

53 Secondary derivative substantives and adjectives are generally formed from primary derivatives by means of *affixes*; e. g. Schloss-er locksmith, mächt-ig mighty, Bünd-niß alliance, from Schloß, Macht, Bund. Those which are immediately formed from radical verbs, as, Sprech-er speaker, Kenn-er connoisseur, Sitz-ung session, denk-bar conceivable, are less frequent in German than in English. On the other hand new derivatives are sometimes formed from secondary derivatives, e. g. Dank-bar-keit gratitude, Beständ-ig-keit constancy, Würd-ig-keit dignity.

In secondary derivatives, formed by the affixes, er, ling, in, chen, lein, e, niß, sel, ig, isch, lich, the vowel of the primary derivative is commonly *modified* (§. 2. a, o, u, au into ä, ö, ü, äu), e. g. Garten—Gärtner; backen—Bäcker; Zucht—Züchtling; Graf—Gräfin; Hund—Hündin; Sohn—Söhnchen; Baum—Bäumlein etc.

The affixes of secondary derivatives are significant, i. e. they modify the meanings of the words in such a manner as to form either adjectives or names of persons or abstract substantives etc., as will appear from the following table.

TABLE OF AFFIXES.

er	forms names of male persons.
ling	” ” ” ” ” and things.
in	” ” ” female persons.
chen	} form diminutive substantives.
lein	
e	} form feminine abstract substantives.
heit	
keit	
schaft	
ung	
ei	} forms feminine abstract substantives and neuter names of things.
niß	
sal	} form neuter concrete and abstract substantives.
sel	
thum	forms neuter concrete substantives of a collective signification.
ig (icht)	} form adjectives.
isch	
sam	
bar	
en	
lich	
haft	

*Concrete substantives.***er.**

- 54 *Names of male persons* are formed from names of things by the affix *er*, e. g.

der Bürger citizen (burgher)	from die Burg castle,
der Schäfer shepherd	„ das Schaf sheep,
der Ritter knight	„ der Ritt ride,
der Sänger singer	„ der Sang song.

In some words belonging to this form, one of the *liquids* *l* or *n* is inserted (*euphonicaly*) between the *root* and the *termination*, e. g. *Künst=ler* (*artist*, from *Kunst*, *art*); *Schuld=n-er* (*debtor*, from *Schuld*, *debt*); *Glöck=n-er* (*bellringer*, from *Glocke*, *bell*).

Names of male persons are formed in the same manner from names of *countries* and *places*, e. g.

Engländer Englishman	from England England,
Irländer Irishman	„ Irland Ireland,
Schweizer Swiss	„ die Schweiz Switzerland,
Spanier Spaniard	„ Spanien Spain,
Amerikaner American	„ Amerika America,
Italiener Italian	„ Italien Italy,
Römer Roman	„ Rom Rome,
Wiener an inhabitant of	Wien Vienna,
Österreicher Austrian	from Österreich Austria*).

*) All names of nations are not formed in this manner, some being primary substantives, from which the names of countries are formed, e. g.

der Schotte Scotchman,	Schottland Scotland,
der Deutsche German,	Deutschland Germany,
der Franzose Frenchman,	Frankreich France,
der Däne Dane,	Dänemark Denmark,
der Russe Russian,	Rußland Russia,
der Türke Turk,	Türkei Turkey,
der Preuße Prussian,	Preußen Prussia,
der Sachse Saxon,	Sachsen Saxony,
der Baiier Bavarian,	Baiern Bavaria,
der Hesse Hessian,	Hessen Hessia,
der Schwabe Swabian, etc.	Schwaben Swabia, etc.

OBSERVATION 1. — Substantives of this form, made from verbs, are not so common in German as in English. There are, however, some; such as, *Schneider* tailor, *Reiter* rider, *Leser* reader, *Schreiber* secretary, *Maler* painter, *Prahler* boaster; and these forms never *modify* the vowel, e. g. *plur. Maler* (painters) and not as f. i. in *Gräber* (*plur.* from *Grab*, tomb) in which case the appended *er* is a *plural-formation*.

OBSERVATION 2. — Names of countries, like *Schweden*, *Sachsen*, *Schwaben*, *Hessen*, are originally adjective-substantives, which imply at the same time the inhabitants of the countries, and therefore do not admit of the affix *er*.

OBSERVATION 3. — From the *affix er* we must distinguish that *termination er* which primary substantives frequently assume, and by which the signification is not affected (§. 51).

ling.

By the affix 'ling', *names of persons* are formed from *substantive roots* (rarely from *adjective roots*).

Jüngling a youth,	Jögling pupil,
Fremdling a stranger,	Häuptling chieftain,
Günstling favourite,	Zwilling twin (from <i>zwei</i> two).

The form *ling* however has been transferred to a few names of *animals* and *inanimate* objects, e. g. *Hänfling* linnet, *Sprößling* shoot.

in.

Names of females are made from names of males by the affix *in*, e. g.

der Hirt shepherd,	die Hirtin shepherdess,
der Held hero,	die Heldin heroine,
der Graf count,	die Gräfin countess,
der Fürst prince,	die Fürstin princess,
der König king,	die Königin queen,
der Freund friend,	die Freundin female friend,

These names of nations are however not to be employed as adjectives, as in: a French soldier, there being for that purpose particular forms in *isch*, *französisch*, *schottisch* etc. See §. 57.

der Feind enemy,	die Feindin female enemy,
der Koch cook,	die Köchin „ cook,
der Hund dog,	die Hündin bitch,
der Löwe lion,	die Löwin lioness.

OBSERVATION. — The final n of the termination in is doubled in the plural number, e. g. in *Hirtinnen*.

chen and lein.

Diminutives are formed from concrete substantives by the affixes *chen* and *lein*.

OBSERVATION. — The affix *chen* is preferred after a liquid final consonant, or a final vowel; and *lein*, on the other hand, after a mute final consonant, and especially after a palatal one, e. g. in *Stühlchen*, *Söhnchen*, *Härchen*, *Bäumchen*, *Eichen*, little stool, son, hair, tree, egg; and *Knäblein*, *Mägdelein*, *Büchlein*, *Böcklein*, little boy, girl, book, buck.

Abstract substantives.

e, heit and feit.

55 *Abstract substantives* are made from *adjectives* by the affixes *e*, *heit* and *feit*.

1. Abstracts formed from primary adjectives, take *e* or *heit*.

2. Those formed from secondary derivative adjectives take *feit*. When substantives in *feit* are formed from primary derivative adjectives, the syllable *ig* is inserted between the adjective and the affix, e. g. *Frömm-ig-feit* from *fromm*.

die Größe greatness,	die Wärme warmth,
die Länge length,	die Kälte coldness,
die Breite breadth,	die Nässe wetness,
die Tiefe depth,	die Stärke strength,
die Dicke thickness,	die Schwäche infirmity,
die Höhe height,	die Güte goodness.

die Gesundheit health,	die Schwachheit weakness,
die Krankheit sickness,	die Kühnheit boldness,

die Freiheit freedom,	die Klugheit prudence,
die Schönheit beauty,	die Reinheit purity,
die Weisheit wisdom,	die Trägheit idleness,
die Dummheit stupidity,	die Seltenheit rarity.
die Dankbarkeit gratitude,	die Schlecht=ig=keit badness,
die Fruchtbarkeit fertility,	die Frömm=ig=keit piety,
die Heiligkeit holiness,	die Feucht=ig=keit humidity,
die Sparsamkeit parsimony,	die Müd=ig=keit } weariness.
die Zärtlichkeit tenderness,	die Matt=ig=keit }

Some of those in *e, heit, feit* have assumed a concrete sense, as, die Fläche plain, die Flüssigkeit liquid. A few *abstract substantives* also are formed from *personal names* by the affix *heit*, e. g. Kindheit childhood, Thorheit folly, and in a *collective* sense, Menschheit mankind, Christenheit christendom.

schaft and thum.

Abstract substantives are made from *names of persons* by the affixes *schaft* and *thum*.

die Freundschaft friendship, die Feindschaft enmity,
 die Herrschaft dominion, die Knechtschaft slavery,
 das Fürstenthum principality, das Christenthum christianity.

OBSERVATION. — The most part of substantives, formed by these affixes, have a collective signification: viz. those formed by *schaft* imply a collection of persons, whilst those formed by *thum* signify a collection of things belonging to the persons; e. g. Ritterschaft, Judenschaft, Priesterschaft, Bürgerschaft, the whole body of the knights, Jews, priests, citizens; and Ritterthum chivalry, Judenthum Judaism, Priesterthum priesthood, Heidenthum paganism, Herzogthum dukedom. Exceptions are a few, viz.: Eigenschaft quality, Landschaft landscape, Wissenschaft science, Baarschaft ready money, Geräthschaft instruments, Briefschaften letters, and Eigenthum property, Heiligthum sanctuary, Alterthum antiquity, Reichthum riches, Wachsthum growth, Irrthum error, which are unconnected with names of persons.

Ge.

Collective substantives are formed from primary substantives by the augment *Ge* and the affix *e*, which however is dropped in many words.

das Gebirge ridge of hills*), das Getöse noise,
 das Gestirn constellation**), das Gedränge crowd,
 das Gebüsch bushes †), das Gespräch conversation,
 das Geräth furniture, das Gemüth mind, soul.

OBSERVATION. — In the same manner, but without the vowels being modified, *frequentative* substantives are formed from verbs, e. g. das Gerede, Gesänge, Geheul, Gemehel continued or repeated talking, singing, crying, slaughter.

niß, sal and sel.

Abstract substantives are made from verbs and substantives by the affixes *niß*, *sal*, *sel*.

These substantives have for the most part a particle (*be*, *ge*, *ver*) prefixed, e. g.

das Verhältniß relation,	das Zeugniß testimony
das Gedächtniß memory,	etc.
das Bedürfniß want,	das Schicksal fate,
das Hinderniß impediment,	etc.
das Bündniß alliance,	das Räthsel riddle
	etc.

ei.

Secondary derivatives are made by the affix *ei*, which always takes the *principal accent*, and assumes the syllable *er* before it, when there is not already

*) From Berg, mountain.

**) From Stern, star.

†) From Busch, bush. It will be seen that in such cases the vowels (capable of modification, viz. *a*, *o*, *u*) are *modified*, e. g. Busch, Gebüsch; and such as can not be modified are changed, e. g. *e* into *i* as in Berg, Gebirge.

another unaccented termination. Substantives in *ei* are made :

a. from *verbs*. They then express the abstract notion of an action, in a bad sense.

die Heuchelei hypocrisy, die Schmeichelei flattery,
die Ziererei affectation, die Schwägerei babbling.

b. from *names of persons*. They then express the business, condition etc.

die Sklaverei slavery, die Reiterei cavalry,
die Druckerei printing office, die Jägerei hunting.

c. indicating the effect, e. g. *Schilderei* picture; from *schildern* to represent, depict.

Verbal substantives.

Verbal substantives are those abstracts, which have 56 retained so entirely the notion of the verbs from which they are made, as still to admit of an objective relation, and to govern cases and prepositions.

a. Substantives in *ung* are formed from transitive verbs, e. g. *Fällung* (felling; from *fällen* to fell), *Führung* leading, guidance, from *führen* to lead, guide, the object of the verb being generally added in the Genitive case.

die Hinrichtung eines Verbrechers the execution of a criminal,

die Eroberung einer Festung the conquest of a fortress,

die Übersetzung des Gedichts the translation of the poem,

die Erziehung der Kinder the education of children,

die Erbauung der Stadt the building of the town,

die Krönung des Königs the coronation of the king.

Some are formed from reflective verbs, e. g.

die Bewegung motion, die Verschwörung conspiracy,
die Erinnerung remembrance, die Verstellung dissimulation.

The rest have a *collective* sense, as: Kleidung clothing, Waldung woodland etc.

Substantives in *ung* are for the most part formed from compound verbs.

b. The *Infinitives* of verbs are used as *verbal substantives*. They take the article and are declined like other substantives, without, however, admitting of the plural number, e. g.

das Lesen reading, das Schreiben writing,
das Sprechen speaking, das Reisen travelling.

This form of verbal substantives is not used, in general, when an attribute or object is to be added; in which case the Infinitive without an article or the Supine (the Infinitive with the preposition *zu*) is preferred. Thus we say: *ich bin von dem Sprechen müde*, I am tired with speaking; but, *ich bin müde von Politik zu sprechen*, I am tired of speaking of politics — *das Reisen ist kostspielig*, travelling is expensive; but, in England *zu reisen ist kostspielig*, travelling in England is expensive *).

Many Infinitives however have assumed the signification of *real* substantives, and are used as such, e. g.

das Leben life, das Verbrechen crime,
das Leiden complaint, das Verlangen desire.

Some of these, originally *abstract* notions, have assumed a *concrete* signification, thus f. i. *das Schreiben*

*) The different significations of abstract substantives formed from the same verb, appear in the following examples: *müde von dem Gehen*, fatigued with walking; *der Gang nach der Stadt*, the walk to town; *der Umgang mit Fremden*, the intercourse with foreigners; *die Umgehung einer Frage*, the evasion of a question; *Talent zum Erfinden*, talent for contriving; *einen guten Fund thun*, to find a good thing; *die Erfindung des Schießpulvers*, the invention of gunpowder; *das Unterscheiden ist schwer*, distinguishing is difficult; *der Unterschied ist groß*, the difference is great; *die Unterscheidung des Einen von dem Anderen*, the act of distinguishing one from the other.

(lit. the 'act of writing') conveys also the *concrete* notion of 'letter'; in the same manner: das Essen (lit. the 'act of eating') stands for *dinner* (= Mittagessen); likewise the following:

das Wesen being, creature, das Bewußtsein conscience¹
das Andenken remembrance, etc.

Derivative adjectives.

Adjectives are formed by the affixes *ig* (*icht*), *isch*, *lich*, *en*, *bar*, *sam*, *haft*.

ig.

Adjectives in *ig* are formed 1) from abstract *primary substantives*:

fleißig diligent,	günstig favourable,
mächtig mighty,	nöthig necessary,
prächtigt splendid,	gütig kind.

2) from concrete substantives (without modifying the vowel):

sandig sandy,	Some take <i>icht</i> :
waldig woody,	dornicht thorny,
salzig saltish,	salzicht saltish,
blumig flowery,	bergicht mountainous.

3) from *compound* substantives, e. g. dreieckig, triangular; kahlköpfig bald-headed etc.

OBSERVATION. — Moreover the following adjectives are formed from possessive pronouns and adverbs of time and place:

meinig mine,	jetzig present,
deinig thine,	heutig of to-day,
seinig his,	hiefig of this place,
unfrig our etc.	dortig of that place.

isch.

Adjectives in *isch* are made 1) from names of persons:

fnechtisch slavish,
 friegerisch warlike,
 diebisch thievish,

heuchlerisch hypocritical,
 herrisch imperious.

2) from names of countries and places :

englisch English,
 spanisch Spanish,
 schottisch Scotch,
 schwedisch Swedish,

fölnisch of Cologne,
 frankfurtisch of Frankfort.
 (Comp. §. 54. the foot note.)

among which must be numbered, deutsch German,
 and irdisch earthly, höllisch hellish, himmlisch heavenly.

Remark on affix isch.

In old German all adjectives formed from names, had this termination, as: fürstisch (princely) from Fürst prince, königisch (kingly) from König king, but the modern German is: fürstlich, königlich.

Some are distinguished in meaning, according to their form: so f. i. weibisch means *effeminate*, but weiblich means *woman-like*, female; kindisch childish, but kindlich childlike.

OBSERVATION 1. — Adjectives formed from compound names of countries and places by means of the affix isch, would, if inflected, be offensive to eurythmy. We commonly employ, therefore, in their place, and as adjectives, the substantives made by the affix er, which then are not inflected; e. g. das heidelberger Faß, the Heidelberg tun; die lüneburger Heide, the Luneburg heath; ein frankfurter Kaufmann, a Frankfort merchant; instead of heidelbergische etc.

OBSERVATION 2. — Some adjectives are formed in the same manner from *abstract* substantives, e. g. neidisch envious, spöttisch mocking. Besides, the affix isch is used instead of the lat. *icus* (Engl. *ical*), e. g. logisch logical, physisch physical etc.

lich.

Adjectives in lich are made 1) from abstract substantives:

ängstlich anxious,
 friedlich peaceful,

gebräuchlich usual,
 gefährlich dangerous,

ehrl ^{ich} honest,	abscheulich horrible,
redlich faithful,	glücklich fortunate,
jährlich annual,	absichtlich intentional,
täglich daily,	ausdrücklich express.

2) from names of persons:

männlich male,	weiblich female,
kindlich child-like,	väterlich paternal,
brüderlich fraternal,	mütterlich maternal,
königlich royal,	kaiserlich imperial.

3) from adjectives:

ältlich elderly,	süßlich sweetish,
röthlich reddish,	weißlich whitish,
fränklich sickly,	reichlich liberal.

The following words are never used as adjectives, but only as adverbs:

erstlich firstly,	gänzlich entirely,
folglich consequently,	schwerlich hardly,
freilich it is true,	sicherlich surely,
fürzlich lately,	wahrlich indeed,
neulich „	and some others.

From the termination *lich* denoting *relation of manner*, must be distinguished those derivatives from names of *persons* which originally had no adverbial signification, as: *ritterlich* (knightly*), *königlich* (kingly) etc. Also *weißlich* (whitish), *süßlich* (sweetish) which are, in fact, diminutive adjectives; and lastly, *sterblich* (mortal), *glaublich* (credibly) etc.

en.

The affix *en* serves, as in English, to form adjectives from names of materials, e. g. *golden* golden, *seiden* silken. Before this affix the letter *r* is frequently inserted for the sake of euphony, e. g. in *bleiern* leaden, *hölzern* wooden, *gläsern* made of glass.

*) Which in English *likewise* is an *adjective form* and not an *adverbial*, e. g. — ‘as *knightly* rites require’ (Dryden) ‘a more *knightly* combat shall be performed between us’ (Sidney).

bar, sam, haft.

Adjectives, formed in *bar*, *sam* or *haft* from abstract primary substantives or verbs, express either a possibility or disposition.

sichtbar visible,	eßbar eatable,
danfbar thankful,	furchtsam timid,
standhaft constant,	• arbeitfam diligent,
fündhaft sinful,	fchamhaft bashful,
fchwaghhaft talkative,	tugendhaft virtuous,
lebhaft lively,	folgfam obedient,
fchmeichelhaft flattering,	fparfam sparing,
denfbar conceivable,	wachfam watchful.
trinfbar drinkable,	

Some in *haft* derive, like those in *lich*, from names of persons, such as: *meisterhaft* (*masterly*), *fchülerhaft*, *mädchenschaft* (like a schoolboy, maiden).

Instead of *bar*, the affix *ich* is sometimes used for the sake of euphony, to form adjectives from verbs, as in:

beweglich moveable,	fterblich mortal,
glaublich credible,	unbefchreiblich indescribable.

2. Compounds.

58 When two notions, those f. i. expressed by *boat* and *steam*, are connected in such a manner as to form only one *compound notion*, the words *also* are united into one *compound word*, e. g. *steamboat*. The German language contains a considerably greater portion of similar *compounds* than the English, the number of which is almost daily increasing, with the progress of German literature. A few rules however will suffice to make the student acquainted with the laws and peculiarities of German compounds.

1. *Compound substantives.*

The compound substantive follows the gender and declension of the *second* component, which is always a substantive; e. g. *das Dampfboot*. The first component is a substantive, or sometimes a verb or adjective, e. g. *Tagebuch* day-book, *Schreibbuch* writing-book, *Sauerteig* sour-dough (leaven).

The two components are either connected without any additional sign, or the first component takes one of the terminations *e, r, l, n, s*, which then are termed *signs of composition*. The signs *s* and *n* are originally terminations of the genitive case, whilst *e, r, l* are inserted merely for the sake of euphony and are not so usual as *s* and *n*.

der Land=mann peasant,	der Land=s=mann one of the same country,
der Mond=schein moon-shine,	der Sonne=n=schein sun-shine,
das Rath=haus town-house,	der Rath=s=herr alderman,
das Heide=fraut heath-plant,	die Heide=l=beere bilberry,
der Tag=lohn wages for day-labour,	das Tag=e=werk day's work,
	die Tag=e=s=zeit time of the day.

The first component always takes the principal accent, except in *Langeweile* ennui, *Geheimerrath* privy counsellor, in which moreover the first component is sometimes declined as an adjective, and in *Jahrhundert* century, *Jahrtausend* a thousand years.

OBSERVATION. — Substantives are not only compounded with substantives, adjectives and verbs, but also with the negative prefix *Un*, which likewise takes the principal accent, e. g. *Unglück* misfortune, *Undank* ingratitude, *Unfinn* nonsense. In a few cases the first component is a preposition or adverb, as in: *Antwort* answer, *Antheil* portion, *Abgrund* abyss, *Abgott* idol, *Urbild* original, *Urwelt* primitive world etc. These compound substantives however must be distinguished from those derived from compound verbs, which in general have the same accentuation as the verb. Thus

the prefix does not take the accent in *Verstand* understanding (from *verstehen* to understand), *Begriff* idea (from *begreifen* to comprehend). But it is accentuated in *Beistand* assistance (from *beistehen* to assist), *Angriff* attack (from *angreifen* to attack). Those primary derivatives only, which are formed from verbs compounded with *über*, *unter*, *um*, *wider*, have the accent on the *preposition*, e. g. *Übergabe* deliverance (from *übergeben* to deliver), *Unterhalt* support, (from *unterhalten* to support) etc.

2. Compound adjectives.

- 60 Adjectives are compounded in the same manner as substantives, e. g. *hoffnungsvoll* hopeful, *lebloß* lifeless, *liebenswert* amiable, *hellblau* light-blue, *grasgrün* grass-green.

The accentuation of adjectives, compounded with the negative prefix *un*, is different according to their different significations. The prefix *un* is not accented, when the compound merely expresses the negative of the simple adjective, e. g. *unsterblich* immortal, *unendlich* infinite, *unmöglich* impossible, *unglaublich* incredible. But it takes the accent when the adjective has a positive signification contrary to that of the simple, e. g. *ungefund* ill, *unedel* base, *ungerecht* unjust etc.

3. Compound verbs.

- 61 Verbs are compounded either with *prefixes* or with *adverbs* and *prepositions*.

1. The prefix takes the *subordinate accent* (§. 3), and is not separable from the verb. The compound is then termed an *inseparable compound*.

2. The adverb or preposition takes the *principal accent* (§. 3), and is separable from the verb. The compound is then termed a *separable compound*.

In *separable* compounds, e. g. *aufstehen* to get up, *ausgehen* to go out, the adverb (or preposition) is separated from the verb in the following cases:

1. by the augment *ge* in the past participle: *ausgegangen* gone out, *aufgestanden* got up.

2. by the preposition *zu* in the supine: *auszugehen* to go out, *aufzustehen* to get up.

3. in the construction of the principal sentence: *er steht auf* he gets up, *er geht aus* he goes out *).

a. Inseparable compound verbs.

The following are *inseparable prefixes*:

62

be	e. g. <i>beklagen</i> to bewail,
ent	„ <i>entfleiden</i> to undress,
er	„ <i>erwachen</i> to awake,
ver	„ <i>vergeben</i> to forgive,
zer	„ <i>zerstören</i> to destroy,
miß	„ <i>mißfallen</i> to displease,
voll	„ <i>vollbringen</i> to fulfill,
wider	„ <i>widerstehen</i> to resist,
hinter	„ <i>hintergehen</i> to deceive.

From these prefixes we must distinguish the *augment ge*, prefixed to verbs as well as substantives and adjectives, without however varying their signification, e. g. *genießen* to enjoy, *genesen* to recover, *gebrauchen* to use. The augment *ge* is inseparable and has no accent.

The prefix **be** denotes a transitive relation to an object acted upon, and therefore changes *intransitive* into *transitive* verbs (see Syntax §. 236), e. g.

<i>belachen</i> to laugh at,	<i>begehen</i> to commit,
<i>beweinen</i> to weep for,	<i>besitzen</i> to possess,
<i>bespreehen</i> to discuss,	<i>bereden</i> to persuade.

*) Separable compound verbs entirely correspond to English verbs connected with adverbs, e. g. to come back, to go up, to go down; but in German the adverb is frequently placed before the verb, e. g. in the infinitive *aufstehen*, *ausgehen*, *zurückkommen*; then the adverb and verb are written in one word, and it is in this form that they are found in dictionaries.

The prefix **be** serves also to form derivative verbs, denoting a *cause* (and thus of a *causative* signification), from substantives and adjectives, e. g.

beglücken to make happy,	befreien to set free,
belohnen to reward,	beruhigen to appease,
begeistern to inspire,	beschuldigen to accuse.

Many verbs of this class are used in the *compound* form *only*, and never as *simple* verbs, such are f. i. begeistern, beruhigen, of which there exists no *simple* form geistern, ruhigen, although we have the simple form glücken and lohnen.

The prefix **ent** (= Lat. se- de- re- dis-) implies, for its *original* notion, an action *opposite* to what the *simple* verb denotes; but it sometimes merely implies *separation* or *privation*, e. g.

enthaupten to behead,	entgehen to escape,
entfesseln to unfetter,	entsetzen to depose,
entfleiden to undress,	entführen to carry off,
entschuldigen to excuse,	entsagen to renounce.

In entsprechen to answer, entbieten to bid, enthalten to contain, the prefix **ent** stands in place of **an**; and it has been changed into **emp** before the labial sound in empfehlen to recommend, empfangen to receive, empfinden to feel.

The prefix **er** usually denotes 1) *acquisition* of an object, 2) *completion* of an act, 3) *progression development* or *improvement*.

ver denotes: a relation *against* or to the *disadvantage* of an object, conceived as a personal one; viz.: **ver** (= *away, amiss, miss*) denotes 1) *loss* or *deterioration*, 2) *mistake* [Greek παρα].

erlauben to permit,	verbieten to forbid,
erlangen to attain,	verlieren to lose,
ersparen to save,	verschwenden to spend,
erscheinen to appear,	verschwinden to disappear,
erschaffen to create,	vernichten to annihilate,
erblühen to blossom,	verblühen to decay,

erwachsen to grow up,	verwachsen to be hunch backed
erkennen to acknowledge,	verkennen to mistake,
erziehen to bring up,	verziehen to spoil (a child)
etc.	etc.

In some instances however the prefixes *er* and *ver* are not opposed to one another in their significations, e. g. *erfrieren* to freeze to death, *erschrecken* to be frightened, *erlöschen* to be extinguished, *verschönern* to embellish, *verbessern* to improve etc.

The prefix *zer* expresses destruction or dissolution of a *whole* into its *component* parts, and it has both a *subjective* and *objective* relation, e. g.

zerfallen to fall to pieces,	zerstören to destroy,
zerspringen to spring „	zerdrücken to crush,
zerschlagen to beat „	zerbrechen to break,
zerreißen to tear „	zermalmen to bruise.

That is to say: in *zerfallen* f. i. (*to fall to pieces*) it is *subjective* inasmuch as the act of *falling to pieces* relates or is confined to the *subject*, being in that state without acting upon an *object* (or, as *English Grammar* in general would designate it, without relating to a noun in the *accusative*), whereas the prefix *zer* in *zerschlagen* (*to dash to pieces*) is *objective*, inasmuch as the *act* relates to, or affects not the *subject* (who is dashing to pieces, but the object that is *dashed* to pieces); this will at once convey to the mind of the English pupil a correct notion respecting the grammatical terms of *subjective* and *objective* used in the progress of this work.

The prefix *miß* expresses doing the contrary of the simple verb, or doing it in the wrong way, e. g.

mißfallen to displease,	mißhandeln to ill-treat,
mißglücken } to fail,	mißbrauchen to abuse,
mißlingen }	mißrathen to turn out ill.

The prefix *voll* is used only in *vollbringen* to accomplish, *vollenden* to finish, *vollführen* to execute.

The prefix *wider* *against*, in:

widerfahren to happen,	widerlegen to refute,
widerrathen to dissuade,	widerrufen to retract,
sich widersetzen to oppose,	widerstehen to resist etc.

The prefix **hinter** *behind* is not frequent:

hinterbleiben to remain un- hintertreiben to hinder,
 done, hinterlassen to leave behind.
 hintergehen to deceive,

- 63 The prepositions **durch** *through*, **um** *around*, **über** *over*, and **unter** *under*, are used in the composition of verbs, both as inseparable and unaccented *prefixes*, and as separable and accented *adverbs*. When these prepositions are used as prefixes, their original signification is generalized in a peculiar way, as will appear from the following list of the most usual *inseparable compounds*.

durch, *from one end to the other, thoroughly.*

durchdringen to penetrate,	durchgehen to go through,
durchsuchen } to search	durchsehen } to see through,
durchforschen } thoroughly,	durchblicken }
durchirren to wander through,	durchschauen }
durchbohren to pierce,	durchweben to interweave.

um denotes a *circuitous direction*.

umarmen to embrace,	umfränzen to wreath,
umfängen to surround,	umlagern to encompass,
umgeben „	umschließen to enclose,
umgehen to avoid,	umzingeln to surround,
umgürten to gird,	umschreiben to express by paraphrase.

über implies: a. *covering a surface or extending over a space.*

überbauen to build over,	übersteigen to surpass,
überhäufen to overburden,	überblicken to survey,
überschwemmen to overflow,	übersehen to overlook,
übermalen to paint over,	übernachten to pass the night.

b. *surpassing somebody, or doing something too much.*

überbieten to overbid,	überstimmen to outvote,
überleben to outlive,	überladen to overload,
überflügeln to outflank,	übertreiben to exaggerate,

überlitten to overreach,	überarbeiten to fatigue,
übermannen to overpower,	sich überessen to eat too much,
übertreffen to surpass,	überfüllen to overfill,
überwinden	übereilen to spoil by hurry,
überwältigen } to overcome,	überfüttern to overfeed.

c. giving and receiving.

überbringen to bring,	überlassen to yield up,
überschicken to send,	übertragen to transfer,
überliefern to deliver,	übernehmen to undertake.

d. It has a metaphorical sense in:

überreden to persuade,	überfallen to attack suddenly,
überzeugen to convince,	überraschen to surprise,
überlegen to consider,	übertreiben to exaggerate,
übersetzen to translate,	übertreten to transgress,
überschlagen to calculate,	übergehen to omit.

unter implies *a. below, under.*

untergraben to undermine,	unterschreiben to subscribe,
unterjochen to subjugate,	unterstreichen to underline,
unterstützen to support,	unterzeichnen to sign.

b. prohibiting.

unterdrücken to suppress,	unterlassen to intermit,
unterbrechen to interrupt,	unterschlagen to keep by fraud,
untersagen to interdict,	unterbleiben to remain undone.

c. It has a metaphorical sense in:

unterhandeln to negotiate,	untersuchen to examine,
unterhalten to entertain,	unterscheiden to distinguish,
unternehmen to undertake,	unterwerfen to subdue,
unterrichten to instruct,	sich unterreden to converse.

b. Separable compound verbs.

The prepositions *durch, um, über, unter* and many 64 other prepositions and adverbs form *separable compound verbs*, and then take the *principal accent*, e. g.

ablegen to put off,	anlegen to put on,
einlegen to put in,	umlegen to put down,
zurücklegen to put back,	weglegen to put away.

They are separated from the verb in the past participle, e. g. abgelegt, angelegt, eingelegt, umgelegt, zurückgelegt, weggelegt, in the supine, abzulegen, anzulegen, umzulegen etc. and in the construction of the principal sentence, in the *pres.* and *imperf.* tenses, e. g. ich lege an, du legest an etc.

Many verbs, compounded with *durch*, *um*, *über*, *unter* have different significations, according as they are either *inseparable*, with the full accent placed upon the verb, or *separable*, with the full accent placed upon the adverbial component; the former being generally transitive, the latter, on the other hand, having for the most part an intransitive signification. Thus we distinguish:

<i>Inseparable.</i>	<i>Separable.</i>
durchdringen to penetrate,	durchdringen to make one's way through,
durchgehen to walk from one end to the other,	durchgehen to go through, to escape,
durchlaufen to run from one end to the other,	durchlaufen to run through,
durchreisen to travel over,	durchreisen to travel through,
durchsehen to penetrate (a plot),	durchsehen to look through (a book),
durchstreichen to wander over,	durchstreichen to strike out,
überführen to convey,	überführen to convey over,
übergehen to pass in silence,	übergehen to go over, to pass over,

<i>Inseparable.</i>		<i>Separable.</i>
überſchreiten to trans- gress,	} from überſchreiten to step over, — { überſetzen to go over — { überreiben to distil — { unterhalten to hold under, — { unterſchieben to shove — { umgehen to make a round- — { about, to converse, — { umfleiden to change dress.	überſetzen to trans- late,
überreiben to exag- gerate,		überreiben to distil (spirits),
unterhalten to enter- tain,		unterhalten to hold under,
unterſchieben to sub- stitute falſely,		unterſchieben to shove under,
umgehen to go round, to avoid,		umgehen to make a round- about, to converse,
umfleiden to clothe about,		umfleiden to change dress.

The adverb *wieder* again, is used as an inseparable prefix in *wiederholen* to repeat.

CHAPTER IV.

OF VERBS.

Verbs are in point of signification either *Notional* 65 or *Relational verbs*.

A. Notional verbs are either *Transitive* or *Intransitive* (§. 37). Transitive verbs are in the *Active voice*, as: *Er liebt das Kind* (*he loves the child*), or, in the *Passive voice*, as: *Das Kind wird von ihm geliebt* (*the child is loved by him*). Verbs, originally transitive, as *to prepare, to distinguish, to apply*, are frequently made intransitive again, by adding the reflective pronoun (*myself, thyself, himself* etc.), e. g. *I prepare myself for—, he applies himself to—, they distinguish themselves from—*; and such verbs are termed *Reflective verbs**).

*) The use of the *reflective verb* is much more frequent

As to their formation (see Chapt. III.) verbs are

1. either *roots* or *derivative verbs*;
2. either *simple* or *compound*: and compound verbs are either *separable* or *inseparable* (§. 61—64).

B. Relational verbs or *Auxiliary verbs* (§. 42) express only *time*, or *modality*, or the *passive* voice of a notional verb, which then is termed the *Principal*, e. g. he *has* sung er hat gesungen, he *is* gone er ist gegangen, he *will* sleep er wird schlafen, he *must* sing er muß singen, I *will* go ich will gehen, Cesar *was* murdered Cäsar wurde ermordet.

66 *Verbs are inflected by Person, Number, Tense and Mood.*

Verbs have *three persons* and *two numbers*.

Verbs have *six tenses* to denote the *time* of the action, viz.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Present</i> | er redet he speaks, is speaking,
er springt he springs, is springing. |
| 2. <i>Imperfect</i> | er redete he spoke, was speaking,
er sprang he sprang. |
| 3. <i>Perfect</i> | er hat geredet he has spoken,
er ist gesprungen he has sprung. |
| 4. <i>Pluperf.</i> | er hatte geredet he had spoken,
er war gesprungen he had sprung. |
| 5. <i>Future</i> | er wird springen he will spring,
er wird reden he will speak. |
| 6. <i>Past Future</i> | er wird geredet haben he will have
spoken,
er wird gesprungen sein he will have
sprung. |

in *German* than in *English* and employed in cases, when in the *latter* language the *passive* voice is resorted to; thus f. i. der verlorne Schlüssel hat sich gefunden (lit. *the lost key has found itself* = *has been found*; cf. *First Germ. Book* (§. 317).

Two of these tenses, the Present and Imperfect, are *simple* as in English, formed by terminations only; the rest are formed by auxiliary verbs, joined with the participle or infinitive of the Principal.

Verbs have four Moods to denote the different relations of the sentence with regard to the speaker (§. 33, 34), viz.:

1. *Indicative*, used in real assertion of the speaker: e. g. er spricht richtig he speaks correctly.

2. *Conjunctive*, used in an assertion of another person, spoken of or quoted by the speaker: e. g. man sagt, er spreche nicht richtig they say that he speaks incorrectly.

3. *Conditional*, used in conditional sentences: e. g. wenn er besser spräche if he would (= were to) speak better.

4. *Imperative*, used in expressing command or entreaty: e. g. Sprich! speak!

In German the Imperative is formed only in the Present tense; the Conjunctive and Conditional only in the Present, Perfect and Future tenses.

Verbs have two Infinitives and two Participles (present and past).

The infinitive when representing the verb in a *substantive* form, is a *verbal substantive*; the participle when representing it in an adjective form, is a *participial* or *verbal adjective*: e. g. 'To rise early is healthful.' 'An early rising man.' 'The newly risen sun.' In E. the verbal in *ing* is frequently used as a substantive, e. g. 'Rising early is healthful,' and then it is equivalent to an *infinitive*. This is never done in German, so that in translating from English into the latter language, we have to distinguish, whether a verbal in *ing* is an *infinitive* or a *participle*.

The infinitive is frequently preceded by the preposition *to* zu, e. g. to speak zu sprechen. The infinitive with zu to, is in this Grammar called *Supine*.

In compound verbal forms the preposition *zu* always precedes that part which is in the infinitive, as in English; e. g. to have seen, *gesehen* (participle) *zu haben* (infin.); to be loved *geliebt zu werden*. The same takes place in separable compound verbs, e. g. *auf zu stehen* to get up, *aus zu gehen* to go out, *zurück zu kommen* to come back, and when the verb is preceded by an object, e. g. *Brod zu essen* to eat bread, *nach Hause zu gehen* to go home etc.

In general the *supine* is employed in German, whenever in English the infinitive is preceded by *to*.

The *supine* connected with the verb *haben to have* or *sein to be*, always implies either *possibility*, e. g. he *has much money to spend* er hat viel Geld auszugeben; a large prize *is to be gained* ein großer Preis ist zu gewinnen; or *necessity*, e. g. he *has a difficult task to perform* er hat eine schwere Arbeit zu verrichten, great debts *are still to be paid* große Schulden sind noch zu bezahlen.

It will be observed that, in similar locutions, the German language does not admit of the *passive* voice instead of the *active*: e. g. — *is to be gained* ist zu gewinnen, — *is to be paid* ist zu bezahlen. What *is to be done?* Was ist zu thun?

When a substantive is connected with this *supine*, qualifying it as an *attribute*, its termination *en* (*zu gewinnen*) is changed into *end* (*zu gewinnend*), and thus a *participle* is formed, declined like other participles: e. g. the money to be spent das auszugebende Geld, the prize to be won der zu gewinnende Preis, the debts to be paid die zu bezahlenden Schulden.

The following table shows the Moods and Verbals, with their respective Tenses:

MOODS. **VERBALS.**

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Conditional.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Present	er springt, (he leaps)	er springe,	er spränge,	springe,	springen,	springend,
	er redet, (he speaks)	er rede,	er redete,	rede,	reden,	redend.
Imperf.	er sprang, er redete.	er redete.	er redete.	rede,	reden,	redend.
Perfect	er ist gesprungen, er hat geredet,	er sei gesprungen, er habe geredet,	er wäre gesprungen, er hätte geredet,	gesprungen sein, geredet haben,	gesprungen, geredet haben,	gesprungen, geredet.
	er war gesprungen, er hatte geredet.	er sei gesprungen, er habe geredet,	er wäre gesprungen, er hätte geredet,	gesprungen sein, geredet haben,	gesprungen, geredet haben,	gesprungen, geredet.
Plup.	er wird springen, er wird reden,	er werde springen, er werde reden,	er würde springen, er würde reden.	gesprungen sein, geredet haben,	gesprungen, geredet haben,	gesprungen, geredet.
Future	er wird gesprun= gen sein, er wird geredet haben,	er werde gesprun= gen sein, er werde geredet haben,	er würde gesprun= gen sein, er würde geredet haben,	gesprungen sein, geredet haben,	gesprungen, geredet haben,	gesprungen, geredet.
Past Fut.	er wird gesprun= gen sein, er wird geredet haben,	er werde gesprun= gen sein, er werde geredet haben,	er würde gesprun= gen sein, er würde geredet haben,	gesprungen sein, geredet haben,	gesprungen, geredet haben,	gesprungen, geredet.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Verbs.

The German language does not admit of those compound forms, represented by the verb *to be* in connexion with the present participle, e. g. *he is writing, he was sleeping*; nor of those, formed by the verb *to do* and the infinitive, e. g. *he does not write, he did not sleep*; but always employs the simple forms; er *ſchreibt*, er *ſchlieſt*; er *ſchreibt nicht*, er *ſchlieſt nicht* instead of them.

Conjugation.

69 ¶ In German, as in English, there are two different modes of conjugation, viz.:

I. the ancient form (for roots), and

II. the modern form (for derivative verbs).

The ancient and modern forms differ only in the formation of the imperfect and past participle.

In the *ancient form* the vowel of the verb is *changed* in the imperfect and past participle, in a similar way as in English irregular verbs, e. g.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
ſingen to sing,	ſang sang,	geſungen sung,
bitten to bid,	bat bade,	gebeten bidden,
kommen to come,	kam came,	gekommen come.

For the particular rules relating to this change of vowel see §. 78 etc.

In the *modern form* the vowel is never changed, but both the imperfect and past participle take the termination *et* (*ed* in English), to which are appended the terminations, indicating the different persons, e. g.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
red=en to talk,	red=et=e talked,	gered=et talked,
leb=en to live,	leb=et=e lived,	geleb=et lived.

70 The three persons, Singular and Plural, in all simple tenses of the ancient and modern forms are formed by the following terminations:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st person — e*)	— en
2d „ — est	— et
3d „ — e*)	— en

*) The first and third persons Sing. have no sign in the Imperfect of the ancient form. The third person Sing. has *et* in the Present Indicative of both forms.

The *Conditional moods* in the modern form does not differ from the imperfect; in the ancient form it takes the changed vowel of the imperfect, which moreover is modified if possible (§. 2; a into ä; o into ö; u into ü).

Further deviations from the general rule are to be found in the list of the verbs of the I. class.

The *Conjunctive moods* does not differ from the Indicative present, except by taking *e* in the 3d Sing.

The *Imperative mood* has only the 2d persons Sing. and Plur., with the terminations:

Sing. — e, *Plur.* — et.

The *Infinitive* terminates in — en,

The *Present participle* in — end,

The *past participle* in the anc. f. in — en,
mod. f. in — et,

and besides assumes the *Augment* ge.

Exception: *If the first syllable has not the accent, the 71 verb takes no augment.* This is the case with

1. those verbs which have the accented termination
iren, e. g. studiren to study part. studirt,
regiren to rule „ regirt,
marschiren to march „ marschirt.

2. those which are compounded with *unaccented prefixes* (§. 62), e. g.

besuchen to visit	part. besucht,
erlangen to obtain	„ erlangt,
verlieren to lose	„ verloren,
entfliehen to escape	„ entflohen,

zerstören to destroy	part. zerstört,
übersetzen to translate	„ übersetzt,
unternehmen to undertake	„ unternommen,
umarmen to embrace	„ umarmt,
widerstehen to resist	„ widerstanden,
mißlingen to fail	„ mißlungen,
vollenden to achieve	„ vollendet,
	etc.

In *separable compound verbs* (§. 64) the augment *ge* is placed between the separable adverb and the verb; e. g.

anfallen to attack	part. angefallen,
abschreiben to copy	„ abgeschrieben,
zuschließen to lock up	„ zugeschlossen,
wegschicken to send away	„ weggeschickt,
anfangen to begin	„ angefangen.

Personal terminations of the simple tenses of both 72 forms of conjugation:

Present tense of both forms.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	— e	— e	
” 2.	— est	— est	— e
” 3.	— et	— e	
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	— en	— en	
” 2.	— et	— et	— et
” 3.	— en	— en	

Infinitive — en

Partic. pres. — end

” *past* { ge — en
 { ge — et

	<i>Imperfect tense of the ancient form.</i>	<i>Conditional of the ancient form.</i>	<i>Imperfect tense and Cond. of the mod. form.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	the vowel is changed, —	the vowel of the imperfect is modified, — e	— ete
” 2.	— est	— est	— etest
” 3.	—	— e	— ete
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	— en	— en	— eten
” 2.	— et	— et	— etet
” 3.	— en	— en	— eten

SIMPLE FORMS OF THE VERB.

*I. Ancient form.**II. Modern form.*

Infinitive spring=en to leap, red=en to speak.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Sing. 1. ich spring=e I leap, ich red=c I speak,
 2. du — est thou leapest, du — est thou speakest,
 3. er — et he leaps, er — et he speaks,
Plur. 1. wir — en we leap, wir — en we speak,
 2. ihr — et you leap, ihr — et you speak,
 3. sie — en they leap, sie — en they speak.

Imperfect tense.

Sing. 1. ich sprang I leapt, ich red=ete I spoke,
 2. du — est du — etest
 3. er — er — ete
Plur. 1. wir — en wir — eten
 2. ihr — et ihr — etet
 3. sie — en sie — eten.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Differs from the Indicative Present only in the

Sing. 3. er spring=e, er red=c.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Sing. 1. ich spräng=e I should, ich red=ete I should speak,
 2. du — est leap du — etest
 3. er — e er — ete
Plur. 1. wir — en wir — eten
 2. ihr — et ihr — etet
 3. sie — en sie — eten.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. 2. spring=e leap, red=e speak,
Plur. 2. — et — et

Participles.

Pres. spring=end leaping, red=end speaking,
Past. gesprung=en leapt, gcred=et spoken.

Exercises.

trinken to drink (anc. f.)	baden to bathe (mod. f.)
singen to sing „	bauen to build „
klingen to sound „	reisen to travel „
zwingen to compel „	fischen to fish „

to be conjugated in the same way.

The vowel *e*, in the terminations *est* and *et*, is frequently dropped.

1) In *est* the *e* is commonly dropped, except after *d*, *t*, *f*, *ß*, *z* and *sch*.

du hörst thou hearest, but:	du leidest thou sufferst,
du singst „ singest,	du reitest „ ridest,
du gibst „ givest,	du bläsest „ blowest,
	du beißeſt „ biteſt
	etc.

2) In *et* the *e* is commonly dropped, except after *d* and *t*.

er hört, gehört, but er leidet,
er ſingt, er reitet,
er liebt, geliebt gefleidet.

In those derivative verbs which have the termination *eln* (*el=en*) or *ern* (*er=en*) in the infinitive, the vowel *e* of the termination of *derivation* (*el, er*) is dropped in the first pers. sing. pres.; e. g. *ich hand=le*, I act; *ich wand=le*, I walk; *ich wand=er* I wander: whilst the vowel *e* of the termination of *inflection* is dropped in all other forms; e. g. *hand=el=t*, *hand=el=t=en*, *gehand=el=t*, *hand=el=nd*, *hand=el=n*, *wand=er=t*, *wand=er=t=est*, *gewand=er=t*, *wand=er=nd*.

75 SIMPLE FORMS OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS

sein to be, haben to have, werden to become.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

S. 1. ich bin I am,	— habe I have,	— werde I become,
2. du bist	— hast	— wirst
3. er ist	— hat	— wird
P. 1. wir sind	— haben	— werden
2. ihr seid	— habet	— werdet
3. sie sind	— haben	— werden

Imperfect tense.

S. 1. ich war I was	— hatte I had,	— wurde I became,
2. du warst	— hattest	— wurdest
3. er war	— hatte	— wurde
P. 1. wir waren	— hatten	— wurden
2. ihr waret	— hättet	— würdet
3. sie waren	— hatten	— wurden

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

S. 1. ich sei I am,	— habe I have,	— werde I become,
2. du seiest	— habest	— werdest
3. er sei	— habe	— werde
P. 1. wir seien	— haben	— werden
2. ihr seiet	— habet	— werdet
3. sie seien	— haben	— werden

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

S. 1. ich wäre I would be,	— hätte I would have,	— würde I would become,
2. du wärest	— hättest	— würdest
3. er wäre	— hätte	— würde
P. 1. wir wären	— hätten	— würden
2. ihr wäret	— hättet	— würdet
3. sie wären	— hätten	— würden

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. sei be,	habe have,	werde become,
P. 2. seid	habet	werdet

Participles.

<i>Pres.</i> seiend-being,	habend having,	werdend becoming,
<i>Past.</i> gewesen been,	gehabt had,	geworden become.

The past participle of werden, when used in forming the passive voice, is not geworden, but worden.

COMPOUND FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

The *perfect and pluperfect tenses* are formed by the 76 past participle of the principal verb and the *present and imperfect tenses* of the auxiliary verbs haben or sein. Which of the two auxiliary verbs is to be used, will be hereafter (§. 90) explained. It will suffice at present to characterise the tenses by the *third person singular*, the form of which is more marked, than that of the other persons.

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>			
gesprungen sein,	gesprungen zu sein	to	have	leapt,
geredet haben,	geredet zu haben	„	„	spoken,
gewesen sein,	gewesen zu sein	„	„	been,
gehabt haben	gehabt zu haben	„	„	had.

Indicative mood.

er ist gesprochen	he has leapt,
er hat geredet	„ „ spoken,
er ist gewesen	„ „ been,
er hat gehabt	„ „ had.

Conjunctive mood.

er sei gesprochen	he has leapt,
er habe geredet	„ „ spoken,
er sei gewesen	„ „ been,
er habe gehabt	„ „ had.

Conditional mood.

er wäre gesprungen	he would have leapt,
er hätte geredet	„ „ „ spoken,
er wäre gewesen	„ „ „ been,
er hätte gehabt	„ „ „ had.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

er war gesprungen	he had leapt,
er hatte geredet	„ „ spoken,
er war gewesen	„ „ been,
er hatte gehabt	„ „ had.

The *future tense* is formed by the infinitive present of the principal verb and the present tense of *werden*.

FUTURE TENSE.

Indicative mood.

S. 1. ich werde	} springen,	I shall	} leap,			
2. du wirst				} reden,	thou wilt	} speak,
3. er wird						
P. 1. wir werden	} haben,	we shall	} have.			
2. ihr werdet				} they will	}	
3. sie werden						

Conjunctive mood.

S. 1. ich werde	} springen,	I shall	} leap,			
2. du werdest				} reden,	thou wilt	} speak,
3. er werde						
z.	} haben,	etc.	} have.			

Conditional mood.

S. 1. ich würde	} springen,	I should	} leap,			
2. du würdest				} reden,	thou wouldst	} speak,
3. er würde						
z.	} haben,	etc.	} have.			

The *past future tense* is formed by the infinitive perfect of the principal verb and the present tense of *werden*.

PAST FUTURE TENSE.

Indicative mood.

S. 3. er wird gesprungen sein ꝛ. he will have leapt,
er wird geredet haben ꝛ. „ „ „ spoken.

Conjunctive mood.

er werde gesprungen sein ꝛ. he will have leapt,
er werde geredet haben ꝛ. „ „ „ spoken.

Conditional mood.

er würde gesprungen sein ꝛ. he would have leapt,
er würde geredet haben ꝛ. „ „ „ spoken.

In accessory sentences (§. 27) the present indicative of the auxiliary verbs *haben* and *sein* is sometimes omitted for the sake of eurythmy, e. g. *der Mann, den ich gesehen (habe)*, 'the man, whom I have seen'; *der Ort, wo ich gewesen (bin)*, 'the place, where I have been'.

The *passive voice* is formed by the past participle of ⁷⁷ the principal verb and the auxiliary verb *werden* (to become, to grow), and its conjugation is effected merely by conjugating the auxiliary verb through all its tenses, simple and compound, and through all moods, e. g.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Infinitive.

geliebet werden to be loved.

Indicative mood.

er wird geliebet he is loved.

Conjunctive mood.

er werde geliebet he is loved.

Conditional mood.

er würde geliebet he would be loved.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

er wurde geliebet he was loved.

PERFECT TENSE.

Infinitive.

geliebet worden sein to have been loved.

Indicative mood.

er ist geliebet worden he has been loved.

Conjunctive mood.

er sei geliebet worden he has been loved.

Conditional mood.

er wäre geliebet worden he would have been loved.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

er war geliebet worden he had been loved.

FUTURE TENSE.

Indicative mood.

er wird geliebet werden he will be loved.

Conjunctive mood.

er werde geliebet werden he will be loved.

Conditional mood.

er würde geliebet werden he would be loved.

PAST FUTURE TENSE.

er wird geliebet worden sein he will have been loved.

CHANGE OF THE VOWEL IN THE ANCIENT FORM.

Verbs of the ancient form change their vowel in 78 the imperfect tense and past participle. All verbs of this form may be reduced into *three classes*, according to their original vowel, and these classes again are subdivided, according to the particular change of this vowel.

The first class contains all radical verbs with the vowel *i* or *e*, and a few with *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *au*.

The second class contains all radical verbs with the diphthong *ei*.

The third class contains all radical verbs with the vowel *a* and a few with *au*, *o*, *u*.

These vowels are changed according to the following scheme:

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
CLASS I.		
<i>Subdiv.</i> 1. <i>i</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>
" 2. <i>i</i> or <i>e</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>o</i>
" 3. <i>i</i> „ <i>e</i> (<i>ä</i> , <i>ö</i> , <i>ü</i> , <i>au</i>)	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
" 4. <i>i</i> „ <i>e</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>e</i>
CLASS II.		
<i>Subdiv.</i> 1. <i>ei</i>	<i>i</i> (short)	<i>i</i> (short)
" 2. <i>ei</i>	<i>ie</i> (long)	<i>ie</i> (long)
CLASS III.		
<i>Subdiv.</i> 1. <i>a</i> (<i>au</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i>)	<i>ie</i>	<i>a</i> (<i>au</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i>)
" 2. <i>a</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>a</i>

The change of the vowel is sometimes attended by 79 a change of the following consonant, according to §. 5.

When a long radical vowel, in consequence of being changed by conjugation, becomes short, the following consonant is doubled; and if it is *d*, it is changed into *tt*, e. g.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
with a long vowel	— short vowel	— short vowel
reiten	ritt	geritten
streiten	stritt	gestritten
schneiden	schnitt	geschnitten
leiden	litt	gelitten
beißen	biß, plur. bissen	gebissen
fließen	floß „ flossen	geflossen
schießen	schoß „ schossen	geschossen.

When on the other hand a short vowel becomes long, the following double consonant is changed into a single one, e. g.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
with a short vowel	— long vowel	— short vowel.
kommen	kam	gekommen
treffen	traf	getroffen
fallen	fiel	gefallen
schaffen	schuf	geschaffen
messen	maß, plur. maßen	gemessen
vergessen	vergaß „ vergaßen	vergessen.

Many verbs with the original vowel *e* change this vowel into *i* (short) or *ie* (long) in the second and third persons sing. indic. pres. and in the singular of the imperative mood; the same verbs drop the termination *e* of the singular of the imperative mood, e. g.

	<i>Indicative present.</i>		<i>Imperative.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> ich gebe	du gibst	er gibt	gib
<i>Plur.</i> wir geben	ihr gebet	sie geben	gebet
<i>S.</i> ich helfe	du hilfst	er hilft	hilf
<i>P.</i> wir helfen	ihr helfet	sie helfen	helfet
<i>S.</i> ich stehle	du stiehlest	er stiehlt	stiehl
<i>P.</i> wir stehlen	ihr stehlet	sie stehlen	stehlet
<i>S.</i> ich nehme	du nimmst	er nimmt	nimm
<i>P.</i> wir nehmen	ihr nehmet	sie nehmen	nehmet.

This irregularity will be marked in the following list by adding merely the imperative mood; but it is to be observed that the second and third pers. sing. ind. pres. always correspond with the imperative mood.

LIST OF THE VERBS OF THE ANCIENT FORM.

80

Class I.

Original vowel i, or e (ä, ö).

First subdivision i — ä — u

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
to bind	binden	gebunden
" find	finden	gefunden
" flay	schinden	geschunden
" vanish	schwinden	geschwunden
" wind	winden	gewunden
" bargain	dingen	gedungen
" press, to urge	dringen	gedrungen
" succeed	gelingen	gelungen
" sound	flingen	gefungen
" wring or struggle	ringen	gerungen
" wind or swallow	schlingen	geschlungen
" swing	schwingen	geschwungen
" sing	singen	gesungen
" spring	springen	gesprungen
" force	zwingen	gezwungen
" sink	sinken	gesunken
" stink	stinken	gestunken
" drink	trinken	getrunken

Infinitive, Imperf. t., Past part.

85

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Conditional.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
to begin	beginnen		begann	begönne	begonnen §. 71.
" win	gewinnen		gewann	gewönne or gewänne	gewonnen
" run	rinnen		rann	rönne	geronnen
" think	finnen		fann	fönne	gesonnen
" spin	spinnen		spann	spönne	gesponnen
" swim	schwimmen		schwamm	schwömmte or schwämme	geschwommen
" come	kommen		kam §. 79.	käme	gekommen
" command	befehlen *)	befehl	befahl	beföhle	befohlen §. 71.
" recommend	empfehlen	empfehl	empfohl	empföhle	empfohlen "
" steal	stehlen	stiehl	stahl	stöhle	gestohlen
" take	nehmen	nimm	nahm	nähme	genommen §. 79.
" bear (children)	gebären	gebier	gebar	gebäre	geboren
" be worth	gelten	gilt	galt	gölte	gegolten
" chide	schelten	schilt	schalt	schölte	gescholten
" help	helfen	hilf	half	hülfe	geholfen
" conceal	bergen	birg	borg		geborgen
" die	sterben	stirb	starb	stürbe	gestorben
" spoil or be spoiled	verderben	verdirb	verdarb	verdürbe	verdorben §. 71.

Etymology.

*) fehlen to err, to miss, and erschrecken to frighten, are conjugated in the modern form.

to sue for	werben	worb	würbe	geworben
" throw	werfen	warf	würfe	geworfen
" burst, split	bersten	barst, borst	börste	geborsten
" break	brechen	brach	bräche	gebrochen
" speak	sprechen	sprach	spräche	gesprochen
" sting	stechen	stach	stäche	gestochen
" be frightened	erschrecken	erschraf	erschraße	erschrocken §. 71.
" hit	treffen	traf §. 79.	träfe	getroffen

Third subdivision *t* (ie, ü) } — o — o
e (ä, ö, au) }

82

Infinitive.

to shove	schieben
" disperse	stieben
" bend	biegen
" fly	fliegen
" weigh	wiegen
" tell lies	lügen
" deceive	betrügen
" flee	fliehen
" pull	ziehen
" freeze	frieren

Imperfect tense.

schoß
stob
bog
flog
wog
log
betrog
floh
zog
fror

Past participle.

geschoben
gestoben
gebogen
geflogen
gewogen
gelogen
betrogen §. 71.
geflohen
gezogen
gefroren

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
to lose	verlor	verloren §. 71.
„ offer, bid	bot	geboten
„ boil	sott	gesotten §. 79.
„ flow	floß plur. floßen	geflossen „
„ enjoy	genoß	genossen
„ pour	goß	gegossen
„ shoot	schuß	geschossen
„ shut	schloß	geschlossen
„ sprout	sproß	gesprossen
„ grieve	verdroß	verdroffen §. 71.
to glimmer	glomm	geglommen
„ climb	flomm	geflommen
to creep	froch	gefrochen
„ smell	roch	gerochen
„ drip	troff §. 79.	getroffen
to lift up	hob	gehoben
„ weave	wob	gewoben
„ induce	bewog	bewogen §. 71.
„ perform or		
„ practise	pflog	gepflogen

*) *bewegen* to move, and *pflügen* to nurse, take care, or to be accustomed, are conjugated in the modern form.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
to ferment	gähren		gohr	gegohren
" shear	scheren		schor	geschoren
" fester	schwären		schwör	geschworen
" swear	schwören		schwör	geschworen
" fight	fechten	sicht	focht	gefochten
" twine	flechten	flicht	flocht	geflochten
" thrash	dreischen	drisch	drosch	gedroschen
" become	erlösch	erlich	erlosch	erloschen S. 71.
extinguished	verlösch	verlich	verlosch	verloschen "
" milk	melfen		molf	gemolffen
" melt	schmelzen	schmilz	schmolz	geschmolzen
" spring forth	quellen	quill	quoll	gequollen
" swell	schwellen	schwill	schwoll	geschwollen
" drink, applied	saufen		soff	gesoffen
to beasts				
" suck	saugen		sog	gesogen
" snort	schrauben		schrob	geschroben
" screw	schrauben		schrob	geschroben

Fourth subdivision i or e, — a (long) — e.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
to lie	liegen	lag	gelegen
” beg	bitten	bat §. 79	gebeten
” sit	sitzen	saß	gesessen
” tread	treten	trat	getreten
” eat	essen	aß, aßen	gegessen
” devour	fressen	fraß	gefressen
” measure	messen	maß	gemessen
” forget	vergessen	vergaß	vergessen
” recover, from illness	genesen	genas	genesen
” read	lesen	las	gelesen
” see	sehen	sah	gesehen
” happen	geschehen	geschah	geschehen
” give	geben	gab	gegeben

Class II.

84

The original vowel *ei*, is changed in the past tense and past participle into *i*, which is short (*i*) or long (*ie*), according as the final consonant is *hard* or *soft*.

First subdivision *ei* — *i* — *i*.

Infinitive.

to grow pale erleichen
 „ resemble gleichen
 „ sneak schleichen
 „ stroke streichen
 „ yield weichen
 „ seize greifen
 „ pinch kneifen
 „ whistle pfeifen
 „ grind schleifen
 „ suffer leiden
 „ cut schneiden
 „ glide gleiten
 „ step schreiten
 „ quarrel streiten
 „ ride reiten

Imperfect.

erblich
 glich
 schlich
 strich
 wich
 griff
 kniff
 pfiß
 schliß
 litt
 schnitt
 glitt
 schritt
 stritt
 ritt

Past participle.

erblichen
 geglichen
 geschlichen
 gestrichen
 gewichen
 gegriffen
 gefniffen
 gepfißen
 geschliffen
 gelitten
 geschnitten
 geglitten
 geschritten
 gestritten
 geritten

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
to bite	biß plur. bißen	gebissen
" tear	riß " rissen	gerissen
" slit	schliß " schliffen	geschliffen
" throw	schmiß " schmissen	geschmissen
" apply oneself	besiß " besaßen	besaßen §. 71.
<i>Second subdivision ei — ie — ie</i>		
to cry	schrie	geschrieben
" spit	spie	gespicien
" prosper	gedieh	gediehen
" lend	lieh	geliehen
" accuse of	zieh	geziesen
" remain	blieb	geblieben
" rub	rieb	gerieben
" write	schrieb	geschrieben
" push, to drive	trieb	getrieben
" shun	mied	gemieden
" part, separate	schied	geschieden
" be silent	schwieg	geschwiegen
" ascend	stieg	gestiegen
" shine	schien	geschienen
" praise	preis	gepriesen
" show	wies	gewiesen

Class III.

86

The original vowel *a* (in a few verbs: *au, o, ei*) is not changed in the Participle, is *modified* in the 2d and 3d pers. sing. pres. and changed into *ie* or *a* in the past tense.

First subdivision a — ie — a.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Singul. Indicat. Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
to blow	2d Pers. du bläst	blies	geblasen
„ roast	du brätst	briet	gebraten
„ advise	du rätst	rieth	gerathen
„ sleep	du schläfst	schlief	geschlafen
„ fall	du fällst	fiel	gefallen
„ hold	du hältst	hielt	gehalten
„ catch	du fängst	fung	gefangen
„ hang	du hängst	hing	gehungen
„ let	du lässest	ließ	gelassen
„ cut	du hauest	hieb	gehauen
„ run	du läufst	lief	gelaufen
„ call or to be called		hieß	geheißen
„ push	du stoßest	stieß	gestoßen
„ call	er rief	rief	gerufen

Infinitive, Imperf. t., Past part.

93

Past participle.

Imperfect.

Singular Indicative Present.

	Infinitive.	Singular Indicative Present.	Imperfect.	Past participle.
to dig	graben	2d Pers. du gräbst	grub	gegraben
" load	laden	du lädst	lud	geladen
" ask	fragen	du fragst	frug or fragte	gefragt
" beat	schlagen	du schlägst	schlug	geschlagen
" bear	tragen	du trägst	trug	getragen
" move	fahren	du fährst	fuhr	gefahren
" create	schaffen *)	du schaffst	schuf	geschaffen
" grow	wachsen	du wächst	wuchs!	gewachsen
" wash	waschen	du wäschst	wusch	gewaschen

In the following the participle only is conjugated in the ancient form.

to bake	baden	gebaden
" fold	salten	gesalten
" split	spalten	gespalten
" grind	malen	gemalen
" salt	salzen	gesalzen

*) schaffen to work, is conjugated in the modern form.
 heiraten to marry, berathschlagen to deliberate, veranlassen to occasion, and willfahren to comply,
 being derivatives of heirat, Rathschlag, Anlaß &c., are conjugated in the modern form.

Irregular Verbs.

Besides the auxiliary verbs *sein*, *haben*, and *werden*, 88 which have been explained §. 74, the following only are really irregular.

1. Verbs taking the terminations of the ancient form.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
to go	gehen	ging	gegangen
„ stand	stehen	stand	gestanden
„ do	thun	that	gethan.

2. Verbs taking the termination of the modern form, but changing, at the same time, their vowel.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperf. t.</i>	<i>Condition.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
to bring	bringen	brachte	brächte	gebracht
„ think	denken	dachte	dächte	gedacht
„ burn	brennen	brannte	brennte	gebrannt
„ know	kennen	kante	kante	gekant
„ name	nennen	nannte	nennte	genannt
„ run	rennen	rannte	rennte	gerannt
„ send	senden	sandte	sendete	gesandt
„ turn	wenden	wandte	wendete	gewandt.

Senden and wenden are also conjugated regularly in the modern form.

The following verbs form the sing. pres. by a change 89 of vowel and without any termination in the 1st and 3d persons (like the imperfect tense of the ancient form); the rest is conjugated in the modern form, thus:

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present tense.</i>			<i>Indicative.</i>
dürfen	ich darf	du darfst	er darf	wir dürfen etc.
können	ich kann	du kannst	er kann	wir können „
mögen	ich mag	du magst	er mag	wir mögen „
müssen	ich muß	du mußt	er muß	wir müssen „
sollen	ich soll	du sollst	er soll	wir sollen „
wollen	ich will	du willst	er will	wir wollen „
wissen	ich weiß	du weißt	er weiß	wir wissen „

<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Conditional.</i>	<i>Imperf. t.</i>	<i>Past part. *)</i>
ich dürfe etc.	dürfte etc.	durfte	gedurft
ich könne	könnte	konnte	gekonnt
ich möge	möchte	mochte	gemocht
ich müsse	müßte	mußte	gemußt
ich solle	sollte	sollte	gesollt
ich wolle	wollte	wollte	gewollt
ich wisse	wüßte	wußte	gewußt

90 The past participle of the auxiliary verbs of modality *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, is used in forming the perfect and pluperfect tenses only when the principal verb is omitted; if these auxiliary verbs are connected with the infinitive of another verb, the *infinitive* is employed instead of the participle in the perfect and pluperfect tenses, e. g. er hat tanzen *wollen*, aber er hat es nicht *gekonnt*, 'he wished to dance, but he could not'; er hat sprechen *müssen*, obgleich er es nicht *gewollt* hat, 'he has been obliged to speak, though he did not wish it'; er hat nicht kommen *können*, 'he could not come'.

The same rule applies to some other verbs requiring an *infinitive* (without *zu*, *to*) after them, such as: *lassen* to let, *sehen* to see, *hören* to hear etc., e. g. ich habe ihn gehen *lassen* (not *gelassen*), 'I have let him go'; ich habe das Kind schreiben *sehen*, 'I have seen the child write'; ich habe sie singen *hören*, 'I have heard her sing'.

REMARKS.

1. *Dürfen*.

Dürfen (litr. *to dare*) also denotes $\alphamoral possibility and *permission*, e. g. Jedermann darf in die öffentliche Versammlung gehen (any man may go to the public assembly); wir dürfen unsere Feinde nicht hassen (we are not permitted to hate our enemies). It is also idiomatically used, as f. i. in the following phrase: Er dürfte dir wohl die Wahrheit verhehlt haben (litr. 'he dared' =)$

*) For the use of this participle see §. 76.

(he *may* very likely have concealed the truth from you).

It denotes β) *logical possibility*, e. g. die Frage dürfte wohl überflüssig sein (the question may very possibly be superfluous).

2. Können

denotes α) *physical possibility*, e. g. der Fisch kann schwimmen (the fish *can* swim); but it denotes also β) *moral possibility*, in which case it answers to the English *may*, e. g. er kann mich betrogen haben (he *may* have deceived me).

3. Mögen

denotes α) *concession*, e. g. du magst das Buch behalten (you may keep the book, and β) it also implies the notion of *liking*, as f. i. in the phrase: Der Träge mag nicht arbeiten (the lazy man does not like working).

4. Müssen

denotes α) *physical necessity*, e. g. der Mensch muß sterben (man *must* die); β) *moral necessity*, e. g. du mußt aufmerksam sein (you *must* be attentive), and γ) it conveys *idiomatically* the notion of the English *can*, e. g. er muß noch nicht angekommen sein (he cannot be returned yet).

5. Sollen

denotes α) *obligation imposed upon a person*, e. g. er soll nicht ausgehen he must not go out (= is *ordered* not to go out); du sollst nicht stehlen (thou shalt not steal); but β) it is used strictly *idiomatically* as f. i. in the phrases: Er soll krank sein (he *is said* to be ill) which implies no notion of *obligation* or *necessity*, again: Sein Bruder soll todt sein (his brother *is said* to be dead).

6. Wollen

denotes α) *intention* or *volition*, e. g. sie wollen verreisen (they intend setting out on a journey); but β) it

is *idiomatically* used, e. g. er will ihn in Italien gesehen haben (he says or pretends that he has seen him in Italy*).

*) For further directions and more extensive rules respecting the peculiarities of these verbs see Arnold and Frädersdorf *First German Book*, Less. 20—22 and *Second German Book*, §. 55—71, and the Exercises.

ALPHABETIC LIST OF THE VERBS OF THE
ANCIENT FORM AND OF THE IRREGULAR
VERBS*).

B.		F.		H.	
backen	see §. 87	fahren	see §. 87	haben	see §. 75
befehlen	81	fallen	86	halten	86
befleissen	84	falten	87	hangen	86
beginnen	81	fangen	86	hauen	86
beißen	84	fechten	82	heben	86
bergen	81	finden	80	heißen	86
bersten	81	flechten	82	helfen	81
betrügen	82	fliegen	82		
bewegen	82	fliehen	82	R.	
biegen	82	fließen	82	kennen	
bieten	82	fragen	87	klimmen	82
binden	80	fressen	83	klingen	80
bitten	83	frieren	82	kneifen	84
blasen	96			kommen	87
bleiben	85	G.		können	89
bleichen	84	gähren	82	kriechen	82
braten	86	gebären	81		
brechen	81	geben	83	L.	
brennen	88	gedeihen	85	laden	87
bringen	88	gehen	88	lassen	86
		gelingen	80	laufen	86
D.		gelten	81	leiden	84
denken	88	genesen	83	leihen	85
dingen	80	genießen	82	lesen	83
dreschen	82	geschehen	83	liegen	83
dringen	80	gewinnen	81	lügen	82
dürfen	89	gießen	82	M.	
		gleiches	84	malen	87
E.		gleiten	84	meiden	85
empfehlen	81	glimmen	82	melken	82
erlösches	82	graben	87	messen	83
erschrecken	81	greifen	84	mögen	89
essen	83			müssen	89

*) Those compound verbs, which are not in this list, are conjugated in the same manner as the simple ones.

	N.		schließen see §.	82	stoßen see §.	86
nehmen	see §.	81	schlingen	80	streichen	84
nennen		88	schmeißen	84	streiten	84
	P.		schmelzen	82		
pfeifen		84	schmauben	82	T.	
pflegen		82	schneiden	84	thun	88
preisen		85	schrauben	82	tragen	87
	Q.		schreiben	85	treffen	81
quellen		82	schreien	85	treiben	85
	R.		schreiten	84	treten	83
rathen		86	schwären	82	triefen	82
reiben		85	schweigen	85	trinken	88
reißen		84	schwellen	82		
reiten		84	schwimmen	81	V.	
rennen		88	schwinden	80	verderben	81
riechen		82	schwingen	80	verdrücken	82
ringen		80	schwören	82	vergessen	83
rinnen		81	sehen	83	verlieren	82
rufen		86	senden	88	verlöschen	82
	S.		sein	75		
salzen		87	sieden	82	W.	
saufen		82	singen	80	wachsen	87
saugen		82	sinfen	80	waschen	87
schaffen		87	sinnen	81	weben	82
scheiden		85	sitzen	83	weichen	84
scheinen		85	sollen	89	weisen	85
schelten		81	spalten	87	wenden	88
scheren		82	speien	85	werben	81
schieben		82	spinnen	81	werden	75
schießen		82	sprechen	82	werfen	81
schinden		80	sprießen	82	wiegen	82
schlafen		86	springen	80	winden	80
schlagen		87	stechen	81	wissen	89
schleichen		84	stehen	88	wollen	89
schleifen		84	stehlen	81		
schleißen		84	steigen	85	Z.	
			sterben	81	zeihen	85
			stieben	82	ziehen	82
			stinken	80	zwingen	80

USE OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS

haben and sein.

The perfect and pluperfect tenses of all verbs are 91 formed by the past participle and the auxiliary verbs *haben to have* and *sein to be* (§. 75). Which of the two is to be used, depends chiefly upon the *signification* of the verb.

1. *sein to be*, is used with the following verbs:

a. *The aux. verbs sein and werden.*

Perf. *ich bin gewesen — ich bin geworden.*

Plpft. *ich war gewesen — ich war geworden.*

b. All those *intransitive verbs* (§. 62), simple or compound which express:

change or transition of their subject from one condition into another or:

motion from one place to another.

e. g. Der Mann ist gestorben	the man has died,
Der Knabe ist gewachsen	the boy has grown,
Das Blei ist geschmolzen	the lead is melted,
Der Dieb ist verschwunden	the thief has disappeared,
Das Wasser ist gefroren	the water has frozen,
Der Kranke ist genesen	the patient has recovered,
Ein Unglück ist geschehen	a misfortune has hap- pened,
Das Feuer ist ausgegangen	the fire has gone out,
Das Schiff ist gescheitert	the ship has been wrecked.

and

Er ist gekommen	he has come,
» » angekommen	» » arrived,
» » gefallen	» » fallen,
» » entkommen	» » escaped,
» » gesprungen	» » jumped,
» » gelaufen	» » run,

Der Feind ist geflohen the enemy has fled,
 Der Mond ist aufgegangen the moon has risen.

92 All other verbs take *haben*, namely:

a. *all transitive verbs* (governing an accusative case),
 e. g.

Er hat Sie gesehen he has seen you,
 Er hat ein Buch geschrieben he has written a book.

b. *all reflexive verbs* (governing the accus. case of the reflexive pronoun, *mich* myself, *dich* thyself, *sich* himself etc.),

e. g. Er hat sich geweigert he has refused,
 » » » getäuscht » » been mistaken,
 » » » gesetzt » » seated himself,
 » » » gelegt » » lain down,
 » » » verändert » » changed.

c. *all impersonal verbs*,

e. g. Es hat geregnet it has rained,
 Es hat gefroren it has frozen.

d. *the auxiliary verbs of mood*,

e. g. Er hat kommen können he could have come,
 Er hat nicht gewollt &c. he would not etc.

e. *all intransitive verbs*, not comprehended under the rule in §. 91, except *bleiben* to remain, which takes *sein*: *ich* bin geblieben.

93 The use of the aux. verbs *haben* and *sein*, being determined by the signification of the principal verb, it frequently happens that the same verb, according to its different significations, takes both *haben* and *sein*, or that verbs which by themselves require one auxiliary verb, assume the other, whenever their signification is altered in consequence of their being compounded with prefixes or adverbs.

This will be made more evident by the following examples:

Ich habe den Stock gebrochen I have broken the stick.	Der Stock ist gebrochen The stick has broken.
Der Arzt hat den Kranken geheilt The physician has cured the patient.	Die Wunde ist geheilt The wound has healed.
Das Pferd hat das Kind getreten The horse has kicked the child.	Das Kind ist an das Fenster getreten The child has stepped to the window.
Die Sonne hat den Schnee geschmolzen The sun has melted the snow.	Der Schnee ist geschmolzen The snow has melted.
Es hat heute Nacht gefroren There has been a frost to night.	Das Wasser ist gefroren The water has frozen.
Ich habe sehr gefroren I have been very cold.	Die Pflanzen sind erfroren The plants have been frozen.
Das Pferd hat das Schiff gezogen The horse has pulled the ship.	Das Heer ist nach Frankreich gezogen The army has gone to France.
Der Tisch hat sich gezogen The table is warped.	Die Störche sind nach Afrika gezogen The storks have migrated to Africa.
Es hat in der Stube gezogen There has been a draught in the room.	
Ich habe das Kind aus-gezogen I have undressed the child.	Ich bin aus-gezogen I have changed lodgings.
Die Blume hat gestern geblüht The flower bloomed yesterday.	Heute ist sie verblüht Today it is faded.
Ich habe gehungert I have been hungry.	Ich bin verhungert I am starved.

Ich habe geschlafen
I have slept.

Ich bin eingeschlafen
I have fallen asleep.

- 94 The whole of the conjugation of verbs is explained by the following specimen of the ancient and modern forms of conjugation, including the passive voice and the reflective form, and of the conjugation of the auxiliary verbs of modality.

ANCIENT FORM OF CONJUGATION.

Indicative.

Sing. ich springe I spring,
 du springest (springst),
 er (sie, es) springet (springt),
Plur. wir springen,
 ihr springet (springt),
 sie springen.

Sing. ich sprang I sprung,
 du sprangest (sprangst),
 er sprang,
Plur. wir sprangen,
 ihr spranget,
 sie sprangen.

Conjunctive.

Present Tense.

ich springe I spring,
 du springest,
 er springe,
 wir springen,
 ihr springet,
 sie springen.

Imperfect Tense.

Conditional.

ich spränge I should spring,
 du sprängest,
 er spränge,
 wir sprängen,
 ihr spränget,
 sie sprängen.

Perfect Tense.

Sing. ich bin
 du bist
 er ist
Plur. wir sind
 ihr seid
 sie sind

I have sprung,
 gesprungen.

ich sei
 du seiest (seist)
 er sei
 wir seien
 ihr seiet
 sie seien

I have sprung,
 gesprungen.

ich wäre
 du wärest
 er wäre
 wir wären
 ihr wäret
 sie wären

I should have
 sprung,
 gesprungen.

Conditional.

Conjunctive.

Pluperfect Tense.

Indicative.

S. ich war
 du warst
 er war
 P. wir waren
 ihr waret
 sie waren

I had sprung,
 gesprungen.

S. ich werde
 du wirst
 er wird
 P. wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

I shall spring,
 springen.

S. ich werde
 du wirst
 er wird
 P. wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

I shall have
 sprung,
 gesprungen sein.

Future Tense.

ich werde
 du werdest
 er werde
 wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

I shall spring,
 springen.

Past Future Tense.

ich werde
 du werdest
 er werde
 wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

I shall have
 sprung,
 gesprungen sein.

ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

I should spring,
 springen.

ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

I should have
 sprung,
 gesprungen sein.

Imperative.

Sing. springe spring,
Plur. springet.

Participles.

Pres. springend springing,
Perf. gesprungen sprung.

Infinitive.

Pres. springen (to) spring,
Perf. gesprungen sein (to) have sprung.

Supine.

Pres. zu springen to spring,
Perf. gesprungen zu sein to have sprung.

MODERN FORM OF CONJUGATION.

Indicative.

S. ich höre I hear,
du hörst (hörst),
er (sie, es) hört (hört),
P. wir hören,
ihr hört (hört),
sie hören.

S. ich hörte I heard,
du hörtest,
er hörte,
P. wir hörten,
ihr hörtet,
sie hörten.

Conjunctive.

Present Tense.

ich höre I hear,
du hörst,
er höre,
wir hören,
ihr hörtet,
sie hören.

Imperfect Tense.

ich hörte I should hear,
du hörtest,
er hörte,
wir hörten,
ihr hörtet,
sie hörten.

Conditional.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Conditional.</i>
<p>S. ich habe du hast er hat P. wir haben ihr habet sie haben</p>	<p>Perfect Tense. I have heard, gehört.</p>	<p>I should have heard, gehört.</p>
<p>I had heard, gehört.</p>	<p>Pluperfect Tense.</p>	<p>ich hätte du hättest er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet sie hätten</p>
<p>S. ich hatte du hattest er hatte P. wir hatten ihr hättet sie hatten</p>	<p>Future Tense. I shall hear, hören.</p>	<p>ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p>
<p>I shall hear, hören.</p>		<p>I should hear, hören.</p>

<p>S. ich werde du wirst er wird P. wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p>	<p>Past Future Tense.</p>	<p>ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p>	<p>I shall have heard, gehört haben.</p>	<p>I should have heard, gehört haben.</p>
--	----------------------------------	---	--	---

Imperative.

Sing. höre hear,
Plur. höret.

Participles.

Pres. hörend hearing,
Perf. gehört heard.

Infinitive.

Pres. hören (to) hear,
Perf. gehört haben (to) have heard.

Supine.

Pres. zu hören to hear,
Perf. gehört zu haben to have heard.

Passive Voice.

Indicative.

<p>S. ich werde du wirst er wird P. wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p>	<p>Present Tense.</p>	<p>ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p>	<p>I am heard, gehört.</p>
--	------------------------------	---	--------------------------------

Conjunctive.

<p>ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p>	<p>Present Tense.</p>	<p>ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p>	<p>I am heard, gehört.</p>
---	------------------------------	---	--------------------------------

Conditional.

<p>ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p>	<p>Present Tense.</p>	<p>ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p>	<p>I should be heard, gehört.</p>
---	------------------------------	---	---------------------------------------

Indicative.

S. ich wurde
 du wurdest
 er wurde
 P. wir wurden
 ihr wurdet
 sie wurden

I was heard,
 gehört.

Conjunctive.

Imperfect Tense.

S. ich bin
 du bist
 er ist
 P. wir sind
 ihr seid
 sie sind

I have been heard, ich sei
 du seiest (seist)
 er sei
 wir seien
 ihr seiet
 sie seien

Perfect Tense.

I have been heard,
 gehört worden.

Conditional.

ich wäre
 du wärest
 er wäre
 wir wären
 ihr wäret
 sie wären

I should have been heard,
 gehört worden.

Etymology.

S. ich war
 du warst
 er war
 P. wir waren
 ihr waret
 sie waren

I had been heard,
 gehört worden.

Pluperfect Tense.

S. ich werde
 du wirst
 er wird
 P. wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

I shall be heard,
 gehört werden.

Future Tense.

ich werde
 du werdest
 er werde
 wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

I shall be heard,
 gehört werden.

ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

I should be heard,
 gehört werden.

S. ich werde
 du wirst
 er wird
 P. wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

I shall have
 been heard,
 gehört worden sein.

Past Future Tense.

ich werde
 du werdest
 er werde
 wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

I shall have been
 heard,
 gehört worden sein.

ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

I should have been
 heard,
 gehört worden sein.

Verbs.

Infinitive.

Pres. gehört werden (to) be heard,
Perf. gehört worden sein (to) have been heard.

Participles.

Perf. gehört heard,
Fut. zu hörend to be heard.

Supine.

Pres. gehört zu werden to be heard.
Perf. gehört worden zu sein to have been heard.

Conjugate in the same way the following verbs:

<i>Ancient form.</i>	<i>Modern form.</i>
fallen to fall,	reisen to travel,
schreiben to write,	arbeiten to work,
schlafen to sleep,	sagen to say,
essen to eat,	bestellen to order,
nehmen to take,	weinen to weep,
geben to give etc.	lachen to laugh etc.

95

REFLECTIVE VERB.

Present Tense.

S. ich schäme mich I am ashamed,	P. wir schämen uns,
du schämest dich,	ihr schämet euch,
er schämet sich.	sie schämen sich.

Imperfect Tense.

ich schämte mich I was ashamed etc.

Perfect Tense.

ich habe mich geschämt I have been ashamed etc.

Future Tense.

ich werde mich schämen I shall be ashamed etc.

VERB WITH AN AUXILIARY VERB OF MODALITY.

Present Tense.

ich kann (soll, will &c.) schlafen I can sleep etc.

Imperfect Tense.

ich konnte schlafen I could sleep etc.

Perfect Tense.

ich habe schlafen können I could have slept, or
I have been able to sleep etc.

Future Tense.

ich werde schlafen können I shall be able to sleep etc.

CHAPTER V. OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Substantives are divided into *Concrete*, as: *man, house, garden, hero*; and *Abstract*, as: *humanity, virtue, heroism, length* etc. Concrete substantives are either *Common names, Proper names, or Names of materials* (§. 38). As to their formation, substantives are either *Simple*, or *Compound*, and simple substantives are either *Primary*, or *Secondary derivatives* (Chap. III.).

Substantives express *notions*; they are general terms, denoting the whole of a species (§. 23). Therefore the definite or indefinite *article* is generally added to point out a particular individual (§. 43), as: *the man, a man, the house* etc.

The declension of substantives in German depends upon their gender, and the gender is not determined, as in English, by their signification, but by their derivation. Names of inanimate things are masculine, or feminine, as well as neuter; and even pronouns, standing in the place of masculine or feminine substantives, must be masculine or feminine, in order to agree with what they represent. Thus for instance: *der Ofen* (the stove), being masculine, it is said: *er ist schwarz* ('he is black'); *ich sehe ihn* ('I see him'); *die Thür* (the door) is feminine; accordingly we say: *sie ist offen* ('she is open'); *mach sie zu* ('shut her') etc. The gender of *animate* beings, however, depends upon their being either *male* or *female* *).

*) The following substantives are to be excepted, being *neuter*: *das Weib, das Frauenzimmer* (woman), *das Kind* (child); and all diminutives in *chen* or *lein* (§. 54), e. g. *das Männchen* (the little man), *das Mädchen* (young girl), *das Fräulein* (miss) etc.

Moreover the following rules must be observed:

1. *The names of seasons, months, and days are masculine*, as: *der Frühling, der Sommer, der Sonntag, der Mai* &c.

Gender.

97 The gender of German substantives is determined by their derivation, as will appear from the following rules:

1. *Substantives which have neither an affix, nor the augment ge, are masculine.*

2. *Substantives which have the augment ge, are neuter.*

3. *Substantives which have one of the affixes: er, el, en, ling, are masculine.*

4. *Substantives which have one of the affixes: e, ei, in, heit, keit, schaft, ung, are feminine.*

5. *Substantives which have one of the affixes: chen, lein, niß, sal, sel, thum, are neuter.*

Examples for these rules may be found, in sufficient number, in Chapter III.

EXCEPTIONS *).

98 1. *Substantives without an affix are masculine; the following are exceptions:*

Feminine:

die Art kind,	die Brust breast,	die Burg castle,
die Bank bench,	die Bucht bay,	die Fahrt passage,

2. *Most proper names of rivers are feminine, as: die Donau (Danube), die Elbe, die Weser, die Mosel &c. (except: der Rhein, der Main, der Neckar, der Lech, der Inn, and some others).*

3. *Proper names of countries and towns are neuter, except: die Schweiz (Switzerland), die Pfalz (Palatinate), die Lausitz (Lusatia), and some others.*

4. *Infinitives, phrases, letters etc., used as substantives, are neuter, as: das Essen (eating, dinner), das Gehen (going), das Vaterunser (the Lord's prayer), das Vergißmeinnicht (the forget-me-not), das A und das O (the A and the O) etc.*

*) The following lists contain those substantives only, the gender of which ought to be learned by heart, because they are frequently used. Substantives of an irregular gender, when less usual, are added in the notes. Thus the following are fem.: Die Andacht, Bahn, Brunst, Brut, Frist, Fuhr, Sicht,

die Faust fist,	die Luft air,	die Schlucht deep valley,
die Flucht flight,	die Lust pleasure,	die Schmach shame,
die Flut flood, tide,	die Macht might,	die Schrift writing,
die Flur field,	die Maus mouse,	die Schuld guilt,
die Form form,	die Milch milk,	die See sea,
die Fracht freight,	die Nacht night,	die Spur trace,
die Frucht fruit,	die Noth need,	die Stadt town,
die Gans goose,	die Nuß nut,	die Stirn forehead,
die Gunst favour,	die Pest plague,	die That deed,
die Hand hand,	die Pflicht duty,	die Thür door,
die Haut skin,	die Post post,	die Wahl choice,
die Huld favour,	die Pracht splendour,	die Wand wall,
die Jagd hunting,	die Qual torment,	die Welt world,
die Kost food,	die Saat seed,	die Wuth rage,
die Kraft strength,	die Scham shame,	die Zahl number,
die Kunst art,	die Schaar troop,	die Zeit time,
die Last load,	die Schlacht battle,	die Zucht discipline.
die List cunning,		

Neuter :

99

das Amt office,	das Boot boat,	das Feld field,
das Bad bath,	das Brett board,	das Fell skin,
das Band band, tie,	das Brod bread,	das Fest festival,
das Beil hatchet,	das Buch book,	das Fett fat,
das Bein leg,	das Dach roof,	das Fleisch flesh,
das Bett bed,	das Ding thing,	das Garn yarn,
das Bier beer,	das Dorf village,	das Geld money,
das Bild image,	das Ei egg,	das Gift poison,
das Blatt leaf,	das Eis ice,	das Glas glass,
das Blei lead,	das Erz ore,	das Glied limb,
das Blut blood,	das Faß cask,	das Glück luck,

Glut, Gruft, Haft, Hast, Hut (guard), Klust, Kur, Willfür, Laus, Mark, Mast, Mauth, Milz, Naht, Ohm, Pacht, Pein, Raft, Ruhr, Sau, Schau, Scheu, Schicht, Schnur, Schur, Sicht, Streu, Sucht, Tracht, Trift, Wacht, Wehr, Zier, Zunft; and those compound with kunst, and sicht. The following are neuter: das Nas, Antlig, Besteck, Eck, Fach, Floß, Harz, Hest, Hirn, Leid, Loth, Mal, Malz, Mus, Reiß, Scheit, Schmalz, Stift, Verdeck, Verließ, Wehr, Werk, Berg.

das Gold gold,	das Loch hole,	das Schild sign of
das Grab grave,	das Loos lot,	an inn,
das Gras grass,	das Mahl meal,	das Schilf reed,
das Haar hair,	das Mark marrow,	das Schloß lock,
das Haupt head,	das Maß measure,	castle,
das Haus house,	das Maul mouth,	das Schwein swine,
das Heer army,	das Meer sea,	das Schwert sword,
das Heil safety,	das Mehl meal,	das Seil rope,
das Hemd shirt,	das Moos moss,	das Sieb sieve,
das Herz heart,	das Nest nest,	das Spiel play,
das Heu hay,	das Netz net,	das Stroh straw,
das Holz wood,	das Obst fruit,	das Stück piece,
das Horn horn,	das Ohr ear,	das Tau cable,
das Huhn hen,	das Del oil,	das Thal dale,
das Jahr year,	das Paar pair,	das Thier animal,
das Joch yoke,	das Pech pitch,	das Thor gate,
das Kalb calf,	das Pfand pledge,	das Tuch cloth,
das Kind child,	das Pferd horse,	das Vieh beast,
das Kinn chin,	das Pfund pound,	das Volk people,
das Kleid clothing,	das Rad wheel,	das Wachs wax,
das Knie knee,	das Recht law,	das Weib woman,
das Korn corn,	das Reh roe,	das Werk work,
das Kraut herb,	das Reich kingdom,	das Wild game,
das Kreuz cross,	das Rind young ox,	das Wort word,
das Lamm lamb,	das Rohr reed,	das Zelt tent,
das Land land,	das Ross horse,	das Zeug stuff,
das Laub foliage,	das Salz salt,	das Ziel limit,
das Licht light,	das Schaf sheep,	das Zink zink,
das Lied song,	das Schiff ship,	das Zinn tin.
das Lob praise,		

100 2. *Substantives with the augment ge are neuter; the following are exceptions:*

Masculine:

der Gebrauch use,	der Genuß enjoy-	der Geschmack taste,
der Gedanke thought,	ment,	der Gestank bad smell
der Gehalt contents	der Geruch smell,	der Gewinn . }
(of a vessel),	der Gesang song,	or Gewinnst } gain.

Feminine:

die Geberde gesture, die Gefahr danger, die Geschwulst tum-
 die Gebühr duty, die Gemeinde parish, our,
 die Geduld pa- die Geschichte hi- die Gestalt figure,
 tience, story, die Gewalt power,
 and those which have one of the affixes: in, ung, heit,
 feit, schaft.

3. *Substantives with affixes.*

Substantives in er are masculine; the following are 101 exceptions:

Feminine):*

die Ader vein, die Kammer cham- die Schulterschoul-
 die Butter butter, ber, der,
 die Dauer duration, die Leiter ladder, die Steuer tax,
 die Feder pen, die Mauer wall, die Trauer mourn-
 die Feier celebration die Schleuder sling, ing.

Neuter):*

das Alter age, das Lager couch, das Pulver powder,
 das Fenster window, das Laster vice, das Ruder oar,
 das Feuer fire, das Leder leather, das Silber silver,
 das Fieber fever, das Messer knife, das Ufer shore,
 das Futter food for das Muster pattern, das Wasser water,
 animals, das Opfer sacrifice, das Wetter weather,
 das Kloster monas- das Pflaster plaister, das Wunder wonder,
 tery, pavement, das Zimmer room.
 das Kupfer copper, das Polster cushion,

Substantives in el are masculine; the following are 102 exceptions:

*Feminine**):*

die Deichsel pole of die Distel thistle, die Fackel torch,
 a carriage, die Fabel fable, die Gabel fork,

*) The following are less usual: die Aster, Auster, Blatter, Elster, Folter, Kelter, Klammer, Klapper, Leber, Leier, Letter, Marter, Maser, Matter, Nummer, Viper, Wimper, Zeder, Ziffer, Zither — and das Gitter, Malter, Nieder.

**) The following are less usual: die Achsel, Angel, Droffel,

die Insel island,	die Pappel poplar,	die Sichel sickle,
die Kartoffel potatoe	die Regel rule,	die Tafel table,
die Kugel ball,	die Schachtel box,	die Trommel drum,
die Muschel shell,	die Schüssel plate,	die Wurzel root,
die Nadel needle,	dish,	die Zwiebel onion.
die Orgel organ,		

Neuter:

das Mittel means,	das Siegel seal,	das Orakel oracle,
das Segel sail,	das Exempel ex- ample,	das Kapitel chap- ter.

103 *Substantives in en are masculine; the following are exceptions:*

Neuter:

das Becken basin,	das Kissen cushion,	das Wesen being,
das Eisen iron,	das Laken sheet,	das Zeichen sign,
das Füllen colt,	das Wappen arms,	

and a great number of abstracts which, being infinitives, are neuter (§. 96), as:

das Essen dining, dinner,	das Leben life,	das Vergnügen pleasure.
------------------------------	-----------------	----------------------------

104 *Substantives in e are feminine; the following are exceptions:*

Masculine:

a) *Many names of male persons, as:*

der Bote messenger, der Knabe boy etc.

b) *The following names of animals:*

der Affe ape,	der Hase hare,	der Rabe raven,
der Falke falcon,	der Ochse ox,	der Weihe kite.
der Drache dragon,	der Löwe lion,	

Sichel, Fessel, Fibel, Geißel, Gurgel, Hummel, Mandel, Nessel, Nudel, Nessel, Schaufel, Schaufel, Schindel, Semmel, Spindel, Stoppel, Troddel, Trüffel, Wachtel, Windel — and das Schärmügel, Wiesel.

c) and:

der Käse cheese,	der Haufe heap,	} which, commonly, assume the affix en: der Frieden etc.
der Buchstabe letter,	der Name name,	
der Friede peace,	der Same seed,	
der Funke spark,	der Wille will,	
der Glaube belief,	der Schade damage,	

Neuter:

das Auge eye, das Ende end, das Erbe inheri-
tance.

*Substantives in niß are neuter; the following abstracts 105
are exceptions:*

Feminine:

die Bedrängniß affliction,	die Fäulniß putrefaction,
die Befugniß authority,	die Finsterniß darkness,
die Bekümmerniß sorrow,	die Kenntniß knowledge,
die Besorgniß apprehension,	die Verdammniß damnation,
die Betrübniß affliction,	die Verderbniß corruption,
die Empfängniß conception,	die Versäumniß omission,
die Erlaubniß permission,	die Wildniß wilderness.
die Ersparniß savings,	

Substantives in thum are neuter.

Masculine are:

der Irrthum error, der Reichthum riches, der Wachsthum
growth.

The following substantives, being of irregular for- 106
mation, are not comprehended under the preceding rules:

der Habicht hawk, die Heirat marriage, der Abend evening,
das Dickicht thicket, die Gegend country, der Honig honey,
der Monat month, die Jugend youth, der Essig vinegar,
die Armut poverty, die Tugend virtue, der Pfennig penny.
die Heimat home,

Some substantives have assumed *different genders* in 107
different dialects, or have even altered their gender
in particular significations, or in particular compounds
only; in consequence of which they are now employed
in two genders. Thus we say:

der Verdacht suspicion,	die Andacht devotion,
der Hochmuth pride,	die Sanftmuth gentleness,
der Edelmuth generosity,	die Großmuth magnanimity,
	die Schwermuth melancholy,
	die Wehmuth sorrowfulness,
	die Demuth humility,
die Scheu shyness,	der Abscheu horror,
der Verkehr intercourse,	die Rückkehr return.

A different signification is especially pointed out by a difference of gender in the following substantives :

der Band the volume of a book,	das Band the ribbon,
der Bund the alliance,	das Bund the bundle,
der Chor the chorus,	das Chor the choir,
die Erkenntniß knowledge,	das Erkenntniß judicial de- cision, verdict,
der Gehalt the contents,	das Gehalt the salary,
der Lohn reward,	das Lohn the wages,
der Mensch man,	das Mensch wench,
der Schild the shield,	das Schild the sign of an inn,
der See the lake,	die See the sea,
der Theil part of a whole,	das Theil the share, portion,
der Verdienst the profit of labour,	das Verdienst the merit.

108 To these we must add the following words, which have the same sound, but belong either to different roots, or to different forms of derivation :

der Erbe heir,	das Erbe inheritance,
der Geißel hostage,	die Geißel scourge,
der Harz the Harz forest,	das Harz resin,
der Heide pagan,	die Heide heath,
der Hut hat,	die Hut guard,
der Kunde customer,	die Kunde knowledge,
der Leiter conductor,	die Leiter ladder,
die Mark mark (8 ounces) and province, e. g. Mark Brandenburg,	das Mark morrow, §. 101.

der Mast mast of a ship,	die Mast fattening (pigs etc.),
der Messer a person who measures,	das Messer knife,
der Ohm uncle,	die Ohm awme (a liq. meas.),
der Schenke butler,	die Schenke ale-house,
der Spross sprout, descendant	die Sprosse step of a ladder,
der Stift the peg, tag,	das Stift ecclesiastical esta- blishment,
der Thor fool,	das Thor gate,
die Wehr defence,	das Wehr dam,
der Weihe kite,	die Weihe consecration.

GENDER OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

Foreign substantives, on being adopted in German*), 109 generally retain the gender of their original language. Some of them, however, which are assimilated in their form to words originally German, have assumed another gender, according to the analogy of their form, as:

<i>Masculine:</i>	<i>Feminine:</i>	<i>Neuter:</i>
der Körper body,	die Kanone cannon,	das Fenster window,
der Zepher scepter,	die Melone melon,	das Fieber fever,
der Tempel temple,	die Zitrone lemon,	das Pulver powder,
der Punkt point,	die Passage passage,	das Echo echo,
der Marsch march	die Oper opera	das Kameel camel
etc.	etc.	etc.

*) The German nation has never been subject to any of those political changes which have influenced the languages of the other modern nations, most of which are, like the English, the result of a mixture of Roman and Teutonic elements. The German language, however, has adopted many foreign words, taken from the Greek, Latin and French languages, which frequently differ from words originally German, by their foreign accentuation, as: Natur, Kultur, General, Advokat, Kardinal, or even by their foreign pronunciation, as: Genie, Diner, which are pronounced like the French: *genie*, *diner*. There are, however, many foreign words which have been admitted into German at an early period, and which, by being constantly employed in popular language, have been entirely assimilated in their form to words originally German. Of this description are: Körper corpus, Pöbel people, Pulver pulvis, Fenster fenestra, and many others which are pronounced and written like words originally German.

DECLENSION.

- 110 Substantives are inflected by *Number* and *Case*. There are two *Numbers*, the *Singular* and *Plural*; and four *Cases*, the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative* and *Accusative* (§. 30).

There are in German two declensions, the **Ancient** and the **Modern**, formed by adding the following terminations to the substantive:

<i>Ancient declension.</i>		<i>Modern declension.</i>	
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	—	<i>Plur.</i>	— e
<i>Gen.</i>	— es		— e
<i>Dat.</i>	— e		— en
<i>Acc.</i>	—		— e
<i>Sing.</i>	—	<i>Plur.</i>	— en
			— en
			— en
			— en

Many substantives of the ancient declension, a list of which will be given §. 115, take in the Plural the terminations

<i>Nom.</i>	— er
<i>Gen.</i>	— er
<i>Dat.</i>	— ern
<i>Acc.</i>	— er.

Ancient declension.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	der Berg	the mountain,
<i>Gen.</i>	des Berg=es	of the mountain,
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Berg=e	to the mountain,
<i>Acc.</i>	den Berg	the mountain.
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Berg=e	the mountains,
<i>Gen.</i>	der Berg=e	of the mountains,
<i>Dat.</i>	den Berg=en	to the mountains,
<i>Acc.</i>	die Berg=e	the mountains.

Modern declension.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	der Mensch	the man,
<i>Gen.</i>	des Mensch=en	of the man,
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Mensch=en	to the man,
<i>Acc.</i>	den Mensch=en	the man.

<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Mensch-en	the men,
<i>Gen.</i>	der Mensch-en	of the men,
<i>Dat.</i>	den Mensch-en	to the men,
<i>Acc.</i>	die Mensch-en	the men.

General rules of declension.

a. *Masculine and neuter substantives are inflected in the ancient declension (Exceptions §. 112).*

b. *Feminine nouns are inflected in the modern declension (Exceptions §. 114).*

c. *In substantives of the ancient declension, the vowels are, generally, modified in the plural number; viz.:*

a	into	ä;	as	Hand	hand	<i>Plur.</i>	Hände;
o	„	ö;	„	Kopf	head	„	Köpfe;
u	„	ü;	„	Thurm	tower	„	Thürme;
au	„	äu;	„	Baum	tree	„	Bäume.

(Exceptions §. 126.)

d. *All substantives, ending in: er, el, en, chen, lein, drop the vowel e in all terminations of declension, thus:*

<i>Ancient declension.</i>		<i>Modern declension.</i>	
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	—	<i>Sing.</i>	—
<i>Plur.</i>	—	<i>Plur.</i>	— n
<i>Gen.</i>	— s	—	n
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	n
<i>Acc.</i>	—	—	n

The same is often done in the sing. number of all substantives of the ancient declension.

e. *Feminine substantives take no terminations in the singular number.*

Exercises on the ancient declension.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	der Sohn	das Schiff	der König
	(the son)	(the ship)	(the king)
<i>Gen.</i>	des Sohnes	des Schiffes	des Königs
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Sohne	dem Schiffe	dem Könige
<i>Acc.</i>	den Sohn	das Schiff	den König

<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Söhne	die Schiffe	die Könige
<i>Gen.</i>	der Söhne	der Schiffe	der Könige
<i>Dat.</i>	den Söhnen	den Schiffen	den Königen
<i>Acc.</i>	die Söhne	die Schiffe	die Könige.

Decline: der Freund the friend, der Feind the enemy, der Fuß the foot, der Fluß (observe §. 5) the river, das Pferd the horse, das Werk the work, der Pfennig the penny, der Jüngling the youth.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	der Vater (the father)	der Löffel (the spoon)	der Garten (the garden)
<i>Gen.</i>	des Vaters	des Löffels	des Gartens
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Vater	dem Löffel	dem Garten
<i>Acc.</i>	den Vater	den Löffel	den Garten
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Väter	die Löffel	die Gärten
<i>Gen.</i>	der Väter	der Löffel	der Gärten
<i>Dat.</i>	den Vätern	den Löffeln	den Gärten
<i>Acc.</i>	die Väter	die Löffel	die Gärten.

Decline: der Bruder the brother, der Apfel the apple, der Vogel the bird, der Hafen the port, das Messer the knife, das Zeichen the sign.

Feminine Substantives.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	die Braut the bride,	die Mutter the mother,
<i>Gen.</i>	der Braut	der Mutter
<i>Dat.</i>	der Braut	der Mutter
<i>Acc.</i>	die Braut	die Mutter
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Bräute	die Mütter
<i>Gen.</i>	der Bräute	der Mütter
<i>Dat.</i>	den Bräuten	den Müttern
<i>Acc.</i>	die Bräute	die Mütter.

Decline: die Kunst art, die Hand hand, die Gans goose, die Stadt town, die Nacht night, die Tochter daughter.

Exceptions to rule a.

112 The following masculine substantives are declined according to the *modern form*:

1. der Bär bear,	der Herr lord, master,
der Bauer peasant,	der Hirt shepherd,
der Fürst prince,	der Mensch man,
der Graf count,	der Narr fool,
der Held hero,	der Thor fool,
der Gefell companion,	der Vorfahr ancestor.

2. *All those ending in e* (§. 104, a. b.); as:

der Affe ape,	der Schütze shooter,
der Hase hare,	der Jude jew,
der Löwe lion,	der Schwabe Swabian,
der Ochse ox,	der Franke Frank,
der Rabe raven,	der Sachse Saxon,
der Bote messenger,	der Britte Briton,
der Knabe boy,	der Franzose Frenchman*).
der Riese giant,	

3. *All those names of persons*, taken from foreign languages (French, Latin, or Greek), which end in *t* or are formed from Greek words in *λογος*, *σοφος*, *νομος* etc.; as:

der Advokat advocate,	der Jurist lawyer,
der Soldat soldier,	der Theolog theologian,
der Poet poet,	der Philolog philologist,
der Jesuit jesuit,	der Philosoph philosopher,
der Adjutant adjutant,	der Astronom astronomer,
der Protestant protestant,	der Patriarch patriarch,
der Student student,	der Monarch monarch,
der Phantast humorist,	der Geograph geographer,
der Christ christian,	der Anatom anatomist etc.

and the foreign masculine substantives:

der Prinz prince,	der Ducat ducat,
der Tyrann tyrant,	der Komet comet,
der Katholik catholic,	der Planet planet,
der Elephant elephant,	der Konsonant consonant,

and some others, less usual.

*) Der Deutsche German, der Bediente servant, and some others are declined like adjectives; see §. 136.

- 113 The following substantives are declined according to the *ancient declension in the singular, and the modern in the plural*:

der Diamant diamond,	der Rubin ruby,
der Fasan pheasant,	der See lake,
der Forst forest,	der Sporn spur
der Gevatter godfather,	(plur. die Sporen),
der Juwel jewel,	der Staat state,
der Kapaun capon,	der Stachel sting,
der Konsul consul,	der Stiefel boot,
der Lorbeer laurel,	der Thron throne,
der Muskel muscle,	der Traktat treaty,
der Pantoffel slipper,	der Unterthan subject,
der Pfau peacock,	der Vetter cousin,
der Psalm psalm,	der Zins interest (paid for money),

das Auge eye,	das Ende end,	das Herz heart,
das Bett bed,	das Hemd shirt,	das Ohr ear.

The singular number of: Herz is irregular; *Gen.* des Herzens, *Dat.* dem Herzen.

Exceptions to rule b.

- 114 The following feminine substantives are declined in the *ancient form*, without, however, taking any termination in the singular number, according to §. 121.

die Angst anguish,	die Luft air,
die Ausflucht evasion,	die Lust delight,
die Art axe,	die Macht power *),
die Bank bench,	die Magd maid-servant,
die Braut bride,	die Maus mouse,
die Brust breast,	die Mutter mother,
die Faust fist,	die Nacht night,
die Frucht fruit,	die Naht seam,
die Gans goose,	die Noth affliction,

*) The compounds of Macht: Ohnmacht swoon, and Vollmacht credentials, are declined in the modern form.

die Geschwulst tumor,	die Nuß nut,
die Gruft grave,	die Sau sow,
die Hand hand,	die Schnur string,
die Haut skin,	die Stadt town,
die Kluft fissure,	die Tochter daughter,
die Kraft force,	die Wand wall,
die Kuh cow,	die Wurst sausage,
die Kunst art,	die Zunft guild,
die Laus louse,	die Zusammenkunft meeting,

and all those formed by the affix *niß*, §. 116.

Plural of the ancient form in er:

The following substantives have the plural in *er*. 115

1. *The masculine substantives:*

der Bösewicht malefactor,	der Ort place,
der Dorn thorn,	der Rand margin,
der Geist ghost,	der Vormund guardian,
der Gott God,	der Wald forest,
der Leib body,	der Wurm worm.
der Mann man,	

2. *The neuter substantives:*

das Amt office,	das Horn horn,
das Bad bath,	das Huhn hen,
das Band ribbon,	das Kalb calf,
das Bild image,	das Kind child,
das Blatt leaf,	das Kleid clothing,
das Brett board,	das Korn grain,
das Buch book,	das Kraut herb,
das Dach roof,	das Lamm lamb,
das Denkmal monument,	das Land land,
das Dorf village,	das Licht candle,
das Ei egg,	das Lied song,
das Fach shelf,	das Loch hole,
das Faß cask,	das Maul mouth,
das Feld field,	das Nest nest,
das Geld money,	das Pfand pledge,
das Gemach room,	das Rad wheel,

das Gemüth mind,	das Reiß scion,
das Geschlecht race,	das Rind young ox,
das Gesicht face,	das Schloß lock <i>and</i> palace,
das Gespenst spectre,	das Schild sign of an inn,
das Gewand garment,	das Schwert sword,
das Glas glass,	das Thal dale,
das Glied limb,	das Tuch cloth,
das Grab grave,	das Volk people,
das Gras grass,	das Weib woman,
das Haus house,	das Wort word.
das Holz wood,	

3. All substantives terminating in thum (plur. thümer);
as: der Irrthum error, der Reichthum riches, das Fürstenthum principality, das Kaiserthum empire.

Exceptions to rule c. Modification of the vowel in pl.

116 The vowels a, o, u, au are not modified in the plural of:

1. the following *masculine substantives**):

der Aal eel	pl. die Aale,
der Arm arm	„ die Arme,
der Docht wick	„ die Döchte,
der Dolch dagger	„ die Dolche,
der Halm stalk	„ die Halme,
der Huf hoof	„ die Hufe,
der Hund dog	„ die Hunde,
der Laut sound	„ die Laute,
der Mond moon	„ die Monde,
der Monat month	„ die Monate,
der Pfad path	„ die Pfade,
der Schuh shoe	„ die Schuhe,
der Stoff stuff	„ die Stoffe,
der Tag day	„ die Tage.

*) The following: Amboss anvil, Anwalt attorney, Gemahl husband, Hauch breath, Kobold hobgoblin, Luchs lynx, Molch salamander, Staar starling, Trunkenbold drunkard, Unhold monster, Vielfraß glutton, Wiebehopf hoop, are either unusual, or seldom used in the plural number.

2. All those *neuter substantives* which do not assume the sign *r* in the plural number (§. 115), as :

das Brod loaf of bread	plur. die Brode,
das Loos lot	„ die Loose,
das Ross horse	„ die Rosse,
das Schaf sheep	„ die Schafe.

3. All those substantives which have one of the affixes: *er, el, en, or sal*, as :

der Maler the painter	plur. die Maler,
der Pudel poodle-dog	„ die Pudel,
der Namen name	„ die Namen,
das Schicksal fate	„ die Schicksale etc.

The following only modify the vowel in the plural number :

der Acker field	plur. die Äcker,
der Bruder brother	„ die Brüder,
der Hammer hammer	„ die Hämmer,
der Schwager brother-in-law	„ die Schwäger,
der Vater father	„ die Väter.
der Boden bottom	plur. die Böden,
der Faden fathom	„ die Fäden,
der Garten garden	„ die Gärten,
der Graben ditch	„ die Gräben,
der Hafen port	„ die Häfen,
der Ofen stove	„ die Öfen,
der Schaden damage.	„ die Schäden.
der Apfel apple	plur. die Äpfel,
der Hammel wether	„ die Hammel,
der Handel quarrel	„ die Händel,
der Mangel fault	„ die Mängel,
der Mantel cloak	„ die Mäntel,
der Nagel nail	„ die Nägel,
der Sattel saddle	„ die Sättel,
der Schnabel beak	„ die Schnäbel,
der Vogel bird	„ die Vögel.

There are some substantives which have two forms 117 of the plural number, viz.:

das Ding thing	plur. die Dinge and Dinger,
der Ort place	„ die Orte and Örter,
der Dorn thorn	„ die Dornen and Dörner,
der Hahn cock	„ die Hähnen and Hähne,
der Schwan swan	„ die Schwanen and Schwäne.

The different forms of the plural of the following substantives have different significations :

das Band	plur. die Bänder ribbons, die Bande chains, ties,
die Bank	„ die Bänke benches, die Banken commercial banks,
das Bett	„ die Bette beds, die Betten bedding,
das Gesicht	„ die Gesichter faces, die Gesichte visions,
das Horn	„ die Hörner horns, die Horne different kinds of horn,
die Sau	„ die Säue pigs, die Sauen wild boars,
das Wort	„ die Wörter single words, die Worte words forming sentences (speech),
das Ding	„ die Dinge things generally, die Dinger things, most part animals or creatures; e. g. die kleinen Dinger the small animals; die jungen Dinger the young girls,
das Stück	„ die Stücke pieces, die Stücken fragments.

Declension of Proper Names.

118 When *nouns proper* of persons are used in the plural number, they are declined as *common nouns*; viz. those of male persons in the *ancient**) form, and those of females in the *modern**) ; e. g. die Heinriche, die Marien. In the singular number, names of males, and those of

*) Respecting the *ancient* and *modern* form of Adjectives vid. page 139.

females which have not the termination *e*, have only the genitive case pointed out by the inflexion *s*, e. g. *Heinrichs*, *Elisabeths*. The names of females with the termination *e*, take *ens* in the genitive, and *en* in the dative and accusative cases, e. g.

Nom. Marie, *Gen.* Mariens, *Dat. and Acc.* Marien,
 Karoline, Karolinen*s*, Karolinen.

Those names of males, the final sound of which is an *s*, *ß*, *sch*, or *r*, or *z*, also take the inflection *ens* in the genitive case, e. g. *Bos*s*-ens*, *Mar*s*-ens*, *Fri*s*-ens*. Foreign names which have the unaccented terminations *as*, *es*, *is*, *us*, admit of no declension; and all cases of proper names, which cannot be marked by inflection, are denoted by the definitive article (§. 121), e. g. *des* *Elia*s**, *des* *Ker*s**, *der* *Dori*s**, *dem* *Plato*.

Proper names of countries and places, like names of persons, are only inflected in the *genitive* case, by appending an *s*, e. g. *Wien*s**, *Berlin*s**. When a final *s*, *ß*, *r*, or *z*, does not admit the *genitive* inflection being appended to it, or whenever another *case* is to be distinguished, the proper name is placed in apposition to a common name, e. g. *der* *Stadt Mainz*, *dem* *Königreich Spanien* (both *dat.* cases, *to* the city —, *to* the kingdom etc.).

On the use of Articles.

The general rules for the use of the definite and in- 119
 definite articles being the same in German as in English, it will be sufficient to explain the particular cases in which the German practice differs from the English.

The definite article is placed before the following substantives:

der Himmel heaven,	der Adel nobility,
die Erde earth,	die Demokratie democracy,
das Paradies paradise,	die Natur nature,
die Hölle hell,	das Leben life,
das Fegfeuer purgatory,	der Tod death,

die Kirche church, der Zufall chance,
 das Christenthum christianity, das Schicksal fate,
 das Judenthum judaism etc., das Glück luck, fortune,
 das Parlament parliament, das Gesetz law,
 die Regierung government, der Mensch man (mankind).
 die Monarchie monarchy,

The definite article is placed before the *proper names of months and days*; as: der Sonntag, der Montag, der März, der Dezember; before the names of *mountains*; as: der Besuv Vesuvius, der Ätna mount Etna; before *the feminine names of countries*; as: die Schweiz Switzerland, die Moldau Moldavia, die Türkei Turkey; before *proper names of persons when connected with an attributive adjective*; as, der arme Johann poor John, die kleine Sophie little Sophia, der junge Herr Jones young Mr. Jones, der heilige Petrus St. Peter; and before *proper names and titles* when used in a familiar way; e. g. rufe den kleinen Johann call little John; grüße die Marie remember me to Mary, der Herr Stuart Mr. Stuart, die Frau Müller Mrs. Müller, die Königin Elisabeth Queen Elizabeth etc.

120 In German the *definite* article is employed in a peculiar way, in order to represent the whole of a genus or species of *concrete* things, or the whole extent of an *abstract* notion. Thus in expressions like: durch die Vernunft unterscheidet sich der Mensch von dem Thiere by reason man is distinguished from beasts; der Fisch schwimmt und der Vogel fliegt fishes swim and birds fly; *all* men (mankind), *all* beasts, fishes, and birds, are expressed by the *definite* article preceding the substantive in the singular number: and in expressions like: das Gold ist dehnbar gold is ductile; das Wasser ist farblos water is colourless; das Quecksilber ist ein flüssiges Metall quicksilver is a liquid metall, *all* gold, water, or quicksilver, is understood. The same is done in the plural number; e. g. die Eichen sind schöne Bäume oaks are fine trees; die Weiber haben ein stärkeres Gefühl für weibliche Fehler als die Männer women have a much stronger sense of female error than men.

In the same manner we say, e. g. *das Leben ist kurz, die Kunst aber lang, vita brevis, ars longa; die Tugend ist kein leerer Schall* virtue is not an empty sound; *der Glaube macht selig* faith is saving. Substantive-infinitives generally take the definite article, e. g. *das Sprechen ist dem Menschen natürlich*, language is natural to man; *das Regieren ist eine schwere Kunst* governing is a difficult art; *er haßt das Studiren* 'he hates study.'

The *definite* article is employed in *German*, when in *English* the *indefinite* is used, viz. with relation to *time*, expressed by the *Acc. absolute*, e. g. *twice a week, zweimal die (= in der) Woche; sechs Meilen den Tag, six miles a day*; also when relative to *computation or measurement* etc., e. g. *fifteen shillings a yard 15 Schilling die Elle*.

The definite article is frequently added if the case of a substantive can not be otherwise distinguished (by *termination* or a preceding preposition). Thus it is said: *das Leben der Fürsten* the life of princes; but *das Leben guter Fürsten* the life of good princes, because the gen. case is then distinguished by the termination of *guter*. — *Augustus adoptirte den Tiberius* Augustus adopted Tiberius, but: *Tiberius folgte auf Augustus* Tiberius succeeded Augustus; *das Heer des Xerxes* the army of Xerxes, but: *das Heer Napoleons* the army of Napoleon.

The article is frequently omitted in both languages *122* or in one of them only, in particular phrases and idioms, e. g.

to go to bed	zu Bette gehen,
to keep a school	Schule halten,
(to go to school	in die Schule gehen),
to cast anchor	Anker werfen,
to run the risk	Gefahr laufen,
at table	bei Tisch,
on foot	zu Fuße,
on horseback	zu Pferde,
in a coach	zu Wagen,
word for word	Wort für Wort,

point by point	Stück für Stück,
from head to foot	von Kopf zu Fuß,
from hand to mouth	von Hand zu Mund.

OBSERVATIONS. — The article is frequently omitted for the sake of eurythmy, when two or more substantives connected by *und* and, are to express one simple idea; e. g. *du sollst Vater und Mutter ehren*, thou shalt honour (thy) father and (thy) mother (parents); *er hat Weib und Kind verlassen* he has left (his) wife and (his) children (his family); *er gelobet mit Mund und Hand* he promises with (his) mouth and (his) hand (by an oath). The same applies especially to expressions formed by alliteration; e. g. *Haus und Hof verlassen* to leave house and home; *sie sind mit Mann und Maus ertrunken* they were drowned (lit. 'with man and mouse'), i. e. 'ship and all hands on board were lost', or 'not one soul has been saved'; *Pfoss und Reuter* (the) horse and (his) rider; *über Stock und Stein laufen*, lit. *to run over sticks and stones* (= *to run on wildly or headlong*); *mit Rath und That beistehen* to assist in word and deed, with heart and hand. The article is also omitted in expressions like: *ich habe es in Händen* I have it in (my) hands; *er sieht es vor Augen* he sees it before (his) eyes; in which the possessive pronoun is generally added in English.

- 123 *Titles of books* take no article; as, *deutsche Grammatik*, a Grammar of the German language.

The English put the indefinite article before *few*, *hundred*, *thousand*, which words take no article in German; as, a few persons *wenige Personen*, a thousand years *tausend Jahre*.

The position of the article is in German the same as in English; but it never follows the words: *both*, *half*, nor the adjective with *so* or *too*; e. g. both the boys *die beiden Knaben*; half the world *die halbe Welt*; so large a town *eine so große Stadt*; too large a town *eine zu große Stadt*; such a rogue *solch* (or *so*) *ein Schelm*, or *ein solcher Schelm*; all the children *alle die Kinder*; all the world *die ganze* (whole) *Welt*.

Plural number.

- 124 According to a *peculiarity*, common to most languages, in German *also*, many *abstract* substantives are

not susceptible of the *plural* number, though the corresponding substantives in *English* in some cases assume it. Such are :

die Ankunft arrival,	der Raub the spoil,
der Argwohn suspicion,	der Schein appearance,
der Beginn the beginning,	der Schmuck ornament,
der Bund the alliance,	der Strand strand,
der Dank thanks,	der Streit the dispute,
die Ehre honour,	der Sturz the fall,
das Elend misery,	der Tadel reproach,
der Empfang receipt,	der Tausch exchange,
die Furcht fear,	der Trost consolation,
das Glück fortune,	das Unrecht wrong,
der Gram grief,	das Unglück misfortune,
der Hader dispute,	der Unterricht instruction,
der Jammer misery,	der Verdacht suspicion,
der Kauf the purchase,	der Verstand understanding,
der Kummer affliction,	der Verdruß vexation,
die Liebe love,	die Vorsicht precaution,
das Lob praise,	der Wahn the false idea,
der Lohn the reward,	der Zank quarrel,
der Mund mouth,	der Zwang the constraint,
die Pracht splendour,	der Zwist dispute.
der Rath advice,	

To the above class also belong Infinitives *substantively used*, such as : Leben life, Vermögen fortune, Verlangen wish, Entzücken rapture, Ansehen authority, Einkommen revenue. In these substantives the *plural* in *English*, remains either confined in *German* to the simple *singular*, e. g. viel Dank, Lob, Furcht etc., many thanks, praises, fears; or it is rendered by *synonymous* substantives, e. g. Bündnisse, Kummernisse, Belohnungen, Tröstungen, Zwistigkeiten, Einkünfte, alliances, afflictions, rewards, consolations, quarrels, revenues.

Names of materials, e. g. Asche ashes, Sand sand, Thau dew, Schnee snow, Regen rain, Unkraut weeds etc., do not assume the plural number; and along with them are to be classed, in this respect, all masculine

and neuter names of plants, e. g. *Kohl* cabbage, *Hopfen* hops. Exceptions are *der Schwamm*, *der Pilz*, *das Gras*, *das Kraut*, *das Moos*, and some others, when different species of the same genus are to be expressed.

The *plural* notion may in some cases be represented by introducing the word *Arten* (= kinds, or *sorts*), thus f. i. the English '*various mosses*' may be rendered by '*verschiedene Moosarten*'.

- 125 In German, as in other languages, some substantives are used only in the plural number. Some of them, e. g. *Ahnen* ancestors, *Eltern* parents, *Alpen* alps, *Beinkleider* and *Hosen* trousers, *Fußstapfen* footsteps, *Gebrüder* brothers, *Geschwister* brother and sister, *Gliedmaßen* limbs, *Leute* people, *Schranken* bounds, imply plurality of individuals; — but others, e. g. *Briefschaften* papers; *Einkünfte* revenue, *Gefälle* rents, *Kosten* expenses, *Masern* measles, *Molken* whey, *Ränke* tricks, *Rötheln* measles, *Sporteln* fees, *Treber* lees, *Trümmer* ruins, *Truppen* troops, *Zeitläufte* occurrences of the time, express notions conceived without any distinction of individuals in the plural number. *Fasten* Lent, *Ferien* vacation (holidays), *Ostern* Easter, *Pfingsten* Whitsuntide, and *Weihnachten* Christmas, were originally conceived as expressing a plurality of days; and the plural number has been retained in them, though they are not now conceived in the same way.

OBSERVATION 1. — *Leute* (French *gens*) implies a number of persons in the most *indefinite* sense, without distinguishing either the *species*, as is done in *Menschen*, or the *sex*, as in *Männer*. In this way the plural form is *Landleute* country people, *Ehleute* married people, *Edeleute* noblemen, *Kaufleute* merchants (from *Landmann*, *Ebelmann* etc.), are distinguished from *Ehrenmänner* men of honour, *Amtmänner* bailiffs, *Ehemänner* married men (from *Ehrenmann* etc.); and from *Unmenschen* inhuman (beings), *Halbmenschen* half-men (from *Unmensch* etc.).

OBSERVATION 2. — The substantives *das Haar* the hair*),

*) Speaking of it in a *collective* sense, (= '*a head of hair*') but the *plur.* is used, speaking of a mass of hair, each hair *singly* taken.

das Eingeweide and das Gedärm the intestines, das Gewürm worms; das Gebein the bones of a body, although susceptible of the plural number, are also used collectively in the singular number.

The names of measures, numbers, or weights, when 126 preceded by numerals, do not take the inflection of the plural number, e. g. sechs Fuß lang six foot long; zwei Paar Schuhe two pair of shoes; drei Duzend Äpfel three dozen of apples; sieben Stück Vieh seven head of cattle; vier Pfund Brod four pound of bread. The same applies to Mann, if denoting a *body of men*, e. g. ein Regiment von tausend Mann a regiment of a thousand men. Feminine substantives, however, and those which imply a measure of time, and money are excepted from this rule, e. g. sechs Ellen Tuch six yards of cloth; sieben Meilen seven miles; drei Jahre three years; sechs Pfennige six pence. The expression es ist vier Uhr (*it is four o'clock*), is elliptical, *instead of* es ist vier an der Uhr.

CHAPTER VI.

OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives, *generally* speaking, may be distinguished, 127 by being either *simple* or *primary* from their root, e. g. groß (*great*), stark (*strong*), or *compound* or *derivative*, e. g. mächtig (*mighty, powerful*), zänktisch (*quarrelsome*).

Adjectives are employed as *Attributive* or *Predicative* Adjectives. They are *Attributive Adjectives*. when used to qualify a substantive; as der mächtige Feind (*the powerful enemy*). But they are *Predicative Adjectives*, when standing in place of a verb, and expressing the predicate of a sentence; as der Feind ist mächtig (*the enemy is powerful*).

Adjectives are moreover termed *Substantive Adjectives*, when *substantively* used, that is to say, when expressing a person or thing, e. g. der Gute (*the good man*), die Kranken (*the sick persons*), das Schöne (the [i. e. *that which is*] *beautiful*, or, *the beautiful thing*). The use of Substantive Adjectives is not so limited in German as in English; for all adjectives may be so used, both in the singular and plural numbers, in all cases in which the English language, as has just been shown above, requires an additional substantive, to express the notion of *man*, *woman*, or *thing*, e. g. ein Weiser a wise man, der Arme the poor man, die Armen the poor people, die Guten the good ones, die Alte the old woman, eine Schöne a fair one, das Gute, good things, das Neue, new things, das Große, great things. This usage, however, holds good in cases only when the substantive understood implies either the notion of a *person* generally, and without any further distinction than that of *sex*, or the notion of *things* in the most general and *indefinite* sense.

Substantive Adjectives are written with capitals, like *real* substantives.

128 Adjectives are inflected by *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case*, according to the following rules.

1. The *Attributive Adjective* has the same Gender, Number, and Case, as the substantive to which it refers.

2. The *Substantive Adjective* has the Gender, Number, and Case, which the substantive understood would have, if expressed.

3. The *Predicative Adjective* has no inflection.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

129 There are in German two declensions, formed by adding the following terminations to the adjective.

Ancient declension.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom. masc.</i>	— er	<i>fem.</i> — e	<i>neuter</i> — eſ	— e
<i>Gen.</i>	— eſ	— er	— eſ	— er
<i>Dat.</i>	— em	— er	— em	— en
<i>Acc.</i>	— en	— e	— eſ	— e

Modern declension.

<i>Nom. masc.</i>	— e	<i>fem.</i> — e	<i>neuter</i> — e	— en
<i>Gen.</i>	— en	— en	— en	— en
<i>Dat.</i>	— en	— en	— en	— en
<i>Acc.</i>	— en	— e	— e	— en

All adjectives are inflected in both declensions, thus :

I. Ancient declension.

<i>Sing. Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> gut=er	gut=e	gut=eſ	gut=e
<i>Gen.</i> gut=eſ	gut=er	gut=eſ	gut=er
<i>Dat.</i> gut=em	gut=er	gut=em	gut=en
<i>Acc.</i> gut=en	gut=e	gut=eſ	gut=e.

II. Modern declension.

<i>Nom.</i> gut=e	gut=e	gut=e	gut=en
<i>Gen.</i> gut=en	gut=en	gut=en	gut=en
<i>Dat.</i> gut=en	gut=en	gut=en	gut=en
<i>Acc.</i> gut=en	gut=e	gut=e	gut=en.

When adjectives with one of the affixes *er*, *el*, *en*, are inflected, the vowel *e* of the *affix*, not that of the *termination*, is commonly dropped; as in:

edel	eben	bitter
edle	ebne	bittre
edlen	ebnen	bittren
edlem	ebnem	bittrem
edler	ebner	bittrer.

Ganz whole, and *halb half*, take no terminations when preceding neuter names of places and countries; e. g. ganz England, in ganz England, halb London, von halb London.

?

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

130 *Adjectives take the terminations of the modern declension, when preceded by an article, pronoun, or numeral which has a termination of the ancient declension.*

In all other cases they assume the terminations of the ancient declension.

a. The definite article *der, die, das*, and the simple demonstrative pronouns, *dieser this, jener that*, having the terminations of the ancient declension, are followed by an adjective in the modern declension.

e. g. the old man. this young man.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> der alt=e Mann,	dieser jung=e Mann,
<i>Gen.</i> des alt=en Mannes,	dieses jung=en Mannes,
<i>Dat.</i> dem alt=en Manne,	diesem jung=en Manne,
<i>Acc.</i> den alt=en Mann,	diesen jung=en Mann.

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i> die alt=en Männer,	diese jung=en Männer,
<i>Gen.</i> der alt=en Männer,	dieser jung=en Männer,
<i>Dat.</i> den alt=en Männern,	diesen jung=en Männern.
<i>Acc.</i> die alt=en Männer,	diese jung=en Männer.

the little flower. this beautiful flower.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> die klein=e Blume,	diese schön=e Blume,
<i>Gen.</i> der klein=en Blume,	dieser schön=en Blume,
<i>Dat.</i> der klein=en Blume,	dieser schön=en Blume,
<i>Acc.</i> die klein=e Blume,	diese schön=e Blume.

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i> die klein=en Blumen,	diese schön=en Blumen,
<i>Gen.</i> der klein=en Blumen,	dieser schön=en Blumen,
<i>Dat.</i> den klein=en Blumen,	diesen schön=en Blumen,
<i>Acc.</i> die klein=en Blumen,	diese schön=en Blumen.

the good child.

that bad child.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> das gut=e Kind,	jenes schlecht=e Kind,
<i>Gen.</i> des gut=en Kindes,	jenes schlecht=en Kindes,
<i>Dat.</i> dem gut=en Kinde,	jenem schlecht=en Kinde,
<i>Acc.</i> das gut=e Kind,	jenes schlecht=e Kind.

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i> die gut=en Kinder,	jene schlecht=en Kinder,
<i>Gen.</i> der gut=en Kinder,	jener schlecht=en Kinder,
<i>Dat.</i> den gut=en Kindern,	jenen schlecht=en Kindern,
<i>Acc.</i> die gut=en Kinder,	jene schlecht=en Kinder.

b. The indefinite article *ein*, a; the numerals *ein* 131 one, *kein* no, and the possessive pronouns *mein* my, *dein* thy, *sein* his, its, *ihr* her, *unser* our, *euer* your, *ihr* their, are declined after the ancient form, except, in the *nom. masc. and neut.*, and the *acc. neut. of the sing.*, in which cases they take no termination.

The following adjective, therefore, is inflected in the ancient declension, in the *nom. masc. and neut.*, and the *acc. neut. of the sing.*, and the rest in the modern declension, e. g.

an old man.

a good child.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> ein alt=er Mann,	ein gut=es Kind,
<i>Gen.</i> eines alt=en Mannes,	eines gut=en Kindes,
<i>Dat.</i> einem alt=en Manne,	einem gut=en Kinde,
<i>Acc.</i> einen alt=en Mann,	ein gut=es Kind.

In the plural, when not preceded by an article, the adjective is declined in the ancient form.

<i>Nom.</i> alt=e Männer,	gut=e Kinder,
<i>Gen.</i> alt=er Männer,	gut=er Kinder,
<i>Dat.</i> alt=en Männern,	gut=en Kindern,
<i>Acc.</i> alt=e Männer.	gut=e Kinder.

my young friend.

my dear child.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i>	mein jung=er Freund,	mein lieb=es Kind,
<i>Gen.</i>	meines jung=en Freundes,	meines lieb=en Kindes,
<i>Dat.</i>	meinem jung=en Freunde,	meinem lieb=en Kinde,
<i>Acc.</i>	meinen jung=en Freund,	mein lieb=es Kind.

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	meine jung=en Freunde,	meine lieb=en Kinder,
<i>Gen.</i>	meiner jung=en Freunde,	meiner lieb=en Kinder,
<i>Dat.</i>	meinen jung=en Freunden,	meinen lieb=en Kindern,
<i>Acc.</i>	meine jung=en Freunde,	meine lieb=en Kinder.

my white goose.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	meine weiß=e Gans,	meine weiß=en Gänse,
<i>Gen.</i>	meiner weiß=en Gans,	meiner weiß=en Gänse,
<i>Dat.</i>	meiner weiß=en Gans,	meinen weiß=en Gänsen,
<i>Acc.</i>	meine weiß=e Gans,	meine weiß=en Gänse.

- 132 c. Adjectives, not preceded by an article, pronoun, or numeral, which has a termination of the ancient form, are likewise declined in the *ancient* form.

*Singular.**Plural.*

old wine.

<i>Masc. Nom.</i>	alt=er Wein,	alt=e Weine,
<i>Gen.</i>	alt=es Weines,	alt=er Weine,
<i>Dat.</i>	alt=em Weine,	alt=en Weinen,
<i>Acc.</i>	alt=en Wein,	alt=e Weine.

fresh air.

<i>Fem. Nom.</i>	frisch=e Luft,	frisch=e Lüfte,
<i>Gen.</i>	frisch=er Luft,	frisch=er Lüfte,
<i>Dat.</i>	frisch=er Luft,	frisch=en Lüften,
<i>Acc.</i>	frisch=e Luft,	frisch=e Lüfte.

new-bread.

<i>Neut. Nom.</i>	frisch=es Brod,	frisch=e Brode,
<i>Gen.</i>	frisch=es Brodes,	frisch=er Brode,
<i>Dat.</i>	frisch=em Brode,	frisch=en Broden,
<i>Acc.</i>	frisch=es Brod,	frisch=e Brode.

Wenig (undeclined) alt-er Wein, viel (undecl.) frisch-e Luft, zwei (undecl.) frisch-e Brode are declined in the same manner.

The Gen. Sing. masc. and neut. sometimes ends in en instead of es: alten Weines, frischen Brodes.

The nom. and acc. sing. neut. often drop their termination: frisch Brod new bread, schön Wetter fine weather.

Substantive Adjectives are inflected according to the 133 same rules.

*Singular.**Plural.*

the wise (man).

<i>Nom.</i> der Weis-e,	die Weis-en,
<i>Gen.</i> des Weis-en,	der Weis-en,
<i>Dat.</i> dem Weis-en,	den Weis-en,
<i>Acc.</i> den Weis-en,	die Weis-en.

a wise (man).

<i>Nom.</i> ein Weis-er,	Weis-e,
<i>Gen.</i> eines Weis-en,	Weis-er,
<i>Dat.</i> einem Weis-en,	Weis-en,
<i>Acc.</i> einen Weis-en,	Weis-e.

the old (woman).

<i>Nom.</i> die Alt-e,	die Alt-en,
<i>Gen.</i> der Alt-en,	der Alt-en,
<i>Dat.</i> der Alt-en,	den Alt-en,
<i>Acc.</i> die Alt-e,	die Alt-en.

good things.

<i>Nom.</i> das Gut-e,	Gut-es,
<i>Gen.</i> des Gut-en,	Gut-es,
<i>Dat.</i> dem Gut-en,	Gut-em,
<i>Acc.</i> das Gut-e,	Gut-es.

The following substantive adjectives have no corresponding adjectives in English, but are always rendered by words which are really substantives:

officer der Beamte,	ein Beamter,
<i>plur.</i> die Beamten,	<i>plur.</i> Beamte,
servant der Bediente,	ein Bedienter etc.,
an acquaintance der Bekannte,	ein Bekannter,
the German, der Deutsche,	ein Deutscher,
stranger der Fremde,	ein Fremder,
prisoner der Gefangene,	ein Gefangener,
ambassador der Gesandte,	ein Gesandter,
traveller der Reisende,	ein Reisender,
relation der Verwandte,	ein Verwandter.

When two adjectives precede and refer to the same substantive, both are declined in the same manner, according to the preceding rules, e. g. *der arme alte Mann* the poor old man, *ein armer alter Mann* a poor old man. *Armer alter Mann* poor old man etc.

Exceptions of §. 130.

134 - 1. The adjective takes the terminations of the ancient declension, when preceded by the nom. or accus. plural of the following words:

einige some,	keine no,	alle all,
etliche „	andere other,	solche such,
manche several,	viel many,	
mehrere „	wenig few,	

e. g. *Einige deutsche Kaiser* some German emperors; *viele, mehrere, wenig treue Freunde* many, several, few true friends; *viele deutsche Fürsten* many German princes. After *alle*, however, the adjective follows the ancient declension only, when pointed out by emphasis; e. g. *alle große Angelegenheiten* all important affairs.

2. After *ich, du, wir, ihr*, the adjective takes the terminations of the modern declension; except in the nom. sing.

<i>Nom.</i> <i>ich armer Mann,</i>	<i>plur.</i> <i>wir armen Männer,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>mir armen Manne,</i>	<i>uns armen Männern,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>mich armen Mann,</i>	<i>uns armen Männer.</i>

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Comparison is formed by the termination *er* for the *comparative*, and *eſt* (*ſt*) for the *superlative* degree in all adjectives, e. g. groß, great, größer, größest; angenehm, agreeable, angenehmer, angenehmst, merkwürdig remarkable, merkwürdiger, merkwürdigst.

In the termination of the superlative degree, eurythmy requires the vowel *e* to be dropped when the final sound of the adjective is not a lingual consonant (*D, t, s, ß, ſch, z, ſt*), e. g. schönst the finest, instead of schönest-er; liebster, the dearest, instead of lieb-est-er; but on the other hand, breit-ester, the broadest; süß-ester, the sweetest; kürz-ester, the shortest. In participles, however, which have the unaccented termination *et* or *end*, the vowel *e* is also omitted; e. g. der gebildetste, the most accomplished; der reizendste the most charming; and the practice is variable in those adjectives, the final sound of which is a vowel or a double liquid consonant; e. g. frei free, froh happy, dünn thin, voll full, Starr stiff.

In the comparative degree of those adjectives which have one of the affixes *el, er, en*, the vowel of that affix is commonly dropped as in their declension, e. g. edler, bitterer, ebner; but in the superlative they drop the other *e*; e. g. edelste, bitterste, ebenste, according to the first rule.

The vowels *a, o* and *u* are modified in the comparative and superlative degree of monosyllabic adjectives, e. g. in stark, strong, stärker, der stärkste; fromm, pious, frömmer, der frömmste; flug, wise, flüger, der flügste. The following, however, are exceptions:

bange afraid,	flach flat,	hold favourable,
bunt speckled,	froh merry,	kahl bald,
faßb fallow,	gerade straight,	knapp narrow,
fade insipid,	glatt smooth,	farg stingy,
falsch false,	hohl hollow,	lahm lame,

laß tired,	facht slow,	straff stiff,
lofe loose,	fanft soft,	ftumm dumb,
matt wearied,	fatt satisfied,	ftumpf blunt,
morfch mellow,	fchlaff slack,	toll mad,
platt flat,	fchlant slender,	voll full,
plump clumsy,	fchroff rough,	wahr true,
roh raw,	ftarr stiff,	zahm tame,
rund round,	ftolz proud,	zart tender.

As also those which have the diphthong *au*, e. g. *rauh* rough, *taub* deaf. Practice is variable with regard to *blaß* pale, and *gesund* sound.

Besides the *simple formation* of the *comparative* by appending an *er* to the *positive* there exists a *compound* form; thus f. i. '*more learned*' is *gelehrter*, but also '*mehr gelehrt*' is the only correct expression in some cases. If, in fact, on the comparison of any equality takes place relative to *two* subjects, the *simple* form is used, e. g. *er ist gelehrter als sein Bruder*, *he is more learned than his brother*. — But if *two* qualities are compound relating to *one and the same* subject, the *compound form* is invariably used; e. g. *er ist mehr tapfer als gelehrt*, *he is more brave than learned*; *er ist mehr flug als rechtschaffen*, *he is more prudent than honest*.

136 The following forms of comparison are *irregular* or *defective* :

	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
gut good,	besser better,	best best,
viel much,	mehr more,	meist or mehrst most,
hoch high,	höher higher,	höchst highest,
nah near,	näher nearer,	nächst nearest, next,
	eher earlier,	erst earlist, first,
	minder less,	lest last,
		mindest least.

From the superlatives: *der erste* the first, *der letzte* the last, new comparatives are formed: *der erstere* the former, *der letztere* the latter; from *mehr* more, is formed: *mehrere* several.

The following comparative and superlative forms are made from *adverbs of place*:

außen outside,	äußer outer,	äußerst utmost,
innen inside,	inner inner,	innerst inmost,
vorn before,	vorder fore,	vorderst foremost and first,
hinten behind,	hinter hinder,	hinterst hindmost,
oben above,	ober upper,	oberst uppermost,
unten below,	unter under,	unterst undermost.

All comparatives and superlatives are declined like adjectives, with the exception of *mehr more*, and *min-der less*, which are indeclinable; *cher earlier*, is only used as an adverb.

CHAPTER VII.

OF PRONOUNS.

There are three kinds of pronouns, viz. *Personal*, 137 *Demonstrative*, and *Interrogative*.

Pronouns are used in place of a *substantive*; as, *he, that, who*; — or of an *adjective*; as, *this house, which house*; — or of an *adverb*; as, *here, there, where*.

There are accordingly three classes of pronouns, viz.

1. *Substantive pronouns*,
2. *Adjective pronouns*,
3. *Adverbial pronouns* *).

The adjective personal pronouns are termed *posses-sive pronouns*.

*) The adverbial Pronouns will be explained in Chap. IX.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

First person.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Substantive personal pronoun.	<i>Nom.</i> ich I,	wir we,
	<i>Gen.</i> meiner of me,	unser of us,
	<i>Dat.</i> mir to me,	unſ to us,
	<i>Acc.</i> mich me,	unſ us,
Possessive pron.	mein my,	unſer our.

Second person.

Substantive personal pronoun.	<i>Nom.</i> du thou,	ihr you,
	<i>Gen.</i> deiner of thee,	euer of you,
	<i>Dat.</i> dir to thee,	euch to you,
	<i>Acc.</i> dich thee,	euch you,
Possessive pron.	dein thy,	euer your.

Third person.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Substantive personal pronoun.	<i>Nom.</i> er he,	ſie she,	eſ it,
	<i>Gen.</i> ſeiner of him,	ihrer of her,	ſeiner of it,
	<i>Dat.</i> ihm to him,	ihr to her,	ihm to it,
	<i>Acc.</i> ihn him,	ſie her,	eſ it.

Plur. of all genders.

ſie they,
ihrer of them,
ihnen to them,
ſie them.

Possessive pron. ſein his, its, ihr her, ihr their.

OBSERVATION. — In the place of the genitive meiner, deiner, ſeiner, the obsolete forms mein, dein, ſein are sometimes employed, e. g. vergiß mein nicht forget me not; gedenke mein remember me.

The pronoun eſ is frequently *contracted*, for the sake of eurythmy, with other words preceding it, and the omission of the vowel is then marked by the apostrophe ('); e. g. gib'ſ mir give it me, nimm'ſ hin take it.

This contraction is commonly made use of, when *es* is preceded by other unaccented syllables, e. g. *ist's gewiß?* is it certain? *hast du's gesehen?* have you seen it? *er hat mir's gesagt*, he told me it.

The *possessive pronouns* are declined according to ¹³⁹ the ancient declension of adjectives, with this peculiarity that, when preceding a substantive, their termination is dropped in the *nom. masc.* and *neut.* and *acc. neut.* thus :

<i>Sing. Masc. Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> mein,	mein-e,	mein-e,
<i>Gen.</i> mein-es,	mein-er,	mein-er,
<i>Dat.</i> mein-em,	mein-er,	mein-en,
<i>Acc.</i> mein-en, mein,	mein-e,	mein-e.

The termination is retained, however, when the subst. referred to, is omitted, e. g. *mein Hut ist weiß, deiner ist schwarz*, my hat is white, yours is black; *gib mir dein Pferd, und nimm meines*, give me your horse and take mine.

When the possessive pronouns thus refer to a preceding substantive, they frequently take the definite article, in which case they sometimes assume the affix *ig*, and are declined according to the modern declension of adjectives; e. g. *nimm mein Messer; du hast das deine (or deinige) verloren, und ich brauche das meine (or meinige) nicht*, take my knife; you have lost yours, and I do not want mine.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The demonstrative pronoun *der, die, das*, which ¹⁴⁰ is also used as the definite article, is declined according to the ancient form of adjectives, with a few alterations.

<i>Sing. Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> der,	das,	die,	die,
<i>Gen.</i> des,	des,	der,	der,
<i>Dat.</i> dem,	dem,	der,	den,
<i>Acc.</i> den,	das,	die,	die.

The Gen. Sing. and Plur. and Dat. Plur., when standing without a substantive, take the forms:

<i>Gen. Sing. Masc. or Neut.</i>	deſſen,
" " <i>Fem.</i>	deren,
<i>Gen. Plur.</i>	derer or deren*),
<i>Dat.</i>	denen.

2. *Dieſer this*, and *jener that*, are declined according to the ancient declension of adjectives. The nom. and acc. neut. of *dieſer* frequently drop the termination (eſ): *dieſ* (instead of *dieſeſ*).

3. The *compound pronouns derſelbe the same*, *derjenige he, (who)*, are declined like adjectives with the article (§. 133), thus:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	derſelbe,	dieſelbe,	daſſelbe,
<i>Gen.</i>	deſſelben,	derſelben,	deſſelben,
<i>Dat.</i>	demſelben,	derſelben,	demſelben,
	etc.	etc.	etc.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

141 1. *Interrogative substantive pronoun.*

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	wer who,	waſ what,
<i>Gen.</i>	wefſen whose,	wefſen (weſ) of what,
<i>Dat.</i>	wem to whom,	(wanting),
<i>Acc.</i>	wen whom,	waſ what.

2. *Interrogative adjective pronoun.*

Welcher, welche, welcheſ which, is declined according to the ancient declension of adjectives.

*) The different employment of the two forms, *derer* and *deren*, will be explained §. 330—332.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	welcher,	welche,	welches,	welche,
<i>Gen.</i>	welches,	welcher,	welches,	welcher,
<i>Dat.</i>	welchem,	welcher,	welchem,	welchen,
<i>Acc.</i>	welchen,	welche,	welches,	welche.

PRONOUNS CONTRACTED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

The neuter substantive pronouns *dieß this*, *daß that*, 142 and *waß what*, are contracted with all prepositions; they are placed before them and assume the adverbial forms: *hie (hier)*, *da*, *wo*, if the preposition begins with a consonant, and: *hier*, *dar*, *wor*, if it begins with a vowel.

<i>hieran</i> on this,	<i>daran</i> on that,	<i>woran</i> on what,
<i>hierauf</i> from this,	<i>darauf</i> from that,	<i>worauf</i> from what,
<i>hierin</i> in this,	<i>darin</i> in that,	<i>worin</i> in what,
<i>hiebei</i> at this,	<i>dabei</i> at that,	<i>wobei</i> at what,
<i>hiedurch</i> by this,	<i>dadurch</i> by that,	<i>wodurch</i> by what,
<i>hiezü</i> to this,	<i>dazü</i> to that,	<i>wozü</i> to what,
etc.	etc.	etc.

These forms correspond with the English: *therein*, *therefrom*, *whereby* etc.; but they are much more commonly used in German than in English (see §. 143, 148, 153).

ON THE USE OF PRONOUNS.

1. Personal pronouns.

The Germans, when addressing a person generally 143 use the *third person plural* of the personal pronoun; e. g. *Sie sind nicht wohl*, you are not well; *wer ist Ihr Arzt?* who is *your* physician? *Sie kennen ihn nicht*, you do not know him.

Till within some centuries the Germans, like the French and the English, addressed each other in fa-

miliar conversation by the second person singular, and in formal intercourse by the second person plural. Since that period another mode of address has been adopted, as expressive of respect, viz. by the third person plural (*ſie*), whilst inferiors were and still are addressed in the third person singular (*er, ſie*).

Although the Germans adopted these modern forms, they still retained the ancient form. There exists, therefore, a considerable variety in accommodating the mode of address to the different relations of superiority, inferiority, friendship, and love. The use of the third personal pronoun in the plural, *ſie*, is generally received in the polite conversation of people of education; and even inferiors, if not in dependence on the speaker, would be offended if otherwise addressed. The second personal pronoun in the plural, *ihr*, is usual among peasants and other people of lower condition, and is never used by others except in addressing persons of that description. This practice is, however, more common in the country than in towns. The third personal pronoun in the singular, *er* for male and *ſie* for female persons, is used only in addressing inferiors, particularly servants and others, who are dependent upon the speaker; it is also employed by the country people of some German provinces in speaking to their equals. Being considered however as indicating a want of respect, this mode of address should scarcely ever be used.

The natural address, *Du*, is much more usual at the present day in German than in other modern languages. As it excludes all ceremonious formality, it is reserved for relations of confidence, friendship, and love. We use it in addressing our family, our best friends, and the Supreme Being*).

*) Schiller makes the Spanish prince Don Carlos say to his friend Posa: *Noch eine Bitte: Nenne mich du. Ich habe Deinesgleichen stets beneidet um dies Vorrecht der Vertraulichkeit.*

OBSERVATION. — In addressing a person in writing, we always give a capital letter to the pronoun, personal or possessive, referring to that person, e. g. *ich bitte Sie (Dich, Euch) um Ihre (Deine, Euer) Freundschaft*, I beg for your friendship.

If you address a person with *Du* or *Sie*, you must always continue to use the correspondent pronouns:

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Du,</i>	<i>Sie,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Deiner,</i>	<i>Ihrer,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Dir,</i>	<i>Ihnen reflect. Sich,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Dich,</i>	<i>Sie „ Sich,</i>
<i>Possess.</i>	<i>Dein,</i>	<i>Ihr;</i>

e. g. *ich habe Dir geschrieben und Dich gebeten, mit Deinem Vater zu mir zu kommen; or: ich habe Ihnen geschrieben und Sie gebeten, mit Ihrem Vater zu mir zu kommen.*

The use of the pronoun *es* is more extensive in German than in English; and it is frequently applied even to notions of persons, not only without regard to gender, — e. g. *es ist der Arzt*, it is the physician; *es ist meine Mutter*, it is my mother, — but even when they are in the plural, e. g. *es sind Franzosen*.

The pronoun *es*, when it expresses a thing, is used only in the *nominative* and *accusative cases*, nor can it be used with a preposition before it. In the *genitive* and *dative case*, it is supplied by the *demonstrative pronoun*, which after a preposition is contracted into the adverbial forms *daran*, *damit* etc. (§. 142); e. g. *er bot mir Geld an, aber ich bedarf dessen nicht*, he offered me money, but I am not in want of it; *ich bin damit zufrieden*, I am content with it; *ich weiß nichts davon*, I know nothing of it.

The contracted adverbial forms must also be used, when referring to masculine or feminine *names of things*; *er spricht von der Musik, aber er versteht nichts davon*, he talks of music, of which he knows nothing; *er hat einen Stall und fünf Pferde darin*, he has a stable and five horses in it.

OBSERVATION. — Persons cannot be expressed in this manner; we say: *ich finde einen Freund an ihm* (and not *daran*), I find a friend in him. Only the genitive *dessen, deren*, is sometimes used for the sake of perspicuity in place of the possessive pronoun *sein* and *ihr*, even when persons and not things are referred to; because the repetition of these pronouns, which, like the personal pronouns *seiner* and *ihrer*, are used both with and without a reflective signification, would sometimes produce an ambiguity of expression; e. g. *er beschenkte seinen Vetter und dessen Sohn*, he presented his cousin and his (the cousin's) son; *sie beschenkte ihre Schwester und deren* (not *ihre*) *Tochter*, she made presents to her sister and to her (the sister's) daughter.

Reflective pronouns.

- 144 Personal pronouns are termed *reflective*, when the person or thing denoted by the pronoun is the same with the subject of the sentence, as in: 'I dress *myself*; he loves *himself*.' In German the word *self* is not employed in this manner, the reflective signification being pointed out by the *simple personal pronoun* in the first and second persons, and by a particular reflective pronoun in the third*).

Singular.

<i>Dat.</i> mir	}	myself,	<i>dir</i>	}	thyself,	}	<i>sich</i> himself.
<i>Acc.</i> mich			<i>dich</i>				

Plural.

Dat. and *Acc.* *unſ* ourselves, *euch* yourselves, *sich* themselves, e. g. *ich fleide mich*, I dress myself; *Du rühmest Dich*, thou praisest thyself; *sie lobt sich*, she praises herself; *sie beschimpfen sich*, they disgrace themselves.

The English pronouns *myself, himself* etc. are besides employed for expressing *exclusion* of another person,

*) The reflective signification is sometimes not expressed in English, e. g. he had no money with *him*. Our people have driven off their cattle along with *them*. In German the reflective pronoun is to be used in such constructions also: *Er hatte kein Geld bei sich*. *Unsre Leute haben ihr Vieh mit sich fortgetrieben*.

as in: I *myself* have done it; the physician *himself* is a patient. In this case the indeclinable pronoun *selbst* or *selber* is used in German: *ich selbst, du selbst, er selbst* etc.; e. g. *ich selbst habe es gethan; der Arzt selbst ist krank; er kann sich selbst nicht heilen*, he cannot cure even himself; *Du hast es selbst gesagt*, you said so yourself. *Du selbst mußt richten, Du allein* (Sch.). *Ich selber kann sie retten.* (Sch.) *Du selber sollst uns sagen, was Du vorhast.* (Sch.)

When *selbst* stands before a substantive or pronoun, it implies the same as *even* in English and has the subordinate accent; e. g. *selbst der König konnte ihn nicht retten*, the king himself (= even the king), was not able to save him; *selbst seine Feinde bewunderten ihn*, his enemies even admired him. *Einen Verblendeten entdeck' ich, den selbst des Tages volles Licht nicht heilt.* (Sch.)

The *reflective pronoun* *sich*, if it expresses a *plur.* 145 *number*, has, like *uns* (*us*) and *euch* (*you*), also a *reciprocal signification*, e. g. *die Freunde begegnen sich* (*the friends meet [one another]*); *die Knaben schlagen sich*, the boys fight with one another; *sie lieben sich*, they love each other; *wir werden uns wiedersehen*, we shall see one another again. *Wenn sich die Fürsten befehden, müssen die Diener sich morden und tödten.* (Sch.)

When however this *reciprocal signification* might be misunderstood and mistaken for the mere reflective sense (e. g. *sie lieben sich*, they love themselves), the indeclinable pronoun *einander* is used for the three persons; e. g. *sie lieben einander; ihr kennet einander*, you know one another.

Possessive pronoun.

The *possessive pronoun* is always omitted in German, 146 when it follows or is *self-evident* that the *object* necessarily relates to the *subject*; e. g. *ich habe den Arm gebrochen*, I have broken my arm; *der König hat eine Krone auf dem Haupte und ein Zepter in der Hand*, the king has a crown upon his head and a scepter in his hand.

Sie hatten die Hüte über die Augenbrauen gezogen, they had their hats pulled over their brows. Sie hielt das Schnupftuch vor die Augen, she put her handkerchief to her eyes.

Expressions like: a servant of ours, a relation of yours, are translated in a different way: einer meiner Bedienten, one of my servants; einer meiner Verwandten, one of my relations.

2. Demonstrative pronouns.

147 Demonstrative pronouns are used to point out the particular or *individual* person or thing, meant by the speaker. This is done in two different ways;

1. by referring things merely to the *speaker*; e. g. *this* book (which I am showing you), *that* book, the *same* book (I have been speaking of) etc.

Examples: da's*) Buch habe ich schon gelesen (*tha't* book I have been reading already); de'n (= jenen) Herrn kenne ich (*tha't* Gentleman I know); comp. §. 149.

2. by referring things to an *accessory sentence*; e. g. *the* book, *which* he gave me; *he*, *who* does wrong etc. In this case there is generally a *demonstrative pronoun* in the principal, and a *relative pronoun* in the accessory sentence; and the two, when taken together, are termed *correlative pronouns*.

Examples: de'r Mann, den du kennst (the [= *tha't*] *man*, *whom* you know); den (= derjenige, or de'r, den) du suchst, ist nicht hier (he *whom* you are looking for, is not here) comp. §. 151; darf Euch de'r Mann von Ehre sprechen, der die Treue brach? (*may tha't* (= *such a man*) *talk* to you about honour, *who* broke his faith?) (Sch.)

*) The accent is introduced here, simply to denote *emphasis*.

A. *Absolute demonstrative pronouns.*

Dieser, jener, der, are absolute demonstrative pro- 148
nouns. The pronouns dieser and jener (declined according to the ancient form of adjectives, §. 129) are *adjective pronouns*. Dieser is applied to those persons or things which are *nearer to the speaker* in point of time or of space: jener, on the other hand, to those which are *more distant from the speaker*, e. g. dieser Hut gehört mir, und jener dir, this hat is mine, and that is yours; diesseits und jenseits des Stromes, on this and on the other side of the river; in dieser und in jener Welt, in this and in the other world; in diesem Augenblicke und an jenem (i. e. dem jüngsten Tage) Tage, in this moment and on that day (i. e. the day of *judgment*). In the same manner two objects spoken of, are designated in German, the *first* named by jener (= the former) and the *last* named by dieser (= the latter); e. g. der Frühling und der Herbst hat seine Freuden, dieser gibt Früchte, jener Blumen (*the spring and the autumn have its enjoyments, the latter yields fruit the former flowers*).

The *neuter* pronoun dieses used *substantively*, is, like the indefinite es and the demonstrative das, frequently applied to the most general and indefinite notion of a subject, without distinction of gender and number; and in this signification the nominative and accusative dieses are commonly contracted into dies; e. g. dies ist eine Rose, this is a rose; dies ist eine Sache von Wichtigkeit, this is a matter of importance; dies sind arme Leute, these are poor people; das sind Leute, die ich nie vergesse, those are people I never forget; das waren Karl Stuarts Zimmer, these were the apartments of Charles Stuart. When the pronoun of the neuter gender dieses, used *substantively*, and applied to notions of things, is to be connected with prepositions, its place is usually taken by the *adverbial* pronoun hier (§. 142), which is contracted with the preposition into the forms hieran, hieraus, hiervon, hiermit etc. analogous to the forms daran, daraus, davon etc.; e. g. hieran er-

fenne ich ihn, by this (hereby) I know him; hierin hat er Recht, in this (herein) he is right; hiervon weiß ich Nichts, of this I know nothing; ich zwinge ihn hiermit, I force him by this.

- 149 Instead of *dieser*, particularly when used *substantively*, the pronoun *der*, *die*, *das* is frequently used, and in this case takes a stronger accent in order to distinguish it from the definite article; e. g. *der Baum trägt keine Frucht*, that tree bears no fruit; *der ist krank*, that (man) is ill; *die ist schön*, that (woman) is handsome; *das ist Gold*, that is gold. [*Additional examples from Germ. authors: der muß es sein, den hab' ich mir erlesen*, (Sch.) (he [= that very person] it shall be, him I have chosen); *der soll's sein, der an dem nächsten Morgen mir zuerst entgegen kommt mit einem Liebeszeichen* (Sch.), (it shall be he who [= who soever] comes to meet me the next morning with a token of [his] affection); *den möcht' ich wissen, der der Treuste mir von Allen ist* (Sch.), (him I should wish to know, who among all of them proves [the] most faithful to me.)] The neuter *das*, like *es* and *die s*, is applied also to express persons without regard to gender and number, e. g. *das ist des Kaisers Hand und Siegel* (Sch.) (that is the Emperor's hand and signet); *das ist der Fall* (Sch.) (that [= such] is the case).

- 150 The demonstrative *such* is expressed by *solch*, which is declined like an adjective; when, however, it precedes the article, it is not declined; when it precedes an adjective, it has commonly the power of an adverb of intensity, and is generally translated by the adverb *so*; e. g. such a man, *solch ein Mann* or *ein solcher Mann*; *ein solcher* (= *so großer*) *Sturm* (such a tempest); *eine solche* (= *so große*) *Hitze* (such a heat); *ein solcher Auftrag* *schreckt mich nicht, mit solchen Schätzen kann ich dienen* (Göth. Faust) (a mission of that kind does not dismay me, I have it in my power to offer treasures such as you demand).

Solch is never used as a predicate; see §. 201.

Such as, see §. 152.

B. *Correlative pronouns.*

The following pronouns are used to connect attributive sentences with the principal ones: 151

<i>in the principal:</i>	<i>in the accessory sentence:</i>
der*) derjenige } <i>he, that,</i> derselbe <i>the same,</i>	{ <i>welcher or</i> { <i>der*)</i> } <i>who, which**),</i>

e. g. *der, welcher (der) flug handelt, verdient Lob, he who acts wisely deserves praise; die, welche (die) Du suchst, ist nicht hier, she whom you seek is not here; das Buch, welches (das) ich gelesen habe, the book which I have read; wenn ich diese Männer mit denen vergleiche, welche uns umgeben, so scheinen sie mir eine andere Art Wesen, when I compare these men with those that surround us, they appear almost an other order of beings.*

Derjenige might be used in all these sentences in order to give more emphasis to the pronoun. *Examples:* *Derjenige, der dich betrügen will, muß sehr schlau sein (he that wishes to deceive you, must be very crafty); er wollte gern dasjenige, was er wußte, auf Andere übertragen (G.) (he was desirous of imparting to others [that] what he himself knew).*

Derselbe the same, is generally followed by the relative pronoun *der*; e. g. *derselbe Mann, der gestern hier war, the same man who was here yesterday; ich habe dasselbe Buch gelesen, das Du gelesen hast, I have read the same book which you have read.* English expressions like: *Charles is of the same opinion as John; Charles goes the same way as John,* cannot well be rendered in the same manner in German; we commonly say: *Karl und Johann sind derselben Meinung;*

*) The *demonstrative* *der* has in the Gen. Plur. *derer*; when used in the *relative* sense, it has *deren* (§. 140).

***) In English *who* refers to persons and *which* to things; in German both *welcher* and *der* refer to persons as well as to things.

Karl und Johann gehen denselben Weg. If *the same* is employed absolutely, as in: they were of the *same* (of *one*) opinion, it is frequently expressed by the numeral *ein* (one); e. g. sie waren Einer Meinung; sie gehen Einen Weg (see §. 159). [*Additional Examples from Germ. authors: Weh' dem armen Opfer, wenn derselbe Mund, der das Gesetz gab, auch das Urtheil spricht* (Sch.) (*woe to the victim, if the self same mouth, which gave the law, pronounces sentence too*); *es ist derselbe, den ich schon gesehen* (*he is the [self] same person that I saw before*); *sind's nicht dieselben, die ein edles Volk frei und gerecht regieren?* (Sch.) (*are they not the same that rule a noble people freely and justly*); *derselbe Marmor, dasselbe Erz ist es, das einen Zeus wie einen Faun möglich macht* (G.) (*it is the [self] same marble, the same bronze, out of which a Jupiter and a Satyr may be shapen*).]

When the neuter of the demonstrative pronoun is used *substantively*, the accessory sentence does not take *welches*, but *was*; e. g. das ist nicht wahr, was Du sagst, that is not true, what you say; ich sage dasselbe, was Du sagst, I say the same, what you say.

The same is done in the masculine gender, when the accessory sentence precedes the principal, e. g. wer lügt, der stiehlt, he who lies, will steal.

- 152 The relative *welcher* ought never to be employed in the *genitive case*, because *welches*, *welcher*, *whose*, might be taken for another case; it must be supplied by *dessen*, *deren*, the genitive of *der*, *die*, *das*; e. g. der Mann, dessen (not *welches*) Kind gestorben ist, the man whose child died; ich habe einige Bücher, deren Preis ich nicht kenne, I have some books, the price of which I don't know.

The relative pronoun, *welcher* or *der*, must take the first place in the accessory sentence and can only be preceded by prepositions; expressions, accordingly, like *by means of which*, *in connexion with whom*, *all of whom*, ought to be avoided in German and translated in a different way; e. g. he had three children, *all of*

whom died in their infancy, er hatte drei Kinder, die alle früh starben. They risked several engagements, *in most of which* they were victorious, sie wagten mehrere Treffen, in denen sie meistens siegreich waren. Ich erinnere mich des Tages und der Ausritte, von denen du erzählst (*I remember the day and the scenes which you are relating*). They were daily entertained with songs, *the subject of which* was the happy valley, sie wurden täglich mit Liedern unterhalten, deren Gegenstand das glückliche Thal war. [*Promiscuous examples from authors on dessen, derer* &c. Der Ruhm dessen, der lügt, dauert nicht lange (Sch.) (*the reputation of the man who tells a lie will last not long*); *jetzt sag' mir das Ende derer, die von Troja kehrten* (G.) (*now tell me, pray, the fate of those, that did return from Troy*); ich bin nicht von denen, die mit Worten tapfer sind (Sch.) (*I am not one of those, who are brave in words*).

The pronoun *welcher* is not used when referring to one of the personal pronouns (I, thou, he etc.), which are always followed by *der*; moreover, after a personal pronoun of the first or second person, the same pronoun is repeated after the relative *der*; e. g. *ich, der ich ihn kenne*, I who know him; *du, der du ihn kennst*, thou who knowest him; *er, der ihn kennt*, he who knows him. — Süßer Friede, *der du von dem Himmel bist, alles Leid und Schmerzen stillest*, komm in meine Brust (Götthe).

The correlatives *such as*, when equivalent to *those who*, are rendered in German by *diejenigen*, or *solche, welche* (or *die*); e. g. *such as are poor, diejenigen, welche arm sind*; but when the accessory sentence is intended to express an effect, it takes the conjunction *daß*; e. g. *she placed her chair in such a posture as to occupy almost the whole fire, sie setzte den Stuhl in eine solche Stellung, daß sie fast das ganze Feuer einnahm*.

The demonstrative pronoun is frequently omitted in German as in English, e. g. *what I told you, is true, was ich Ihnen sagte, ist wahr*. In German however it

must not be omitted after a preposition; e. g. he would have the half of what I had received, er wollte die Hälfte von dem haben, was ich erhalten hatte.

The relative pronoun is never omitted in German, as is frequently done in English; e. g. the man, I saw yesterday, der Mann, welchen (or den) ich gestern gesehen habe; the book I was reading, das Buch, welches (or das) ich las.

3. Interrogative pronouns.

- 153 In interrogative principal or accessory sentences, the substantive pronouns *wer who, was what*, are employed *absolutely*, that is to say *without* a substantive; the adjective pronouns *welcher, welche, welches*, when relating to, or, preceding a substantive; e. g. *Wer ist da? who is there? Was bringst Du? what is it you bring? — Welcher Arzt ist der beste? which physician is the best? Welches Buch willst Du lesen? which book will you read? — Ich weiß nicht, wer da ist, oder was Du bringst, I do not know who is there, or what you bring. Sage mir, welcher Arzt der beste ist, welches Buch Du lesen willst, tell me what physician is the best, which book you will read.*

The *adverbial* forms compounded with prepositions, as, *wovon, woran* etc. (§. 142), can only be employed, and *must* be employed, instead of the substantive pronoun, when speaking of *things*; e. g. *wovon spricht er? what does he speak of? (but: von wem spricht er? whom does he speak of?) Woran denkst Du? what do you think of? (but: an wen denkst Du? whom do you think of?)* etc.

- 154 In asking after the *kind or species* of a thing, the compound adjective pronoun *was für ein* is used, in which only the last word (*ein*) is declined like the indefinite article; e. g. *was für ein Mann? what kind of man? Was für eine Frau? what kind of woman? Ein* is omitted before names of materials and before

all substantives in the plural number; e. g. Was für Wein? what sort of wine? Was für Menschen? what kind of men?

Instead of was für, the indeclinable welch is sometimes used especially in expressions of surprise and admiration; e. g. welch ein Riese! what a giant! welch ein Ungeheuer! what a monster!

Promiscuous examples from authors: Wo;u lernen wir die Armbrust spannen (Sch.) (to what intent and purpose are we taught*) to bend the bow?) Womit hab' ich's verschuldet? (G.) (what has been my mistake? = in what am I guilty, or, to be blamed?) In der Jungfrau Hand bist du gefallen, woraus nicht Rettung noch Erlösung mehr zu hoffen (into the maiden's hand thou art fallen, from which no power on earth**) can ever rescue thee)! Was für Berge, was für Wüsten, was für Ströme trennen uns noch! (L e s s.) (what mountains, desserts, torrents are still separating us!) Was hat er denn für Wunder vor unsern Augen gethan? (G.) (what wonders then [I ask] has he performed before our eyes?)

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The indefinite pronouns express persons and things 155 in an indefinite and general manner. Such are:

Jedermann	everybody,	Etwas	something,
Jemand	somebody,	Nichts	nothing,
Niemand	nobody,	Man	one.

Jedermann, Jemand and Niemand take the termination es in the Gen. case (Jedermanns, Jemandes, Niemandes); Jemand and Niemand take the termination en in the Dative and sometimes in the Accusative cases. Etwas, Nichts and man are not declined; e. g. Jedermann weiß, daß man sich irren kann, every body knows, that one may err; Niemand kann

*) Littr. 'do we learn'.

***) Littr. 'no salvation nor delivery is further to be hoped'.

zweien Herren dienen, nobody can serve two masters. Wenn Jemand eine Reise thut, so kann er etwas erzählen, if any one makes a journey, he can relate something; ist Jemand in der Stube? Is there anybody in the room? Hast Du etwas in der Hand? have you anything in your hand?

The indefinite numerals, *einer* *one*, *keiner* *none*, are used instead of Jemand, Niemand; and was instead of etwas; e. g. Wenn Einer eine Reise thut, so kann er was erzählen. Keiner kann zweien Herren dienen.

Anybody, and *anything* are expressed by Jemand and Etwas only in *conditional* and *interrogative* sentences, e. g. if any body should know it, wenn Jemand es wissen sollte; does any body know any thing of it? weiß Jemand Etwas davon? In negative sentences the negative pronouns Niemand, Nichts are employed instead of *not*—*anybody* (or *thing*); e. g. I do not know any body here, ich kenne hier Niemand; I do not know any thing about it, ich weiß nichts davon.

When *any* is used adjectively, as *any* book, *any* news, it is commonly omitted in conditional and interrogative sentences; e. g. if any news is brought to you, wenn Ihnen Nachrichten gebracht werden. Is there any news? sind Nachrichten da? and in negative sentences, *not*—*any* is translated by *kein*; e. g. I have not read any book, ich habe kein Buch gelesen.

In positive affirmative sentences *any* is expressed by *irgend* (*irgend Jemand*, *irgend ein Buch* &c.), or when equivalent to *every* by *Jeder*, *Jedermann*.

- 156 The indefinite pronoun *man*, *one*, is only used in the nominative case; the dative and accusative cases are supplied by *ein*, for the genitive case *one's*, the possessive pronoun *sein* is used, and for the reflexive *one's self* *sich*; e. g. Man kommt nur hin um seine Freunde zu treffen, one merely comes to meet one's friends; man spräche gern mit ihm; aber er versteht einen nicht, one would like to speak with him, but he does

not understand one; es ist besser, einem*) sein Geld, als sein Leben zu nehmen, it is better to take away any body's money, than his life; man kann nicht immer auf seiner Hut sein, one cannot always be on one's guard; man muß seinen Nachbar wie sich selbst lieben, one ought to love one's neighbour as one's self; man schämt sich fast über die Straßen zu gehen, one is almost ashamed to pass along the streets.

The indefinite pronoun man (litr. *one* = 'people'), is like the French *on*, used to a greater extent than the English *one*; e. g. man sagt they say; weiß man, wer diese blut'ge That verübte? (Sch.) (*do people know, who has done this bloody deed?*) Is it known who committed this bloody deed? Man sollte sich viel Mühe geben, zu r. much pains should be taken to etc.

When placed however after an adjective or adjective pronoun, in order to give them the value of a substantive, the word *one* is not translated; e. g. a poor one ein Armer, the fair ones die Schönen, every one Jeder, some one Jemand etc.

One when placed before proper names, as in: one William Curry, one Jenny Jones, is translated by ein gewisser (a certain); ein gewisser Wilhelm Curry, eine gewisse Johanna Jones.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF NUMERALS.

Numerals are either *definite*, as, *two, three, the third*, or *indefinite*, as, *some, a few*.

*) For this Dative see Syntax §. 271.

1. *Definite Numerals.*

157 Definite numerals are *Cardinal*, as, *two, three, or ordinal*, as, *second, third*; and the latter are employed as *adjectives*, as, *the second, third house*; or as *adverbs*, as *secondly, thirdly*.

The German numerals are :

<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>	
	<i>Adjective.</i>	<i>Adverbial.</i>
1 ein *) one,	der erste the first,	erstens firstly,
2 zwei two,	der zweite **) the second,	zweitens secondly,
3 drei three,	der dritte the third,	drittens thirdly,
4 vier four,	der vierte the fourth,	viertens fourthly
5 fünf etc.	der fünfte etc.	etc.
6 sechs,	„ sechste,	
7 sieben,	„ siebte,	
8 acht,	„ achte,	
9 neun,	„ neunte,	
10 zehn,	„ zehnte,	
11 elf,	„ elfte,	
12 zwölf,	„ zwölfte,	
13 dreizehn,	„ dreizehnte,	
14 vierzehn,	„ vierzehnte,	
15 fünfzehn,	„ fünfzehnte,	
16 sechszehn,	„ sechszehnte,	
17 siebzehn,	„ siebzehnte,	
18 achtzehn,	„ achtzehnte,	
19 neunzehn,	„ neunzehnte,	
20 zwanzig,	„ zwanzigste,	

*) In order to distinguish the numeral, *Ein*, from the indefinite article *ein*, the former is generally written with an initial capital.

**) In ancient German *der andere*, the other, was used instead of *der zweite*, which practise is retained in *anderthalb*; see §. 159, 5.

<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
21 einundzwanzig etc.	der einundzwanzigste etc.
30 dreißig,	„ dreißigste,
40 vierzig,	„ vierzigste,
50 fünfzig,	„ fünfzigste,
60 sechzig,	„ sechzigste,
70 siebzig,	„ siebzigste,
80 achtzig,	„ achtzigste,
90 neunzig,	„ neunzigste,
100 hundert,	„ hundertste,
101 hundert ein etc.	„ hunderterste etc.
125 hundertfünfund- zwanzig etc.	„ hundertfünfundzwanzigste etc.
200 zweihundert,	„ zweihundertste,
300 dreihundert etc.	„ dreihundertste etc.
1000 tausend,	„ tausendste,
2000 zweitausend,	„ zweitausendste,
3000 dreitausend,	„ dreitausendste,
1000000 Million,	„ millionste.

Cardinal numbers are not declined, except *ein*, 158 which is declined like the indefinite article (§. 131). *Zwei**) and *drei* are declined in the genitive (*zweier*, *dreier*) and dative (*zweien*, *dreien*) cases, when these cases are not marked by other means; e. g. *die Zusammenkunft zweier Freunde*, the meeting of two friends; *ich habe es dreien gesagt*, I have said it to three persons; but we say: *die Zusammenkunft der zwei Freunde*, the meeting of the two friends; *ich habe es den drei Brüdern gesagt*, I have said it to the three brothers. In the same way the cardinal numbers from 4 to 12 assume the termination *en* in the dative case, when they are used substantively; e. g. *ich habe es fünfzen gesagt*, I have said it to five persons; *er fährt mit sechsen*, he goes in a coach and six.

*) In ancient German the gender was distinguished in *zwei* by the forms: masc. *zween*, fem. *zwo*, neut. *zwei*: this practise is now obsolete.

The numbers *hundert* and *tausend*, when used substantively, are of the neuter gender, and then declined according to §. 111; *Million* is always employed as a substantive of the feminine gender with an article;

e. g. ein Hundert, ein Tausend, eine Million,
einige Hunderte, einige Tausende, einige Millionen,
some hundreds, some thousands, some millions.

Ordinal numbers are declined like adjectives;

e. g. N. der erste, mein zweiter, das dritte,
G. des ersten, meines zweiten, des dritten,
D. dem ersten, etc. etc.
A. den ersten.

159 The following numerals are formed by composition:

1. *Variative.*

einerlei of one kind *),
zweierlei of two kinds,
dreierlei of three kinds,
viererlei of four kinds etc.
vielerlei of many different sorts,
mancherlei of several sorts,

These are not declined.

2. *Multiplicative.*

einfach simple,
zweifach twofold,
dreifach threefold,
vierfach fourfold etc.
vielfach manifold,
mannigfach manifold,

These are declined like adjectives.

3. *Re-iterative.*

einmal once,
zweimal twice,
dreimal three times,
viermal four times etc.
vielmal many times,
mannigmal sometimes,

These are not declined.

4. *Fractional.*

$\frac{1}{2}$ ein halb,
 $\frac{1}{3}$ ein drittel,
 $\frac{1}{4}$ ein viertel,
 $\frac{1}{5}$ ein fünftel,
 $\frac{5}{6}$ fünf sechstel etc.

These are neuter substantives, except *halb* which is an adjective.

*) *Einerlei* signifies *the same* in: *es ist einerlei*, it is the same, it is indifferent.

5. *Dimidiative.*

1 ¹ / ₂ anderthalb literally,	(one and) half of the second (§. 157. note),
2 ¹ / ₂ drittehalb „	(two and) half of the third,
3 ¹ / ₂ viertehalb etc.	three and half of the fourth etc.

These are not declined.

2. *Indefinite numerals.*

The following words are of the description of indefinite numerals: 160

kein no,	viel many, much,
jeder*) every,	wenig few, little,
manch=e some,	mehr more,
einig=e*) some,	weniger less,
alle all,	ganß whole,
mehrer=e several,	beid=e both.
ander other,	

Indefinite numerals are considered as adjectives and are inflected accordingly; except mehr and weniger, which are indeclinable. They may, however, like other adjectives, be used as substantives: Keiner *no one*, Jeder *every one*, Einige *some ones* etc.; e. g. Jeder lobt sein Vaterland, every one praises his own country; Alle sind geschäftig, Jeder auf seine Weise, all are busy, each in his own way; Viele sind berufen, aber Wenige sind auserwählt, many are called, but few chosen.

The use of indefinite numerals is in many cases different from the English. Particular attention is therefore to be paid to the following remarks.

All, all, expresses both *number*, as in: alle Menschen, all men; in allen Dingen, in all things; an allen Orten, in all places; alle meine Freunde, all my friends:

*) Jeglich=er and jedwed=er *every*, and: etliche and etwelche *some*, are employed in the same manner as jeder and einige, but are less usual.

and *quantity*. In the latter case it is in the singular number, and is not declined, when followed by a pronoun; e. g. all mein Geld, all my money; all dieser Wein, all this wine; in aller Eile, in all (= in *the greatest*) haste. The definite article is never placed after all, as in English: alle Welt, *all the* world; alles Geld, *all the* money; aller Wein, *all the* wine.

All is never employed in the signification of *whole*; the Engl. *all*, when it denotes *the whole*, it is translated by ganz, which is not declined before neuter names of countries and towns; e. g. all the year, das ganze Jahr; all the day, den ganzen Tag; in all Venice, in ganz Venedig. Ganz England hütet meines Kerkers Thore. (Sch.) Ganz Frankreich bewaffnet sich.

Alles (neuter sing.) is also applied to *persons*, e. g. Alles freuet sich, all (every body) is happy. Mir folgt der Fluch und Alles fliehet mich. (Sch.) Du liebst, wo Alles liebt. (Sch.)

All of us, all of them etc. is in German wir alle, sie alle etc.

162 Jed=er, e, es, every, each*). Jeder Augenblick ist theuer (G.), every moment is precious; Jeder braucht seine Gaben, und Jeder ist doch nur auf eigne Weise glücklich (G.), every one uses his gifts, and yet is happy only in his own particular way; es sind zwei Brüder, und Jeder hat ein besonderes Geschäft, they are two brothers, and each of them has a separate business.

Every is translated by all, when not so much the single persons or things as *generality* is to be expressed; e. g. every year, alle Jahre; every day, alle Tage; his house is open to every body, sein Haus ist Allen offen; he knows every thing, er weiß Alles; — every twenty paces, alle zwanzig Schritt (sing. §. 126); every four hours, alle vier Stunden.

Manch=e, *some*, expresses an indefinite number,

*) Each other einander; see §. 145.

and is used also in the singular number (E. *many a*). *Einige*, *a few*, denotes a smaller number, which is more particularly pointed out by *wenig few*; e. g. er hat manche Freunde, und einige haben ihm Beweise ihrer Freundschaft gegeben, he has a number of friends and some of them have given him proofs of their attachment; er hat wenige Freunde, he has few friends; dem Fleiß und Geschick sind wenig Dinge unmöglich, few things are impossible to diligence and skill. Das macht mir manche schlaflose Nacht, that causes me *many a* sleepless night; manches große Übel, *many a* great evil; manches Mal, *many a* time.

Einig is used in the singular number before abstract substantives, and names of materials to denote quantity, e. g. einige Hoffnung; some hope; einiges Holz, some wood; einigermaßen, in some measure; einige Zeit, some time. Instead of *einig*, *etwas* (undeclined) is frequently employed in this case; e. g. etwas Zeit, etwas Geld, etwas Verstand.

Einige and *etwas* always express number or quantity; when *some* merely expresses an indefinite single thing, it is to be translated by *irgend*; e. g. some one of his friends, irgend einer seiner Freunde; Mr. Burchell was always fond of seeing some innocent amusement going forward, Herr B. sah gern irgend einen unschuldigen Scherz vor sich gehen.

Viel and *wenig* express, the former a large, and the latter a small number or quantity, like the English *many—few*, and *much—little*. When they refer to *quantity*, they are not declined; e. g. viel Wasser und wenig Wein, much water and little wine; da war wenig Ehre zu erwerben (Sch.), there was little honour to be gained; mit wenig Wiß und viel Behagen. (G.)

Applied to a number, on the contrary, they are always declined, if used as substantives, e. g. Vieles wünscht sich der Mensch (G.), man wishes for many things; es können sich nur Wenige regieren (Sch.), few people only are able to govern themselves: but if used ad-

jectively, they are employed either with or without inflexion; e. g. er hat viele Freunde, he has many friends; Maria hat noch viel verborgne Freunde (Sch.), Mary still has many secret friends; es braucht nicht viel Worte (Sch.) or vieler Worte, there is no need of many words.

OBSERVATION. — Ein wenig, like *a little*, denotes a small quantity, without opposition to a greater one, e. g. ein wenig Wein, a little wine; ein wenig Salz, a little salt.

Mehr, *more* (= *a greater number or amount*), and weniger, *less, fewer*, are not declined; e. g. es gibt hier mehr Reiche, aber auch mehr Arme als anderswo, there exists a greater number of rich but at the same time a greater number of poor here than elsewhere; es gibt hier weniger Ärzte, aber auch weniger Kranke als anderswo, there are fewer physicians, but also fewer patients here than elsewhere.

Mehrere, like the French *plusieurs*, has not the signification of the comparative degree, but answers to the English *several*; e. g. ich habe mehrere Briefe erhalten, I have received several letters.

OBSERVATION. — *More*, when it means *besides*, is translated by noch; e. g. he gave him five pieces more, er gab ihm noch fünf Stück; when she came to the house, three more children came out to meet her, — noch drei Kinder.

As much more is noch einmal so viel.

164 Beide, *both*, never admits the article nor any pronoun after it; e. g. both the poets, beide (or die beiden) Dichter; both my brothers, meine beiden Brüder; both these points, diese beiden Punkte.

Beide never takes the *partitive* genitive after it; the word which stands in the genitive case in English must agree with beide in German, and is placed before it; e. g. both of us, wir beide; with both of us, mit uns beiden; both of these books, diese Bücher beide.

When such expressions stand in the place of the subject, the word beide generally takes the place of

the object of co-existence (§. 320); e. g. both of them were in church to-day, sie sind heute beide in der Kirche gewesen.

Both, in expressions, like: *both* silver and gold, *both* he and his father, is not translated by *beide*, but by conjunctions: sowol Silber als Gold; er sowol als sein Vater.

Either and *neither* *) are translated by *einer von beiden*, *keiner von beiden*; the word *beide* however is only added, when the sentence would be otherwise unintelligible; *either* of them, *einer von ihnen*; *either way*, *einer von den Wegen* **); on *neither side*, *auf keiner Seite*; *not either* is *keiner von beiden*; e. g. I do not know either of them, ich kenne keinen von beiden.

Der Andere, *other*, was used in ancient German as 165 an ordinal number (*the second*), but is now only employed to express a *different* individual or kind; e. g. the other hand, *die andere Hand*; an other colour, *eine andere Farbe*; the others, *die Andern*; an other one, *ein Anderer*; among others, *unter Anderen*. But *the other day*, is in German *vor einigen Tagen*, or *neulich*. When *other* means a *second* or *third* thing of the same kind, it is translated by *noch ein*; e. g. give me another cup of tea, *geben Sie mir noch eine Tasse Thee* †).

Kein, *none*, is also used instead of *not a* or *not any*; see §. 214. When used *substantively*, it is always in the singular number; e. g. *none* of the ancient worshippers *were* now to be seen, *keiner der alten Verehrer war mehr zu sehen*; *none* of these signals *were* returned from the land, *keines dieser Signale wurde vom Lande erwiedert*. For its declension see §. 131.

*) The numerals *either*, *neither* are to be distinguished from the conjunctions *either*, *neither*; see §. 181.

***) If '*either way*' in English is *adverbially* used, e. g. '*to do any thing either way*', the German for it is *auf diese oder jene* (or *auf die eine oder die andere*) *Weise*; e. g. *it may be done either way*, *man kann es auf diese oder jene Weise verrichten*.

†) Similar to the French: '*donnez-moi encore une tasse*'.

Definite numerals are made indefinite by the adverbs *etwa*, *an*, *gegen* *about*, and *über* *above*; e. g. about five years ago, *vor etwa fünf Jahren*; I have about 20 florins, *ich habe gegen (etwa) zwanzig Gulden*; about six hundred men, *an die sechshundert Mann*; above two thousand horses, *über zweitausend Pferde**).

Remark. The numeral *Ein* (*substantively* taken) assumes in certain cases a *demonstrative* signification; e. g. *Eine Stadt ja hat uns geboren* (Sch.) (*one [= one and the same] city has indeed given birth to us*); *es sollte Meer und Land nicht Einem dienen* (*sea and land were not to serve one [= the self same] person***).

CHAPTER IX.

OF ADVERBS.

166 Adverbs are those inflexible words which *qualify a predicate*, by expressing the place, time, manner, intensity, frequency, or mood of the action.

Adverbs therefore are always, and can only be, *objects*; they have the same value as a substantive with a preposition; e. g. he acts prudently (with prudence); he lives here (in this town); he will come soon (in a few days) etc. †). This is the reason, why one lan-

*) But (in *sing. relative to horsemen*) 'above two thousand horse' in German is: *über zweitausend Reiter* (or *Mann*) *Kavallerie*.

***) (Sch.) With reference to Wallenstein.

†) The same word being frequently used in English as *Adverb*, *Preposition* and *Conjunction*, care must be taken not to confound these different significations, because they are expressed by different words in German. An adverb may easily be known by its expressing time or place etc., without any additional words, whilst a preposition is always con-

guage frequently employs an adverb for what is expressed by a substantive with a preposition in an other language; e. g. *happily* zum Glück; *abroad* in der Fremde; *home* nach Hause; *indeed* in der That; *zugleich* at the same time; *diesseits* on this side; *jenseits* on the other side; the ladies, for their part, die Damen ihrerseits; *allmählig*, by degrees; *gegenwärtig*, at present; *unterwegs* on the way etc.

I. *Adverbs of manner.*

All adjectives are employed as adverbs of manner, 167 without assuming any distinctive termination (like the English *ly*); as: er spricht schlecht, langsam, he speaks *badly, slowly*; er schreibt schön, he writes *beautifully*; er arbeitet fleißig, he works *diligently*.

These *adverbs of manner* admit of *comparison*, like adjectives. The *comparative* form is like that of adjectives. The *superlative* form is commonly connected with the preposition *an*, or *auf*, contracted with the definite article into *am* (*an dem*) and *auf's* (*auf das*). The preposition *an* is made use of, to denote the highest degree, in comparison with others; as, er schreibt am schönsten von Allen, he writes best of all; der einzelne Mann entflieht am leichtesten (G.), a single man escapes easiest; unter allen Völkerschaften haben die Griechen den Traum des Lebens am schönsten geträumt (G.) (*of all nations, the Greeks have dreamt the dream of life in the most exalted manner*). On the other hand, the preposition *auf* is employed, to denote a very high degree, without any comparison; as, er grüßt auf's freundlichste (*he salutes in the most friendly manner*); er dankt auf's höflichste (*he thanks in the most civil manner*); er verrichtet sein Geschäft auf's sorgfältigste, auf's gewissenhafteste (*he carries on his business in the most careful, most conscientious etc. manner*).

nected with a substantive, and a conjunction with a sentence. Thus in saying: I saw him *before*, the word *before* is an adverb; but in I saw him *before* dinner, it is a preposition, and in I saw him, *before* he came here, it is a conjunction.

The *absolute* superlative of the *adverb* is *identical*, with that of the *adjective*, without *inflexion*; e. g. er grüßt Sie freundlichst, he salutes you most kindly; ich danke herzlichst, I thank you with all my heart, ich war innigst gerührt, I was most deeply affected. Sometimes it takes the termination *ens*; as, ich danke besten, schönstens. Es ist eine Eigenheit dem Menschen angeboren und mit seiner Natur innigst verwebt (G.) (it is a peculiarity innate in man and most intimately entwined with his nature).

168 The following words are only employed as adverbs of manner:

so thus, so,
 wie how, as,
 ebenso in the same way,
 grade so exactly so,
 anders otherwise.
 wohl *) well,
 vergebens in vain,
 umsonst in vain, gratis,
 blindlings blindly,
 eilends in haste,
 zusehends visibly,
 folgendermaßen in the following way,
 glücklicherweise fortunately,
 gern willingly.

The adverb *gern* is peculiar to the German language, which makes a very *extensive* use of it; it is generally supplied in English by the verb *to like*; e. g. er trinkt gern Wein, he likes (to drink) wine; er tanzt gern, he likes to dance; wer gern lügt, der stiehlt gern, he who is given to lie, will also steal. The comparative of *gern* is *lieber*, the superlative *am liebsten*;

*) The adverb *wohl* is applied to that alone which *pleases our feelings*; e. g. wohlthätig charitable, wohlwollen to wish well, wohl aussehen to look well, and differs in this respect from *gut*, which applies to that which is *good in itself*; e. g. gut handeln to act well, gut schreiben to write well.

e. g. *ich esse lieber Fleisch als Fisch* I like meat better than fish; *am liebsten bin ich zu Hause*, I like best being at home.

II. *Adverbs of locality.*

Direction of motion in general is expressed by 169

her (from a place to the speaker) — and

hin (from the speaker to a place).

The adverbs *her* and *hin* are not generally expressed by any words in English; they are employed to denote the particular direction of an action with reference to the speaker, and are therefore frequently compounded with other adverbs; as, *herein*, *hinein*, *heraus*, *hinaus*. A man, being *in* a room, will say: *komm herein*, come in; *gehe hinaus*, go out; but a man being outside will say: *gehe hinein*, *komm heraus* &c.

Besides *her* and *hin*, the following adverbs are most commonly used:

hier here,
hierher hither,
oben above,
herauf up here,
hinauf up there,
etc.

da und *dort* there,
da or *dorthin* thither,
unten below,
herunter down here,
hinunter down there,
etc.

innen within,
hinein, *herein* in,
vorn before,
hüben on this side,
rechts on the right,
aufwärts upwards,
vorwärts forwards,
ostwärts eastward etc.
diesseits on this side,
fort, *weg* forth, away,
ringß around,
wo where,

außen, *draußen* out of doors,
hinaus, *heraus* out,
hinten behind,
drüben on the other side,
links on the left hand,
abwärts downwards,
rückwärts backwards,
seitwärts sideways,
jenseits on that side,
zurück back,
zusammen together,
wohin whither,
woher whence,

irgendwo anywhere,	nirgendwo nowhere,
überall every where,	nirgendſ nowhere,
	etc.

Some examples from authors: Schauet hinab, wie herrlich liegen die ſchönen Gebiete nicht da (G.), look down, how magnificently do [not] the beautiful territories display themselves*); ich lief wie ein Wiesel, dahin und dorthin, Treppen hinauf und hinab (G.), I was running, like a weasel, hither and thither, up stairs and downstairs); vorwärts mußt Du, denn rückwärts kannſt Du nun nicht mehr (Sch.) (*forward thou must speed on, since to withdraw t's now too late***).

III. Adverbs of time.

170 The following adverbs express time:

da, dann then,	wann when?
damals at that time,	ehemals formerly,
	vormalſ „
einſt once,	ſonſt „
noch still,	ſchon, bereits already,
jüngſt lately,	längſt long ago,
neulich lately, the other day,	fürzlich not long ago,
vorgeſtern the day before,	morgens in the morning,
yesterday,	mittags at noon,
geſtern yesterday,	vormittags in the forenoon,
heute to-day,	nachmittags „ „ afternoon,
morgen to-morrow,	abends „ „ evening,
übermorgen the day after	nachts „ „ night,
to-morrow,	ſogleich immediately,
nächſtenſ in a few day,	bald soon,
jezt, nun now,	eben just now,
je, jemals ever,	nie, niemals never,
immer always,	nimmer never,
vorher before,	nachher afterwards,

*) Lit. liegen — da (= *are lying there* [i. e. *at your feet, or, below*]).

**) Lit. '*for backward thou can'st no longer now*'.

zuerst first,	zuletzt lastly, endlich at last,
bisher hitherto,	seitdem since,
lange for a long time,	nicht mehr no longer,
manchmal sometimes,	mitunter now and then,
zuweilen „	oft often,
indessen } meanwhile,	meistens mostly,
inzwischen }	zugleich at the same time,
unterdessen }	spätestens at the latest.
frühestens at the earliest,	

Der Mensch verlangt erst das Neue, suchet das Nützliche dann mit unermüdllichem Fleiße, endlich begehrt er das Gute, das ihn erhebet und werth macht (G.) (*man first will long for what is new, he then will search for what is useful with indefatigable zeal, at length he will desire what's good, which elevates him and ennobles him*).

IV. Adverbs of causality.

The following adverbs express causality:

171

darum therefore,	warum why,
deßwegen therefore,	weßwegen wherefore,
deßwegen ungeachtet notwithstanding,	folglich accordingly,
nichtsdestoweniger nevertheless,	also „

V. Adverbs of intensity.

The following adverbs express intensity:

172

so — als as — as,	sehr very, much *),
fast nearly,	kaum scarcely,
beinahe nearly,	ganz, gar quite,
höchstens at the most,	wenigstens at least,
genug enough,	höchst extremely,
größtentheils for the greatest part,	meistentheils for the most part,
sogar even,	nur only.

*) *Much* ought not to be translated by *viel*, when it denotes the intensity of a predicate, as in: I was much pleased, ich war sehr (not viel) erfreut. *Viel* is used as adverb of intensity before adjectives in the comparative degree; e. g. viel besser, much better; viel größer, much greater.

Wenn er fallen muß, so können wir den Preis so gut verdienen, als ein Anderer (Sch.) (*if he is doomed to fall, we may receive the hire as well as any person else*).

VI. Adverbs of frequency.

173 The following adverbs express frequency:

einmal once,	zweimal twice etc. §. 159.
oft often,	selten seldom,
zuweilen, manchmal some- times,	abermals } once more.
mitunter now and then,	nochmals }
wieder again,	

Und der König winkt wieder (Sch.) (*and the king beckons again*); und wurden wir manchmal ein wenig munter (Sch.) (*and if at times we became rather merry*); bin ich denn abermals betrogen? (G.) (*have I been once more deceived then?*)

VII. Adverbs of modality.

174 The following adverbs express mood, i. e. the greater or less positiveness of an assertion:

ja yes,	nein no,
wirklich indeed,	nicht not,
fürwahr indeed,	keineswegs not at all,
wahrlich truly,	etwa perhaps,
doch yet, however,	wol perhaps,
zwar though,	vielleicht perhaps,
freilich indeed,	vielmehr rather,
	etc.

Examples from authors: Ja dem ist wirklich so (Sch.) (*yes this really is the fact*); fürwahr, das Glück war Eurer Kühnheit hold (Sch.) (*forsooth, good luck was propitious to your bravery*); am Oderstrome vielleicht gewann man wieder, was an der Donau schimpflich war verloren (Sch.) (*on the banks [lit. stream] of the Oder was perhaps recovered, what had disgracefully been lost near the Danube*); sie wollten ihn wol für einen vorzüglichen, aber keineswegs

für einen großen Mann gelten lassen (G.) (*you would perhaps allow him to be an excellent, but by no means a great man*).

CHAPTER X. OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions connect an object with its predicate, or 175 an attribute with its substantive, and show the relation between them. Most of the prepositions are originally expressive of relations of locality, but denote also time, manner, causality, and almost all the relations of objects or attributes.

Prepositions govern *Cases*.

As to their formation we must distinguish *Original* prepositions and *Derivative* prepositions, formed from substantives or adjectives.

I. *Original prepositions.*

All original prepositions govern either the Dative or Accusative or both cases, as follows:

Prepositions governing the

<i>Dative.</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>
aus from, out of,	durch through, by,
außer besides,	für for,
bei at, near,	gegen *) against, towards,
binnen within,	ohne without,
mit with,	um around,
nach after, according to,	wider against.
nebst together with,	
seit since,	
von from, of,	
zu to, at.	

*) The form gen instead of gegen, e. g. gen Himmel, towards heaven, is rather obsolete.

Dative and Accusative.

an at, in, on,
 auf upon, on,
 hinter behind.
 in in, into,
 neben at the side of,
 über over, above,
 unter under, among,
 vor before,
 zwischen between.

Some prepositions are contracted with the definite article into one word, viz.

an dem	into	am,	an das	into	ans,
bei dem	„	beim,	auf das	„	aufs,
in dem	„	im,	durch das	„	durchs,
von dem	„	vom,	für das	„	fürs,
zu dem	„	zum,	in das	„	ins,
zu der	„	zur,	um das	„	ums.

- 176 The prepositions an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen govern the *dative* case, when *rest in a place* is implied, and the *accusative* case, when *motion towards a place* is expressed; e. g.

*Dative case.**Accusative case.*

Das Bild hängt an der Wand, Ich hänge das Bild an die
 Wand,

the picture hangs on the wall. I hang the picture on the
 wall.

Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische, Ich lege das Buch auf den Tisch,
 the book lies on the table. I lay the book on the table.

Der Garten liegt hinter dem Hause, Ich gehe hinter das Haus,
 Hause,

the garden lies behind the house. I go behind the house.

Ich wohne in der Stadt,
 I live in the town.

Ich gehe in die Stadt,
 I go into the town.

*Dative case.**Accusative case.*

Der Baum steht neben dem
Thore,
the tree stands near the
gate.

Die Wolken stehen über den
Bergen,
the clouds are above the
hills.

Der Hund liegt unter dem
Tische,
the dog lies under the
table.

Ich stehe vor der Thür,
I stand before the door.

Ich stehe zwischen beiden,
I stand between both.

Ich pflanze den Baum neben
das Thor,
I plant the tree near the
gate.

Die Wolken ziehen über die
Berge,
the clouds pass over the
hills.

Der Hund kriecht unter den
Tisch,
the dog creeps under the
table.

Ich gehe vor die Thür,
I go before the door.

Ich stelle mich zwischen beide,
I place myself between both.

This rule, however, merely extends to objects of locality. As to all other relations, as time, causality, manner etc., particular rules will be given in the Syntax, where the use of the prepositions will be more distinctly explained.

II. *Derivative prepositions.*

Most of the following prepositions are formed by 177 simple or compound substantives, for which reason they govern the *genitive* case.

Prepositions governing the Gen. case.

statt, anstatt instead of	— halber, — halben on account of,
außerhalb without, on the outside of,	— wegen on account of,
innerhalb within, on the inside of,	um — willen for the sake of,
oberhalb above, on the upper side of,	frast by virtue of,

unterhalb below, on the un-	vermöge by virtue of,
derside of,	
diesseits on this side of,	laut according to,
jenseits on the other side of,	zufolge according to,
längs along,	vermittelt by means of,
während during,	troß in spite of,
unweit near, not far from,	ungeachtet notwithstanding.

Halber, halben, wegen, and um — willen are preceded by the substantive which they govern; e. g. Alters halber, on account of his age; der Freundschaft halben, on account of friendship; des Geldes wegen, um des Geldes willen, for the sake of money. They are contracted with the genitive of the personal pronouns into the irregular forms

meinethalben,	meinetwegen,	um meinetwillen,
deinethalben,	deinetwegen,	um deinetwillen,
seinethalben,	seinetwegen,	um seinetwillen &c.

Troß and längs are also used with the dative case; e. g. troß meinem Befehle, in spite of my command; längs dem Ufer, along the shore.

Zufolge governs the genitive, when preceding its substantive, but the dative when following it; e. g. dem Berichte zufolge and zufolge des Berichtes, according to the report.

The following derivative prepositions govern the *dative case*:

sammt together with,	gegenüber opposite to,
nächst next,	zuwider against, in opposi-
gemäß according to,	tion to.

The following adverbs sometimes govern an accusative case preceding them, and are accordingly to be considered as prepositions:

entlang along,	hinab down,
hinauf up,	hinunter down;

e. g. den Fluß entlang, along the river; den Berg hinauf, up the hill; die Treppe hinunter, down the staircase.

CHAPTER XI. OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are words by which two sentences 178 are connected into a *compound sentence* (§. 27); e. g. he arrived *and* I departed; he arrived *when* I departed*).

The two terms or clauses which constitute a *compound sentence* may be connected either by way of *subordination*, that is to say, when one of them (which is grammatically termed the *accessory* or *subordinate* clause), is dependent on the other which is called the *principal* clause; or they are connected by way of *co-ordination*, that is to say, when the two clauses, not depending upon one another, are connected into one *sentence* either by a *relation of concord* or *of opposition* (§. 28).

There are accordingly two kinds of conjunctions, viz. *Subordinative* and *Co-ordinative*.

I. *Subordinative Conjunctions.*

It will be explained in the Syntax, that there are 179 three kinds of accessory sentences, viz.

1. *Substantive accessory sentences, standing in the place of a substantive;*
2. *Adjective accessory sentences, standing in the place of an adjective;*
3. *Adverbial accessory sentences, standing in the place of an adverb.*

*) When two sentences, connected with one another, have either the same subject, or the same predicate, or another essential part common to both sentences — e. g. *he eats and he drinks; my brother drinks and my sister drinks* — the two sentences are frequently *contracted* into one sentence; e. g. *he eats and drinks, my brother and my sister drink*. In this case also the conjunction in fact connects two sentences, though it appears only to connect two words.

1. **Substantive accessory sentences** take the conjunctions *daß* *that* and *ob* *if, whether*; e. g. *ich weiß, daß er gestorben ist*, I know that he is dead; *ich weiß nicht, ob er gestorben ist*, I do not know whether he be dead.

2. **Adjective accessory sentences** take one of the relative pronouns, as is explained §§. 151, 152.

180 3. **Adverbial accessory sentences** take different conjunctions according as they express an object of locality, time, manner, causality or co-existence.

a. *Locality* is expressed by *wo* *where*, to which is added one of the adverbs *her* and *hin* (§. 169), if the predicate of the accessory sentence implies a motion from or towards a place; e. g. *er liegt noch da, wo er gestorben ist*, he still lies, where he died; *gehe wohin du willst*, or *wo du hin willst*, go wherever you like.

b. *Time* is expressed by

<i>als, da</i> when,	<i>nachdem</i> after,
<i>wann, wenn</i> when,	<i>ehe</i> before,
<i>indess, indessen</i> whilst,	<i>seit</i> since,
<i>während</i> during,	<i>bis</i> till.

Als and *da* are employed for past time, *wenn* and *wann* for present and future time; e. g. *als er kam, ging ich fort*, when he came, I went away; *ich gehe fort, wenn er kömmt*, I shall go away, when he comes.

c. *Manner* is expressed by

<i>wie</i> as,	<i>als</i> as,
<i>als ob</i> as if,	<i>so daß</i> so as to.

Wie is employed, when a *manner*, properly speaking, is to be expressed; *als*, on the other hand, when the *intensity* of the predicate is to be pointed out; e. g. *er handelt nicht, wie er spricht*, he does not act as he speaks; but *er ist nicht so gut, als er ausseht*, he is not so good as he seems to be.

d. *Causality* is expressed by

weil because,	obgleich	although,
da since,	obſchon	„
wenn if,	obwol	„
wofern if,	wenn gleich	„
falls in case,	wenn ſchon	„
damit that,	wenn auch	„
daß that,		

e. *Co-existence* is expressed by *indem*, which conjunction is peculiar to the German language, and is used instead of the English *gerund*; e. g. *indem er dies ſagte, ging er fort*, having said this, he went away.

The *gerund* may also be used adverbially, as in the following sentence: *er iſt lachend, ſingend, weinend u. hinausgegangen*, he went out laughing, singing, weeping etc.

II. *Co-ordinate conjunctions.*

The co-ordinative conjunctions are conjunctions 181 *proper*, if they express merely the relation of one sentence to the other; e. g. *und* and, *auch* also, *aber*, *allein*, *ſondern* but, *nämlich* namely, *entweder* either, *oder* or, *denn* for, *alſo* consequently. Many co-ordinative conjunctions, on the other hand, must be considered at the same time as adverbs, denoting, in reference to the predicate, either a relation of place or time; e. g. *außerdem* besides, *denn* then, *ferner* further; — or a relation of causality; e. g. *daher* thence, *deßwegen*, *darum* therefore, *dennach*, *ſomit*, *mithin* accordingly; — or a relation of mood; e. g. *weder* neither, *noch* nor, *gleichwol*, *zwar* however, *doch*, *dennoch* nevertheless. Conjunctions of this description we call *conjunctive adverbs*.

Conjunctions *proper* generally stand at the head of the sentence, with the exception of *aber*, *auch*, and *alſo*, which may be placed either at the head or in the middle of the sentence. Conjunctive adverbs, on the other hand, are in respect of their position treated like other adverbs.

The co-ordinative conjunctions are *Copulative*, *Adversative*, or *Causal*. In general, copulative conjunctions, e. g. *und and*, serve to enlarge or complete a thought by adding another sentence; adversative conjunctions, e. g. *aber but*, on the other hand, limit the thought expressed in an antecedent sentence: and causal conjunctions, e. g. *denn for*, serve to express a relation of causality.

1. *Copulative conjunctions.*

182 The following conjunctions are used in German in the same way as the corresponding conjunctions are in English:

<i>und and</i> ,	<i>nicht nur — sondern auch not only — but also</i> ,
<i>auch also</i> ,	<i>nicht allein — sondern auch not only — but also</i> ,
<i>zudem moreover</i> ,	<i>nicht bloß — sondern auch not only — but also</i> ,
<i>außerdem besides</i> ,	<i>sowol — als as well — as</i> ,
<i>überdies besides</i> ,	<i>weder — noch neither — nor</i> ,
<i>sowol — als as well — as</i> ,	<i>theils — theils on the one hand — on the other hand</i> ,
<i>weder — noch neither — nor</i> ,	<i>erstens, zweitens &c. §. 137. firstly, secondly,</i>
<i>erstens, zweitens &c. §. 137.</i>	<i>erstlich firstly,</i>
<i>dann secondly</i> ,	<i>ferner further.</i>
<i>endlich finally</i> ,	

2. *Causal conjunctions.*

The following conjunctions express a relation of causality:

<i>denn for</i> ,	<i>darum therefore</i> ,
<i>also accordingly</i> ,	<i>daher „</i>
<i>mithin „</i>	<i>deßwegen „</i>
<i>demnach „</i>	<i>deßhalb „</i>
<i>folglich consequently</i> ,	

3. *Adversative conjunctions.*

The following conjunctions denote the second sentence to be in opposition to the first:

aber but,	nicht — sondern not — but,
allein but,	nicht — vielmehr not — but rather,
hingegen on the contrary,	entweder — oder either — or,
dagegen „ „ „	sonst else,
doch still, however,	gleichwol however,
jedoch „ „	dennoch nevertheless,
indessen „ „	dessenungeachtet nothwith- standing.

Concession implied in the *statement* contained in the *preceding clause* of a *compound sentence* is expressed by the *concessive conjunctions*: zwar it is true, freilich indeed, wol no doubt.

PART II.
SYNTAX.

183 Syntax treats of the *connexion* and *arrangement of words* in sentences. It displays the manner in which the different relations, existing between persons and things and their actions or qualities etc., are to be expressed by the rule of *inflections* of substantives, verbs etc., or by *relational words* (prepositions, conjunctions etc.), which have been explained in the preceding part. The whole subject of Syntax is comprised under the following heads:

- Section I. Predicative combination.**
„ **II. Attributive combination.**
„ **III. Objective combination.**
„ **IV. Compound sentence.**
-

S E C T I O N I.
SYNTAX OF THE PREDICATIVE
COMBINATION.

C H A P T E R I.
OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE, AND THEIR
FORMS.

A sentence is formed by the combination of a *Sub-* 184
ject and *Predicate* (§. 22). The *subject* (or, to speak
more *distinctly*, the *grammatical* subject) constitutes a
person or a *thing* that may have come under our *consi-*
deration.

The *predicate* denotes an *action* or *state of being*
relative to the *subject* and which *action* or *state of being*
is either *affirmed* or *denied* as proceeding from or be-
longing to, or being *inherent in* the subject.

The subject of a simple sentence is expressed by a
substantive, or *pronoun*; e. g. der Mensch denkt, or er
denkt *).

The predicate is expressed by a *verb*, or by an
adjective or *substantive with the copula to be*; e. g. der
Mensch lebt; er ist sterblich; ich bin ein Mensch.

The predicate invariably agrees with its subject in
Person and *Number*. The predicative verb, therefore,
or the auxiliary verb is *inflected* by *Person* and *Number*;
the *Time* of the action and the *Mood* of assertion (§. 34)
are denoted by inflecting the verb in its *tenses* and
moods (§. 66).

*) For a more *copious* number of *examples* and *exercises*
from English into German the pupil is referred to '*Arnold*
& *Früdersdorff's Second German Book*' containing the *Syntax*
and *Etymological vocabulary*.

When the predicate is expressed by an *adjective* or *substantive* in connexion with the auxiliary verb *to be*, or by one of the compound forms of conjugation, the *auxiliary verb* taking the inflections of *person* and *number*, is termed *Copula* (§. 42).

A sentence is either a *principal*, or an *accessory sentence* (§. 27).

A *principal* sentence may be:

- a. *asserting*,
- b. *interrogative*,
- c. *imperative* (§. 33).

Construction.

185 The arrangement or *order of words* observed in the *grammatical construction of a sentence* in German differs in many cases materially from that in *English*, in as much as that construction not only depends on the grammatical signification of the words, expressing either the Subject or Predicate, or an Attribute or Object; but on the kind of sentence itself, as being either *principal* or *accessory* (§. 27). Besides, *inverted* constructions are made use of to a greater extent in German than in English, contributing considerably to the emphasis of diction.

The predicate is expressed either by a simple verb or by a *compound* form; e. g. he *will come*; or in separable compound verbs; e. g. he *goes away*, he *will go away*; or the predicate is expressed by an adjective or substantive with the verb *to be*; e. g. he *is rich*, he *is a miser* etc.

In order to construct a sentence in German, it is necessary to distinguish that part of the predicate which is inflected by person and number, and those parts which are *not* inflected; e. g.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Verb inflected.</i>	<i>Predicate not inflected.</i>
The boy	speaks	
The boys	speak	
The boy	has	spoken
The boys	have	spoken
" "	can	speak
The child	is	ill
" "	has	been ill
" "	must	be punished
" "	gets	up
" "	will	get up
" "	will	have got up.

When that part of the predicate which is not inflected, consists of two or three words, these words must be arranged in an order precisely the reverse of the English, that word which has the accent being first, thus:

<i>been ill</i>	krank gewesen
<i>be punished</i>	bestraft werden
<i>get up</i>	auf stehen
<i>have got up</i>	auf gestanden sein.

There are three forms of construction in German, 187
viz.

1. *that of the principal sentence*

a. *direct,*

b. *inverted;*

2. *that of the accessory sentence.*

Construction is **direct**, when the subject stands first.

It is **inverted**, when another part of the sentence is placed before the subject;

e. g. *Direct:* You saw my father yesterday.

Inverted: Did you see my father yesterday?

or: Yesterday you saw my father.

The subject, inflected verb, and predicate not inflected are arranged in the following manner:

1. DIRECT PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Predicate</i>
	<i>inflected.</i>	<i>not inflected.</i>

2. INVERTED PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Predicate</i>
<i>inflected.</i>		<i>not inflected.</i>

3. ACCESSORY SENTENCE.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Predicate</i>	<i>Verb</i>
	<i>not inflected.</i>	<i>inflected.</i>

Objects are placed before the predicate not inflected, or if there is none, before the place which it would occupy.

The following examples will serve to illustrate the preceding rules.

1. DIRECT PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Predicate</i>
	<i>inflected.</i>		<i>not inflected.</i>
Der Knabe	spricht	englisch	
" "	hat	englisch	gesprochen
" "	kann	englisch	sprechen
" "	steht	früh	auf
" "	ist	früh	aufgestanden
" "	ist	gefährlich	krank
" "	ist	gefährlich	krank gewesen.

2. INVERTED PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

<i>Inverted</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Predicate</i>
<i>part.</i>	<i>inflected.</i>			<i>not inflected.</i>
Gewiß	spricht	der Knabe	englisch	
"	hat	" "	"	gesprochen
"	kann	" "	"	sprechen
Heute	steht	" "	früh	auf
"	ist	" "	"	aufgestanden
"	ist	" "	gefährlich	krank
Gestern	ist	" "	"	krank gewesen.

3. ACCESSORY SENTENCE.

<i>Conjunction.</i>	<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Pred.</i> <i>not inflected.</i>	<i>Verb</i> <i>inflected.</i>
wenn	der Knabe	englisch		spricht
"	" "	"	gesprochen	hat
"	" "	"	sprechen	kann
daß	" "	früh	auf	steht
"	" "	"	"	gestanden ist
"	" "	gefährlich	krank	ist
"	" "	"	"	gewesen ist.

E x e r c i s e .

Arrange the following sentences according to the rules of German construction: Money will do no good, till it is spread. A wise man will desire no more than what he may get justly. Without a friend the world is a wilderness. When once you profess yourself a friend, you should endeavour to be always such. By the faults of others, wise men correct their own. When our vices leave us, we flatter ourselves that we leave them. A friend cannot be known in prosperity: and an enemy cannot be hidden in adversity. Men are sometimes accused of pride, because their accusers would be proud themselves, if they were in their places.

Inversion of the principal sentence.

The construction of a principal sentence is always 188 inverted, when the subject does not take the first place. This takes place in the following cases:

1. *Interrogative and imperative sentences* are always inverted (§§. 213, 231).

2. *All adverbs and conjunctions* beginning a sentence, cause its construction to be inverted; e. g. *Gestern war das Kind krank, heute ist es gesund; und doch darf es nicht ausgehen. Hier wohnt mein Bruder; wahrscheinlich wird er zu Hause sein.* Except the conjunctions:

und and,	aber but,
oder or,	allein but,
denn for,	sondern but,

which do *not* affect the order of the *subsequent* member or clause of a *compound* sentence.

3. All *objective accessory sentences* (see §§. 27), preceding the *principal* member of the sentence, cause its construction to be inverted; e. g. Wo euer Schatz ist, da ist euer Herz. Wenn die Noth am größten ist, ist Gott am nächsten. Was er mir genommen, kann keine Krone mir ersetzen (Sch.).

189 4. If any part of the sentence, *predicate*, *object* or *subject*, is to be *pointed out emphatically*, the construction is inverted. For this purpose the predicate or object is placed at the beginning of the sentence; e. g. Ernst ist das Leben, heiter ist die Kunst. Nur von Edlem kann Edles stammen. Reich ist er nicht gewesen. Maria Stuart hat kein Glücklicher beschützt (Sch.). An die Thüren will ich schleichen, still und sittsam will ich stehn (G.). Für die Freiheit ist sein Blut geflossen. Von dem Kaiser nicht erhielten wir den Wallenstein zum Feldherrn; vom Wallenstein erhielten wir den Kaiser erst zum Herrn (Sch.).

190 When the *subject* is to be pointed out emphatically, it is usually placed after the verb inflected, and even after those objects which are less important; and if its proper place at the beginning of the sentence is not taken by a conjunction, adverb or any other object or accessory sentence, it may be occupied by the pronoun *es it*; e. g. Gestern kam plötzlich ein Gewitter, or *es* kam gestern plötzlich ein Gewitter, a thunderstorm suddenly came on yesterday. Dieses Jahr wird wahrscheinlich ein Komet am Himmel erscheinen, or *es* wird dieses Jahr wahrscheinlich ein Komet am Himmel erscheinen, a comet will probably appear this year. Es sind heute viele Briefe angekommen. Es heult der Sturm, es braust das Meer. Es zogen drei Bursche wol über den Rhein (Uhl.). Es läuft ihnen alles Volk nach (G.). Es wanken ganze Re-

gimenter (Sch.). Es dringen Blüten aus jedem Zweig, und tausend Stimmen aus dem Gesträuch (G.).

The same transposition of the subject and object is employed in *accessory* sentences also, in order to make the subject more emphatic; e. g. Weil gestern plötzlich ein Gewitter kam, gingen wir nach Hause, we went home, because a thunderstorm suddenly came on yesterday. Wenn in diesem Jahr ein Komet am Himmel erscheint &c. Wenn im Kampf die Muthigsten verzagen (Sch.). Mir ist sichere Kunde gekommen, daß zwischen diesen stolzen Lords und meinem Vetter von Burgund nicht Alles mehr so steht, wie sonst (Sch.).

The transposition of the subject always takes place in German, when existence or presence is asserted of the subject; e. g. es war einmal ein Mann, there was once a man. Es ist jetzt Friede. Es ist dort große Hungersnoth. Es ist eine schöne Mondnacht (Sch.). Es sind bedenkliche Zeiten (G.). Es war ein König in Thule (G.).

The same construction is generally employed in German as in English, whenever the subject is not expressed by a substantive, but by *an accessory sentence*, or by a *verb in the supine* (infinitive with the prep. zu); e. g. es ist wahr, daß ich das gethan habe, it is true, that I have done it; es ist schwer, das zu thun, it is difficult to do that; es ist angenehm, im Frühling spazieren zu gehen, walking in spring is pleasant.

The following idiomatic expressions deserve notice:

es freut mich, or es macht mir Freude, Sie zu sehen	It gives me pleasure to see you,
es thut mir leid, das zu hören	I am sorry to hear this,
es macht mir Schmerz, das zu hören	It gives me pain to hear this,
es reuet mich, das gethan zu haben, or daß ich das ge- than habe	I repent having done this,
es wundert mich, das zu hören or daß ich &c.	I am astonished to hear this,

es beliebt mir, daß zu thun	I have pleasure in doing this,
es gefällt mir, „ „ „	„ „ „ „ „
es ist mir gefällig, daß zu thun	„ „ „ „ „
es betrübt mich, daß zu hören	I am sorry to hear this,
es schmerzt mich, „ „ „	It gives me pain to hear this,
es ärgert mich, „ „ „	It vexes me „ „ „
es heißt, daß zc.	It is said, that etc.,
es scheint, daß zc.	It seems etc.,
es ziemt sich, daß zc.	It is due, becoming etc.,
es versteht sich von selbst zc.	It is self evident etc.,
es hilft wenig or nichts zc.	It is of little or no use,
es nützt „ „ „	„ „ „ „ „ „ „

- 191 Expressions, such as, *it was here, it was to-day, it was only just now* that he said so etc., deviate from the German idiom. The emphasis expressed by such forms in English, is rendered in German by the inverted construction, according to §. 189; hier, noch heute, erst eben hat er es gesagt; e. g. It is to this part of the building, that my story refers; auf diesen Theil des Gebäudes bezieht sich meine Geschichte. It was not until about that period, that the author obtained an account of it, erst um diese Zeit bekam der Verfasser einen Bericht darüber. It was not long afterwards, when he beheld two persons, nicht lange nachher bemerkte er zwei Personen.

As the rule of German construction, in inverted sentences, requires the verb to be placed immediately after that part of the sentence which takes the first place, it is evident that there cannot be two objects preceding the verb; e. g. *last winter in England* there was severe cold, letzten Winter war es in England sehr kalt, or in England war es letzten Winter sehr kalt.

In poetry, constructions deviating from the above are sometimes used, in order to give emphasis to the expression; e. g. der Knecht hat erstochen den edlen Herrn (Uhl.). Von der Stirne heiß rinnen muß der Schweiß (Sch.). Der Knabe schlief ein am grünen Gestade (Sch.).

Forms of the subject.

The subject is always in the nominative case. It 192 is expressed

- a. *by a substantive*;
- b. *by a substantive adjective* (§. 127);
- c. *by a substantive pronoun* (§. 137);
- d. *by a substantive accessory sentence* (§. 327):

e. g. Frau Bertha saß in der Felsenkluft, sie klagt' ihr bittres Loos (Uhl.). Nicht nach gewohnter Sitte erzog man dieses Kind; und als es kam zu Jahren, ward es die schönste Frau (Uhl.). Wie die Alten sungen, so zwitschern die Jungen (Proverb). Das Neue dringt heran mit Macht, das Alte, das Würd'ge scheidet; andre Zeiten kommen (Sch.). Wer bescheiden ist, muß dulden, und wer frech ist, der muß leiden (G.). Was wir in Gesellschaft singen, wird von Herz zu Herzen dringen (G.).

In imperative sentences, when a person is addressed in the second person, the subject (du *thou*, ihr *you*) is omitted. But when, as is usually done (§. 139), a person is addressed in the third person plural, the subject (Sie *you*) is expressed; e. g. sage mir, sagen Sie mir, tell me; komm her, kommen Sie her, come here.

The *substantive pronoun* agrees in gender and number 193 with the substantive it represents. When, however, this substantive is a diminutive (in *chen* or *lein* §. 54) of a name of a person, the pronoun generally takes the natural gender of that person; e. g. Als mich das Mädchen erblickt, so trat sie den Pferden näher (G.). Was gibt's? das Fräulein! Sie will sterben (Sch.). Ein Weiblein, grau vor Jahren, dort an dem Rocken spann; sie hatte wol nichts erfahren vom strengen Spindelbann (Uhl.).

The pronouns: *es it*, *das that*, *dies this*, *was what*, and the numeral *Alleß all*, when used in an indefinite way, are in the neuter singular; e. g. Das ist deine Tochter (Sch.), *that* is your daughter. Und das sind meine

Richter (Sch.), and *these* are my judges. Es sind nicht eben schlechte Männer (Sch.), *they* are no bad men. Was sich liebt, das neckt sich (Proverb), those who love each other, quarrel with each other. Alles rennet, rettet, flüchtet (Sch.); all run, save themselves, fly. Es waren bloß leere Gerüchte, *they* were merely loose reports.

Predicate.

- 194 The verb, as in English, agrees with the subject of the sentence in person and number. When in a contracted sentence (§. 28) the same predicate refers to two or more subjects, the verb stands in the plural number; e. g. Hitze und Kälte sind schädlich, heat and cold are hurtful. Mir rosten in der Halle Helm und Schild (Sch.). Schönheit und Jugend traten in ihre vollen Rechte wieder ein (Sch.). The singular number, however, is also employed in German, especially when two or more subjects may be conceived as constituting one general notion; e. g. Hopfen und Malz ist an ihm verloren, hops and malt (all labour) are lost on him; hier steht Salz und Pfeffer, here stand salt and pepper. Berath und Argwohn lauscht in allen Ecken (Sch.). Um sie buhlt die Jugend und das Alter (Sch.). Verschwört sich Haß und Liebe, mich zu schrecken? (Sch.) Die Orgel und der Chorgesang ertönt meinem Ohr (Uhl.).

After two subjects, one of which is in the first and the other in the second or third person, the verb is expressed in the first; and after two subjects in the second and third persons, the verb is expressed in the second person plural; e. g. ich und Du wissen es, I and you know that; Du und der Vater werdet es sehen, thou and thy father will see it. It is more usual, however, to add a personal pronoun in the plural number, comprehending both subjects; e. g. ich und Du, wir wissen es; Du und der Vater, Ihr werdet es sehen.

After collectives (§. 38) in the singular number, the German verb always stands in the same number; e. g.

die Menge geht dem Vergnügen nach, the multitude *pursue* pleasure; der Rath war in seiner Meinung getheilt, the council *were* divided in *their* opinions; es spielt hier jeden Abend eine Gesellschaft französischer Schauspieler, a company of French actors *play* here every night. The verb takes the plural however, after ein Paar a pair, a couple; eine Menge a number; ein Duzend a dozen, and some other substantives used as indefinite numerals; e. g. ein Paar Häuser sind abgebrannt, two or three houses have been burnt; eine Menge Hasen sind geschossen worden, a great number of hares have been killed.

Forms of the predicate.

The predicate is expressed, in German as in Eng- 195
lish, by

- a. *a verb*;
- b. *an adjective (not inflected)*;
- c. *a substantive in the nominative case*;
- d. *a substantive in the genitive case*;
- e. *a substantive with a preposition*;
- f. *an adverb*.

The verb, adjective and substantive in the nominative case are the usual expressions for the predicate, and require no further explanation than by the following examples.

Balken frachen, Pfosten stürzen, Fenster klirren, Kinder jammern, Mütter irren (Sch.). Das Leben ist kurz, die Kunst ist lang. — Ernst ist das Leben, heiter ist die Kunst (Sch.). Eng ist die Welt und das Gehirn ist weit (Sch.). Jung Siegfried war ein stolzer Knab', ging von des Vaters Burg herab (Uhl.). Arion war der Löwe Meister (Schlegel).

The verb *sein* cannot, like the English *to be*, express 196
a predicate when standing alone (except in inverted sentences, §. 190). The notional words *geschehen* to happen, *Statt finden* to take place, are used instead of *to be*; e. g. that will never *be*, das wird nie gesche-

hen; this wedding of my son's will never *be* at all,
 diese Heirat meines Sohnes wird nie Statt finden.

197 The following *adjectives* are not used as predicates:

1. *Derivatives in en*, as, golden golden, hölzern wooden etc., instead of which von Gold of gold, von Holz of wood etc. are used.

2. *Many derivatives in lich and isch*, as:

diebisch thievish,	heuchlerisch hypocritical,
räuberisch rapacious,	nordisch northern,
jährlich annual,	täglich daily,
wörtlich literal,	betrügerisch treacherous,
gänzlich total,	etc.

When an adjective in the superlative degree stands as a predicate, it assumes two different forms, in German as in English, viz.

a. in the nominative case with the definite article; as, er ist der Älteste, he is the eldest; der Klügste, the wisest. Ordinal numbers are of the same description and always take the definite article; e. g. ich bin der Erste, I am the first; du bist der Zweite, you are the second.

b. Superlatives which have no article in English, as, the days are *longest* in summer, take in German the preposition an (at), contracted with the dative of the definite article into am (= an dem); e. g. die Tage sind im Sommer am längsten. Wenn die Noth am größten ist, ist Gott am nächsten, when need is greatest, God is nearest; der Starke ist am mächtigsten allein (Sch.), the strong one is most powerful when alone.

Cardinal and indefinite numerals can scarcely be placed alone in the place of the predicate; and when mere number or quantity is to be asserted by the predicate, as: *we were three, the brothers are many, they are few*, the subject is always connected with the numeral, and placed in the genitive case, the indefinite pronoun es taking the place of the subject; e. g. es waren unser

drei, es sind der Brüder viele, es sind ihrer wenig, es ist des Geldes sehr wenig.

Possessive pronouns are used as predicates, as in English; e. g. das Buch ist mein, the book is mine.

A *substantive in the genitive case* is more usual in 198 poetry and sublime style than in common prose; e. g. Elisabeth ist meines Ranges und Standes (Sch.). Ihr wart so zarten Alters (Sch.). Ihr wart sonst immer so geschwin- der Zunge (Sch.). Der größte Theil der Fürsten ist unserer Gesinnung (G.). Mein Vater war überhaupt lehrhafter Natur (G.).

In common prose the following phrases only are adopted:

Ich bin der Meinung, daß zc.	I am of opinion that etc.,
„ „ anderer Meinung	„ „ „ a different opinion,
Wir sind verschiedener Mei- nung	We are of different opinions,
Ich bin Willens, das zu thun	I have a mind to do that,
Das ist meines Amtes	That is my office,
Ich bin gutes Muthes	I am in good spirits,
„ „ guter Dinge	„ „ in a good humour,
„ „ guter Laune	„ „ „ „ „ „
Ich bin des Todes	I am a dead man,
Sei gutes Muthes,	Be of good cheer!
Wir sind gleichen Alters	We are of the same age.

Instead of this predicative genitive, the preposition 199 von with the dative case is commonly used; e. g.

Er ist von Adel, von altem Adel.
 „ „ „ Stande.
 „ „ „ hoher Geburt.
 „ „ „ niedriger Herkunft.
 Diese Sache ist von Werth.
 „ „ „ „ Wichtigkeit.
 „ „ „ „ Bedeutung.
 Die Jugend ist nicht von langer Dauer.
 Das ist von großen Folgen.
 Der Kampf war von kurzer Dauer.

Der Palast war von bedeutendem Umfang und von verschiedenem Alter.

In the same way the materials of which things are composed, are expressed by von; e. g.

Der Tisch ist von Holz.
 Die Uhr ist von Gold.
 Das Haus ist von Stein.
 Die Feder ist von Stahl.
 Der Becher ist von Silber.

200 Prepositions different from those in English are used in certain cases; when the place or condition of the subject is to be expressed by the predicate; e. g.

Er ist in der Kirche	He is at church,
„ „ zu Hause	„ „ at home,
„ „ bei seinem Vater	„ „ with his father,
„ „ bei Hofe	„ „ at court,
„ „ über alle Berge	„ „ off, far away,
Sie ist in gesegneten Umständen	She is with child,
Er ist nicht bei Sinnen	He is not in his senses,
Du bist außer dir	Thou art beside thyself,
Er ist in meinen Diensten	He is in my service,
„ „ in vollem Besiz einer Sache	„ „ in full possession of anything,
Er ist in Verlegenheit	He is at a loss,
„ „ im Zorn	„ „ in a passion,
„ „ in Wuth	„ „ „ „ „
„ „ in Angst, Furcht	„ „ in fear,
„ „ in Sorgen	„ „ in pain,
„ „ in Noth	„ „ in need,
„ „ in Gefahr	„ „ in danger,
„ „ im Stande, zu —	„ „ enabled to —,
„ „ in tiefer Trauer	„ „ in deep mourning,
„ „ ohne Sorgen	„ „ without care,
„ „ „ Hilfe	„ „ „ help,
„ „ „ Geld	„ has no money,
„ „ „ Muth	„ „ „ courage,
„ „ bei Geld	„ „ money,

Er ist bei guter Laune	He is in good spirits,
Der Ball ist zu Ende	The ball is at an end.

In the following and similar expressions, the verb *stehen* to *stand*, is employed instead of the verb *to be*.

Seine Satiren stehen über denen Juvenals	His satires <i>are</i> beyond Ju- venal's,
Das steht bei Ihnen	That <i>rests</i> with you,
„ „ in meiner Macht	„ <i>is</i> in my power,
Ich stehe bei ihm in Gnaden	I <i>am</i> in favour with him,
Er steht im Verdacht	He <i>is</i> suspected,
Er steht in gutem Rufe	He <i>has</i> or <i>enjoys</i> a good reputation,
Ich stehe mit ihm in Ver- bindung	I <i>am</i> in connexion with him,
Es steht im Verhältniß mit —	It <i>is</i> in proportion to —,
Es steht in keinem Ver- hältniß mit —	„ „ not in proportion to —,
Es steht mir zu Gebote	„ „ at my disposal,
Er steht unter meinem Be- fehle	He <i>is</i> under my orders,
Mein Vermögen steht auf dem Spiele	My fortune <i>is</i> at a stake.

Some other verbs are used in the same way; e. g. the reflexive verb *sich befinden* to find oneself, in expressions like :

Er befindet sich jetzt in Berlin	He is now at Berlin,
Wie befinden Sie sich?	How are you?
Ich befinde mich wohl	I am well,
„ „ „ übel	„ „ ill,
Er befindet sich in guten Um- ständen	He is in good circumstances,
Er steckt bis über die Ohren in Schulden	He is over (head and) ears in debt.

201 The following adverbs are used as predicates :

1. *Adverbs of locality.*

Ich bin hier, da, dort	I am here, there,
Wo bin ich?	Where am I?
Wo sind Sie?	Where are you?
Er ist oben, unten ꝛ.	He is upstairs, downstairs,
Die Post ist fort	The post is gone,
„ „ ist da	„ „ „ come.

2. *Adverbs of manner.*

Das alles ist vergebens	All this is in vain,
„ „ „ umsonst	„ „ „ „
Die Sache ist so or anders	The thing is thus, otherwise,
„ „ „ so, wie er sagt	„ „ is (such) as he says.

This latter construction, however, is only admissible, when two things or actions are compared; when, on the contrary, an effect is expressed in this manner (as: The conduct of the duke was *such* as to induce some suspicion; his talents were *such* as must have forced him into distinction), *such* is commonly rendered in German by *der Art* (of that kind); e. g. *daß Betragen des Herzogs war der Art, daß es einigen Verdacht erregte; seine Talente waren der Art, daß ꝛ.*

In order to avoid the repetition of a predicate, the English use *so*; e. g. he is sick and I am *so* too. Will you go? Yes, I will do *so*. In German, the substantive pronoun *es* is employed in this case: *Er ist krank und ich bin es auch. Wollen Sie gehen? Ja, ich will es thun.*

Some of those adverbs which are found in separable compound verbs (§. 64), may be used as predicates, forming, as it were, a separable compound with the verb to be; e. g.

Ich bin auf	I am up,
Die Thür ist auf	The door is open,

Die Thür ist zu	The door is shut,
Er ist aus	He is out (absent),
Der Krieg ist aus	The war is over,
Das Feuer, das Licht ist aus	The fire, the candle is out,
Die Schmerzen sind noch nicht vorüber (vorbei)	The pain is not yet over,
Die Kirche ist aus	Church is over.

CHAPTER II.

OF ACTIVE, PASSIVE, REFLECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

There are three forms of the predicative verb, viz. 202
the *active*, the *passive* and the *reflective*.

Active.

They dispersed the enemy.
He distinguishes the parts of speech.

Reflective.

They dispersed.
He distinguishes himself by valour.

Passive.

They were dispersed by the enemy.
He is distinguished.

Active verbs are either *transitive*, or *intransitive*.

A verb is said to be *transitive*, when it requires an object conceived to suffer, and to be affected by this action. The object of a transitive verb is always in the *accusative* case, and is termed *suffering object*; e. g. sie zerstreuten den Feind, they dispersed the enemy; ich schlage den Hund, I beat the dog; er bauet ein Haus, he builds a house; du verbrennst das Papier, you burn the paper.

All verbs which are not transitive, are termed *intransitive*.

In English transitive and intransitive verbs are not so carefully distinguished as in German, a great number of verbs being used both as transitive and intransitive. This will be explained more particularly in Chapt. VII. The pupil is referred to good dictionaries for further information in this respect.

Transitive verbs alone admit of the passive and reflexive forms.

USE OF THE PASSIVE FORM.

203 The passive form is much more frequently used in English than in German.

Intransitive verbs which govern the dative case (see Chapt. IX.), *have no passive form*; e. g. *danfen* to thank, *schmeicheln* to flatter, *folgen* to follow, *trauen* to trust. When such verbs are in the passive form in English, the sentence in *German* must be transformed into one with its verb in the *active* form; e. g. *for this I was thanked by the chaplain*, must be *literally* translated thus: *for this the chaplain thanked me*, *dafür dankte mir der Kaplan*; *my vanity was flattered by this success* — *litr. this success flattered (to) my vanity*, *dieser Erfolg schmeichelte meiner Eitelkeit*; *the king was followed by his ministers* — *litr. the ministers followed (to) the king*, *dem Könige folgten die Minister*; *troops which could not be trusted*, *Truppen, denen man nicht trauen konnte* (*litr. 'to whom one could not trust' =*) *'that could not be depended upon'*.

When a verb governs the dative case of a *person* and at the same time the accusative case of a *thing*, as: to show something (Acc.) to anybody (Dat.), to permit something to — to offer, to tell etc.; the *accusative* case *only* may be changed into the subject of the *passive* voice. Thus we say in German (*litr.*): a room was shown to me, *ein Zimmer wurde mir gezeigt*; it was permitted to me, to visit her, *es wurde mir erlaubt, sie*

zu besuchen; it was told to me, es ist mir gesagt worden; a reward was offered to him, es wurde ihm eine Belohnung angeboten etc.; but similar phrases in *German* can not assume the English *idiomatic* form, such as: I was permitted to visit her; I was, or, have been told so; he was offered a reward etc.

Intransitive verbs, followed by a preposition, governing a case, have no passive form; e. g. to send for something, nach etwas schicken; to hear of something, von etwas hören; to doubt of anything, an etwas zweifeln; to laugh at something, über etwas lachen; to agree to something, in etwas einwilligen.

Sentences therefore, such as: *his attorney was sent for; he was never afterwards heard of; I was laughed at; the match was agreed on; the fidelity of some regiments could be but little relied upon*, must be transformed into the *active*, and if there is *no* active subject, as in the above examples, the indefinite pronoun *man* (*one*, French *on*) is employed to *represent* the subject: *man schickte nach seinem Advokaten; man hörte nachher nie mehr von ihm; man lachte über mich; man willigte in die Verbindung; auf die Treue einiger Regimenter konnte man wenig rechnen.*

The *passive form* of a *transitive verb* is not so generally used in *German* as in *English*. The passive construction is chiefly usual in the following cases only:

1. when the *agent* performing any act is to be made more prominent, than the person or thing suffering the action; e. g. *er ist vom Blitz erschlagen worden*, he has been killed by lightning; *der Straßburger Münster ist von Erwin von Steinbach erbaut worden*, the cathedral of Strasbourg was built by Erwin of Steinbach; *Fürsten werden unaufhörlich von Schmeichlern belagert*, princes are constantly surrounded by flatterers.

2. When the person or thing, performing the action, is not expressed; e. g. *er ist im Wald erschlagen worden*, he has been killed in the wood; *der Straßburger Münster*

ist im 14. Jahrhundert erbaut worden, the cathedral of Strasburg was built in the 14. century; junge Leute müssen belehrt werden, young people must be taught; die Redlichkeit wird nicht immer belohnt, honesty is not always rewarded; er wird jeden Augenblick erwartet, he is expected every moment.

The passive form is not used in expressions like the following: it is said that — it must be owned that, man sagt, man muß gestehen, daß; a greater injustice cannot be imagined, man kann sich keine größere Ungerechtigkeit denken; age ought to be honoured, das Alter muß man ehren.

Remark: The use of the *passive* voice is moreover rendered less common in German than in English, because of certain *idiomatic* expressions; thus, for instance, the *reflective* verb is used in the following and *similar* phrases, where in *English* the *passive* form of the verb would prevail; e. g. das verlorene Buch hat sich gefunden (the lost book *has been* found). Besides the verb lassen (litr. 'to let') supplies or represents in certain cases, the *passive* form, e. g. er läßt sich überreden (litr. 'he lets himself persuade', i. e. 'he allows himself to be persuaded' (see §. 218), also after certain other verbs, e. g. hören ('to hear'), where in Latin too the *passive* form occurs in some instances, e. g. *audio narrari* (I hear [it] said), the *active* form is employed in German; e. g. ich höre erzählen *). For further information respecting the use of the *Reflective verb*, see the following (§. 205).

OBSERVATION. The following constructions are not really passive, the participle having the value of an adjective; therefore the auxiliary verb *to be* sein (not werden) is employed in German as in English:

Ich bin geneigt	I am inclined,
„ „ gesinnt or gesonnen	„ „ disposed,
„ „ gewohnt	„ „ accustomed,
„ „ gefaßt	„ „ composed in mind,
„ „ gelehrt	„ „ learned,

*) Which colloquially also in *English* is rendered actively 'I hear say' instead of the more correct: 'I hear it said'.

Ich bin geschickt	I am qualified,
„ „ erfreut	„ „ pleased,
„ „ verwundert	„ „ astonished.

This is also the case, when the sentence is designed to express the *state* or *condition*, which is the *result* of the action, rather than the action *itself*; as in *descriptions* like: The shrubs were diligently cut away to open walks, the boughs of opposite trees were artificially interwoven; seats of flowery turf were raised in vacant spaces.

USE OF THE REFLECTIVE VERB.

Verbs, originally *transitive*, are rendered *intransitive* by 205 assuming the reflective form; e. g. by being connected with the accusative case of the reflective pronouns

mich myself,	uns ourselves,
dich thyself,	euch yourselves,
sich him-, her-, it self,	sich themselves,

which occupy the place, but have not the *signification* of an object. Thus in saying: he distinguished himself by his valour, *to distinguish* being a transitive verb, is rendered intransitive; for he distinguishes himself, means the same as: he excels.

The *reflective* form of verbs is very extensively employed in German as in French (*verbs pronominaux*), whilst in English either the same word is used in the transitive and intransitive sense, or the passive voice is used in order to express the *intransitive* sense (see Remark §. 204).

The following list contains the most usual reflective verbs:

1. Verbs reflective in German and in English. 206

Ich begnüge mich mit —	I content myself with —,
Er bekehret sich	He repents (litr. 'to turn away' [i.e. from wickedness]),
Bemühen Sie sich nicht	Do not trouble yourself,
Ich empfehle mich Ihnen	I recommend myself to you (take my leave),
Ich entschuldige mich	I excuse myself,
Er erfrischt sich	He refreshes himself,
Ich ergöze mich	I amuse myself,

Er ergibt sich den Wissenschaften	He devotes himself to the sciences,
Er erholt sich	He recovers himself,
Ich fasse mich	I recollect or compose myself,
Ich gewöhne mich an etwas	I accustom myself to —,
Ich lege mich auf etwas	I apply myself to —,
Ich räche mich an meinem Feinde	I revenge myself on my enemy,
Ich rette mich aus der Noth	I rescue myself from danger,
Ich will mich nach dir richten	I will accommodate myself to you,
Er schonet sich nicht	He does not take care of himself,
Ich übe mich im Tanzen	I practise dancing,
Ich verpflichte mich zu —	I engage myself to —,
Ich wehre mich	I defend myself,
Ich wende mich an Jemanden	I address myself to —,
Er zeichnet sich aus durch —	He distinguishes himself by —,

207 2. *Verbs reflexive in German, passive in English.*

Ich ärgere mich über —	I am vexed with —,
Ich begnüge mich mit —	I am satisfied with —,
Ich betrübe mich über —	I am afflicted,
Die Lichtstrahlen brechen sich	The rays of light are refracted,
Das Schloß erhebt sich über die Stadt	The castle is elevated above the town
Ich freue mich über —	I am pleased with —,
Ich gräme mich über —	I am grieved at,
Ich irre mich	I am mistaken,
Ich schäme mich über —	I am ashamed of,
Ich schleppe mich mit einem Fieber	I am harrassed by a fever,
Der Mond spiegelt sich im Wasser	The moon is reflected in the water,
Ich habe mich mit ihr verlobt	I am betrothed to her,
Ich versöhne mich mit ihm	I am reconciled with him,
Ich verstehe mich auf etwas	I am skilled in something,

Das Holz wirft sich	The wood is warped,
Etwas wiederholt sich	Something is repeated,
Er hat sich sehr verändert	He is quite altered,
Das Bündniß löst sich auf	The alliance is dissolved,
Es verbreitet sich ein Gerücht	A report is spread.

3. *Verbs reflective in German, active in English.* 208

Die Wellen brechen sich an der Küste	The waves are breaking against the shore,
Das Wetter ändert sich	The weather changes,
Ich bade mich	I bathe,
Das Pferd bäumt sich	The horse rears,
Ich bedanke mich	I thank,
Ich bedenke mich darüber	I am thinking upon it,
Ich bediene mich (c. Gen.)	I make use of —,
Ich beeile mich	I hasten, make haste,
Ich befinde mich wohl	I am well,
Ich befinde mich in großer Gefahr	I am in great danger,
Ich begeben mich in die Kirche	I go (render myself) to church,
Ich beklage mich über —	I complain of —,
Ich bekümmere mich um —	I care for —,
Die Summe beläuft sich auf —	The sum amounts to —,
Ich bemächtige mich des Thrones	I take possession of the throne,
Ich bemeistere mich des Thrones	
Ich berathe mich mit ihm	I deliberate with him,
Ich berufe mich auf ihn	I appeal to him,
Ich beschwere mich über —	I complain of —,
Ich bespreche mich mit ihm	I converse with him,
Ich bestrebe mich, es zu thun	I endeavour to do so,
Er trägt sich gut	He behaves well,
Ich besinne mich —	I reflect upon —, or, call to my mind,
Ich bewege mich langsam	I move slowly,
Das bezieht sich auf —	This refers to —,
Er bildet sich etwas ein	He imagines something,
Der Stock biegt sich	The stick bends,
Die Erde dreht sich um ihre Aze	The earth turns around its axis,
Das Volk empört sich	The people revolts,

Ich entferne mich	I withdraw,
Ich enthalte mich des Weines	I abstain from wine,
Ich entscheide mich über —	I resolve upon —,
Ich entschieße mich zu —	” ” ”
Ich erbarme mich (c. Gen.)	I have pity on —,
Ich ergebe mich dem Feinde	I surrender to the enemy,
Es ereignet sich	It happens or occurs,
Ich ergöze mich an — (c. Dat.)	I delight in —,
Ich erhole mich	I recover,
Ich erinnere mich	I recollect,
Ich erkälte mich	I take a cold,
Ich erkundige mich nach —	I enquire after —,
Ich freue mich über —	I rejoice at —, am glad of —
Ich freue mich auf —	” ” ” ” ” ”
Ich führe mich gut auf	I behave well,
Ich fühle mich glücklich	I feel happy,
Ich gedulde mich	I have patience,
Ich halte mich rechter Hand	I keep to the right (hand),
Ich halte mich hier auf	I dwell, live here,
Ich halte mich über etwas auf	I find fault with something,
Die Aletten hängen sich an die Kleider	The burs stick to one's clothes,
Ich hüte mich vor —	I take heed, beware of —,
Ich lasse mich herab	I condescend,
Ich nehme mir etwas heraus	I presume,
Ich kümmerge mich um —	I care for —,
Das Heer lagert sich	The army encamps,
Ich lege mich	I lie down,
Der Wind legt sich	The wind is abating,
Das Schiff legt sich vor Anker	The ship comes to anchor,
Die Zahl mehrt sich, or ver- mehrt sich	The number increases,
Er mischt sich ein in etwas	He meddles with —,
Ich nähere mich der Stadt	I approach the town,
Sie nährt sich durch Spinnen	She lives (gets her living) by spinning,
Er neigt sich vor ihr	He bows to her,
Er neigt sich dazu	He is inclined to it,
Er nimmt sich in Acht	He takes care,
Die Thür öffnet sich	The door opens,

Er regt ſich nicht	He does not stir,
Ich rühme mich	I boast,
Der Fluß ſchlängelt ſich	The river is serpentining,
Der Hund ſchmiegt ſich an ſeinen Herrn	The dog fawns upon his master,
Das Fundament hat ſich geſenket	The foundation has sunk,
Ich ſehne mich nach —	I long for —
Ich ſeße mich	I ſit down,
Seßen Sie ſich	Sit down, take a chair,
Er ſtürzte ſich ins Waſſer	He plunged into the water,
Er täuſcht ſich	He errs,
Er treibt ſich herum	He rambles about,
Die Stadt hat ſich übergeben	The town has ſurrendered,
Ich habe mich umgekleidet	I have changed my dress,
Ich ſehe mich um	I look round,
Ich unterhalte mich mit ihm	I converse (with) him,
Ich unterwerfe mich	I ſubmit,
Ich habe mich verhehlicht, ver- heiratet	I have married,
Das Wetter verändert ſich	They weather changes,
Ich vereinige mich mit ihm	I join (with) him,
Ich vergehe mich	I do wrong,
Die Sache verhält ſich ſo	The matter is ſo,
Ich verlaffe mich auf —	I rely upon —,
Ich verliebe mich in ſie	I fall in love with her,
Sie verſchwören ſich	They conſpire,
Ich verwende mich für ihn	I intercede for him,
Ich verſpäte mich	I tarry, come too late,
Ich verſtehe mich dazu	I accede to it,
Ich wälze mich	I wallow, welter,
Ich waſche mich	I waſh,
Ich weigere mich	I reſuſe,
Ich wende mich	I turn,
Ich widerſeße mich	I oppoſe,
Ich wundre mich über —	I wonder at —,
Ich zanke mich mit ihm	I quarrel with him,
Sie zerſtreuten ſich	They diſperſed,
Ich ziehe mich zurück	I retire, retreat,
Das Gewitter zieht ſich nach der Stadt	The tempeſt draws towards the town.

IMPERSONAL SENTENCES.

209 A sentence, expressive of an action which is asserted without any relation to the person or thing performing it, is termed an *impersonal sentence*. Such sentences, as: it rains, it snows, have in fact no subject; its place however is generally represented in German as in English by the pronoun *es* *it*. The predicate of an impersonal sentence may be a verb, adjective or substantive. Impersonal sentences are principally used to express *natural events* and indications of time, which involve the subject or the latter is obvious from the predicate; such as

<i>es</i> regnet	it rains,
<i>es</i> schneiet	it snows,
<i>es</i> hagelt	it hails,
<i>es</i> friert	it freezes,
<i>es</i> thauet	it thaws,
<i>es</i> blitzt	it lightens,
<i>es</i> donnert	it thunders,
<i>es</i> stürmt	there is a storm,
<i>es</i> ist kalt	it is cold,
<i>es</i> ist kühl	it is cool,
<i>es</i> ist warm	it is warm,
<i>es</i> ist heiß	it is hot,
<i>es</i> ist angenehm,	it is pleasant weather,
<i>es</i> ist angenehmes (schö- nes) Wetter	” ” ” ”
<i>es</i> ist hell	it is clear,
<i>es</i> ist dunkel	it is dark,
<i>es</i> ist früh	it is early,
<i>es</i> ist spät	it is late,
<i>es</i> ist Morgen, Mittag	it is morning, noon,
<i>es</i> ist Abend, Nacht	it is evening, night,
<i>es</i> ist 6 Uhr	it is 6 o'clock,
<i>es</i> ist ein viertel auf 7	it is a quarter past 6,
<i>es</i> ist halb 7	it is half past 6,
<i>es</i> ist drei viertel auf 7	it is a quarter to 7,
<i>es</i> ist heute Sonntag &c.	it is Sunday to-day, etc.

The following are of the same description in German, though different in English:

- es klopfst somebody knocks (at the door),
 es schlägt the clock strikes,
 es läutet the bell rings,
 es trommelt the drum is beating,
 es thauet the dew is falling,
 es wird Abend (Morgen) evening (morning) comes on,
 es hungert mich, or mich hungert I am hungry,
 es durstet mich, or mich durstet I am thirsty,
 es friert mich, or mich friert I am chilly,
 es schaudert mich, or mich schaudert I shudder,
 es verlangt mich, or mich verlangt nach etwas I long
 for something,
 es gelüstet mich, or mich gelüstet nach etwas I lust after
 something,
 es jammert mich, or mich jammert (c. Gen.) I pity,
 es reuet mich, or mich reuet I repent of —,
 es grauet mir, or mir grauet vor — I am afraid of —,
 es ekelt mir, or mir ekelt vor — I am disgusted at —,
 es schwindelt mir, or mir schwindelt I am giddy,
 es gefällt mir hier I am pleased here,
 es behagt mir hier I am comfortable here,
 es ist mir wohl I am well,
 es ist mir übel I am unwell,
 es ist mir heiß I am hot,
 es ist mir gut } zu Muthe I am in good,
 es ist mir schlecht } bad spirits,
 es ist mir bange um — I am uneasy about —,
 es mangelt an Geld }
 es fehlt " " } money is wanting,
 es gebricht " " }
 es bedarf des Geldes there is need of money,
 es braucht nicht vieler Worte there is no need of many
 words,
 es kommt darauf an, ob — it is important, whether —,
 es kommt hier nur auf Geld an, money alone is re-
 garded in this,

es ist kein Zweifel, daß er kommen wird there is no doubt, that he will come.

- 211 The verb *geben*, *to give*, is employed impersonally in a peculiar manner, in order to express *existence*; *es gibt there is, there are* (French: *il y a*). The substantive, expressing the thing which is said to exist, is put in the accusative case, as in: *es gibt Leute, welche —*, there are people who —; *es gibt keine Riesen*, there are no giants; in Deutschland gibt es einen Kaiser und fünf Könige, there are one emperor and five kings in Germany; *es gibt keine Rosen ohne Dornen*, there is no rose without a thorn; *was gibt's da?* what is the matter there? *was gibt's Neues?* what news? *es gibt eine heroische Unschuld sowol, als einen heroischen Muth*, there is a heroic innocence as well as a heroic courage.

However, *es gibt* never stands for *there is*, when it serves merely to invert a sentence, as in: there is a friend of mine in London, *es ist ein Freund von mir in London*. In such sentences the auxiliary verb *sein* is used: there is no water in the bottle, *es ist kein Wasser in der Flasche*; where there is smoke, there is fire, *wo Rauch ist, da ist Feuer*; there is ice in the river, *es ist Eis auf dem Flusse*.

- 212 The passive voice, both of transitive and intransitive verbs, is used impersonally, as in Latin, when the subject of the action is not to be expressed, as in: *es wird in London viel gestohlen*, there is much theft going on in London; *es wird in Deutschland viel geraucht*, they smoke a great deal in Germany; *es wurde nach dem Arzte geschickt*, the physician was sent for; *heute Abend wird getanzt werden*, to-night there will be dancing; *es wird viel davon gesprochen*, it is much spoken of.

Sometimes the reflective form is used in the same manner; e. g. *es schläft sich gut an einem Wasserfall*, one sleeps well near a cascade; *es fährt sich angenehm in diesem Wagen*, one rides comfortably in this carriage; *von Eurer Fahrt kehrt sich's nicht immer wieder* (Sch.), one

does not always return from a journey like yours; lebhaft träumt sich's unter diesem Baum, one has vivid dreams under this tree.

CHAPTER III.

MODALITY OF THE PREDICATE.

We comprehend under the head of modality:

1. the distinction of *affirmative* and *negative sentences*;
2. the distinction of the *reality*, *possibility* and *necessity* of the predicate.

1. Affirmation and Negation.

Affirmation is not in general expressed by any particular word; e. g. er schläft, he sleeps; er ist angekommen he has arrived. When however an affirmation is to be emphatically made, one of the adverbs ja *yes*, doch *yet*, wahrlich *truly*, wirklich *really* etc. (§. 174) is added, which then either takes the place of an object, or precedes the sentence, without inverting it; e. g. Sara hat ihren Vater geliebt, und gewiß, sie liebt ihn noch (Reff.), Sarah loved her father, and certainly, she loves him still. Ja, dem ist wirklich so (Sch.), yes, it is so indeed. Fürwahr, das Glück war eurer Kühnheit hold (Sch.), truly, fortune was favourable to your boldness. Wahrhaftig, der Spaß war nicht gering (Sch.), by my faith, the joke was not bad. Ich weiß es wahrhaftig nicht, I am sure, I don't know; es ist allerdings wahr, it certainly is true.

Interrogative Sentence.

A question is asked, without the auxiliary verb *to do*, merely by inverting the sentence, according to §. 176; the verb inflected takes the first place, and is

only preceded by the interrogative pronoun, if there is one.

<i>Interrog. Pronoun.</i>	<i>Verb inflected.</i>	<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Predicate not inflected.</i>
Wo	bist	du		gewesen?
Where	have	you		been?
	Bist	du	dort (there)	gewesen?
	Hast	du	ihn	gesehen?
	Siehst	du	ihn?	do you see him?

In answering a question, the adverbs *ja* *yes*, *nein* *no*, are employed, as in English.

- 214 A negation is expressed by *nicht* *not*, *keine* *no*, and by *kein* *not at all*, and by *nein* *no*. The auxiliary verb *to do* is not employed in negative sentences, as in English. The negative adverb is commonly placed after the objects (see §. 259); e. g. *der stolze Herzog läßt sich nicht versöhnen* (Sch.), the proud duke is not to be reconciled. *Es kann der Britte gegen den Schotten nicht gerecht sein* (Sch.), the Briton cannot be just to the Scotch-man.

When there is an indefinite article, pronoun, or numeral in a negative sentence, the German idiom generally requires a negative pronoun or numeral; viz.

kein instead of *not a*, *not any*,
Niemand „ „ *not anybody*,
Nichts „ „ *not any thing*;

e. g. I do not know any rule so useful in life, *ich kenne keine im Leben so nützliche Regel*; I do not know anybody here, *ich kenne hier Niemanden*; I have not heard any thing of him, *ich habe nichts von ihm gehört*.

Possibility and Necessity of the Predicate.

- 215 The possibility and necessity of the predicate are expressed in German by the auxiliary verbs of modality: *können*, *dürfen*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen* and *lassen*, and by the adverb *gern*. The use of these auxiliary verbs depends upon whether the

possibility or necessity of an action depend upon *nature* or upon the *will* of some person.

Possibility by nature and ability, i. e. power, is expressed by *können*, which corresponds to the English *to be able* or *can, may*; e. g. der Vogel kann fliegen, der Fisch kann schwimmen; man kann nicht Alles wissen. Ich schrie so laut als ich konnte, I cried as loud as I could; ich kann ziemlich gut schießen, I can shoot pretty well. Ich kann nicht singen und springen, ich liege krank im Gras (Heine).

Du kannst mir verbieten dich zu begleiten, aber du kannst mich nicht hindern, dir zu folgen, you may forbid me to accompany you, but cannot hinder me from following; ein kleiner Funke kann ein großes Feuer anzünden, a small spark may kindle a great fire.

Possibility depending upon the will of a person, i. e. liberty and permission, is expressed by *dürfen* and *mögen*. *Dürfen* signifies that an action is permitted by law or by a person; e. g. Jedermann darf Waffen tragen, every body is permitted to bear arms; darf ich diesen Brief lesen? may I read this letter? Kein Wagen-gerassel durfte seiner Wohnung nahe kommen (Sch.), the noise of carriages was not permitted near his residence.

Mögen generally expresses that the *speaker* allows 216 another person to do something; e. g. du magst den Brief lesen, you may (I allow you to) read the letter; da er müde ist, so mag er ausruhen, since he is fatigued, he may (I allow him to) take rest; ihr möget einen Versuch machen, you may make an attempt (I have no objection to it); du magst es thun, wenn du kannst, you may do it if you can.

Sometimes *mögen* expresses what is agreeable to the wishes of the *subject*, and then it corresponds to the English *to like*; but it is generally employed in this way in negative sentences only, or in the conditional; e. g. er mag ihn nicht sehen, he does not like

to see him; *ich mag den Brief nicht lesen*, I do not like to read the letter; *ich möchte ihn verbrennen*, I should like to burn it.

It is more usual, particularly in affirmation, to employ the adverb *gern*; e. g. *er sieht ihn gern*; *er geht gern spazieren*, he likes to take a walk.

- 217 Necessity, enforced by nature or law, is expressed by *müssen*; e. g. *alle Menschen müssen sterben*, all men must die; *Kinder müssen ihren Eltern gehorchen*, children must (are obliged to) obey their parents; *wenn du von deinem Vaterlande geehrt werden willst, so mußt du dich bemühen ihm zu dienen*, if you would be honoured by your country, you must take care to serve it; *beständiger Leichtsinns muß mit Dummheit enden*, perpetual levity must end in ignorance.

Necessity, enforced by the will of another person, i. e. by command, is expressed by *sollen*; e. g. *Sterben soll sie*; *er soll sie fallen sehen und nach ihr sterben* (Sch.), she shall die: he shall see her fall, and die after her. *Wer nicht arbeitet, soll auch nicht essen*. *Proverb*

Necessity, enforced by the will of the subject, is expressed by *wollen*; e. g. *der Mensch kann, was er will, wenn er will, was er kann* (Rückert). Man can do, what he has the will to do; if he only has the will to do, what he is able to do. *Der ist nicht frei, der da will thun können, was er will; sondern der ist frei, der da wollen kann, was er thun soll* (Claudius). *Wer den Kern essen will, muß die Nuß knacken*. *Proverb*.

- 218 The verb *lassen* (lit. 'to let') denotes in German a) *permission* and *command*, b) it conveys also the notion of *causing* any thing *to be done**); e. g. *laß ihn*

*) When *lassen* is rendered by *to allow*, *to let* etc. or *to command*, *to bid* etc. the following *Infinitive* may sometimes be translated by the *active*, sometimes by the *passive*, as will be seen by the examples (§. 218). The *Latin* construction affords to us a *similarity* in this respect, viz. 'Caesar jussit legionem *educi*' and 'Caesar jussit tribunum legiones *educere*'.

gehen, let him go, permit him to go; er läßt den Vogel fliegen, he lets the bird fly; sie lassen von London Uhren kommen, they get watches brought from London; er läßt den Hund tanzen, he makes the dog dance; laß es sein, laß es bleiben (let it alone); der König hat ihn hingerichten lassen, the king caused him to be executed.

Instead of können and müssen, the future participle is sometimes employed, and it is to be observed, that it is used both in an active and passive sense; e. g. das Kind ist zu bestrafen, the child must be punished; der Brief ist nicht zu lesen, the letter cannot be read; was ist zu thun? what is to be done? ich habe meine zwei Brüder zu unterhalten, I have to maintain my two brothers; du hast zu antworten, you are to answer; solche Frechheit ist nicht zu ertragen, such insolence is not to be endured; das menschliche Leben ist ein Zustand, in welchem viel zu ertragen und wenig zu genießen ist, human life is a state in which much is to be endured, and little to be enjoyed.

We must be careful to distinguish the possibility and necessity of the action from the possibility of the assertion, i. e. the truth of the assertion, granted by the speaker or some other person or founded upon their supposition. The possibility of the assertion is expressed:

1. by the adverbs, vielleicht *perhaps*, wahrscheinlich *probably*, and wol;

e. g. er wird vielleicht heute kommen, he will perhaps come to-day; er ist vielleicht krank, he is perhaps sick; er wird wahrscheinlich morgen kommen, he will probably come to-morrow; das ist wol ein Ausländer, I suppose he is a foreigner; es wird wol etwas Anderes bedeuten, I suppose it signifies something different.

2. by the auxiliary verbs können, dürfen, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen.

Können is employed to express the English *it may be*; e. g. er kann schon abgereist sein, it may be that he

has set out already; er könnte uns verrathen haben, it might be that he had betrayed us (which differ from er hat abreisen können, he has been able to set out; er hätte uns verrathen können, he might have been able to betray us).

Dürfen is employed in this way only in the conditional mood, in order to express conjecture; e. g. er dürfte dir wol nicht Alles erzählt haben, very likely he has not told you every thing.

Mögen is commonly used when a probability or conjecture is granted by the speaker; e. g. in er mag Recht haben, he may be (I suppose he is) in the right; er mag ein geschickter Mann sein, he may be (I believe that he is) a clever man; er mag zwanzig Jahre alt sein, he may be about twenty years of age; ich mag thun was ich will, so ist es unrecht, I may do what I will, it does not please; du magst lachen oder weinen, es ist einerlei, you may laugh or cry, it is all the same.

Müssen corresponds to the English *must*; e. g. er muß sehr reich sein, he must be very rich; er muß heute angekommen sein, he must have arrived to-day (which differs from er hat heute ankommen müssen, he was obliged to arrive to-day).

Sollen expresses the English *they say*; e. g. er soll angekommen sein, they say he is arrived; er soll sehr reich sein, he is said to be very rich.

Wollen is sometimes used in the signification of *pretending*; e. g. Einige wollen ihn gesehen haben, some pretend to have seen him.

220 The following sentences will explain the use of those idiomatic expressions which denote modality of the predicate:

He had his boots cleaned	Er ließ seine Stiefel putzen,
I had the church accurately described to me	Ich ließ mir die Kirche genau beschreiben,
She must have a tooth extracted	Sie muß sich einen Zahn ausziehen lassen,

Do not suffer your spirit to be subdued by misfor- tunes	Laß deinen Muth nicht durch Unglück unterdrücken,
We are now to think what is to be done	Wir müssen jetzt bedenken was zu thun ist,
I cannot help crying out	Ich kann nicht umhin zu schreien,
I cannot but cry	Ich muß schreien,
I had nearly fallen	Ich wäre beinahe (bald) ge- fallen,
I was near being killed	Ich wäre beinahe getödtet worden,
All skill ought to be exer- ted for universal good	Man sollte jedes Talent zum allgemeinen Besten ausüben,
You ought to have done it	Du hättest es thun sollen,
I should like to know that	Ich möchte das gern wissen,
I should wish to see him	Ich möchte ihn gern sehen,
There is no living with her	Man kann mit ihr nicht leben,
The parliament is to be dissolved	Das Parlament soll aufgelöst werden,
I wish you would let me alone	Ich wollte, du ließeß mich allein,
I had rather hear you than dispute with you	Ich möchte dich lieber anhö- ren, als mit dir streiten.

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE USE OF THE TENSES.

The *present tense* is employed, as in English, a) to 221
denote an action as taking place at the time the spea-
ker pronounces the sentence; e. g. die Sonne geht jetzt
unter, the sun is now setting; b) to denote an action
or state in which no relation of time is distinguished,
as f. i. in the statement of a *general truth* etc.; e. g. die
Sonne geht in Westen unter, the sun sets in the west; die

Erde bewegt sich um die Sonne, the earth moves round the sun; das Leben des Menschen ist kurz, the life of man is short.

The distinction expressed in English by the forms: *he speaks* and *he is speaking*, is not pointed out in German by any particular form.

Future time also is frequently expressed in German by the *present tense*, namely:

1. when the relation of time (i. e. the *futurity* of the predicate) is already intimated by the *medium* of any *adverb* or *accessory sentence* etc.; e. g. ich gehe morgen nach London, I go to London to-morrow; ich reise bald nach Deutschland, I shall soon travel to Germany; in zwei Jahren gehe ich nach Italien, in two years I shall go to Italy;

2. when the *certainty* of a future event is to be anticipated; e. g. bitte ihn nur, so gibt er dir Alles, was du nur willst, request him only and he will give you every thing you wish for; ich will ihn bitten, aber er thut es nicht, I shall request him, but he will not do it. Verlaß dich drauf, ich lasse fechtend hier das Leben, oder führe sie aus Pilsen (Sch.). Dies Schloß ersteigen wir in dieser Nacht, wir ermorden die Hüter, reißen dich aus deiner Kammer (Sch.). Die Vöglein schweigen im Walde; warte nur, balde ruhest auch du (G.).

On the other hand, *present time* is expressed by the *future tense*, when the predicate is to be represented as uncertain and doubtful; e. g. er wird da sein, he is probably here; er wird krank sein, he is probably not well. Ich höre Jemand kommen, es wird der Wirth sein (Lef.). Wo die That nicht spricht, da wird das Wort nicht viel helfen (Sch.).

The *future* and *past future* tenses are, in the generality of cases, employed in the same manner as in English; e. g. er wird morgen abreisen, he will set out to-morrow; wenn dein Bruder kommt, wird er uns verlassen haben, he will have left us by the time your brother arrives.

Doch denkt nicht, daß Ihr's vollenden werdet; vergebens werdet Ihr für Euren Feldherrn Euch geopfert haben (S. 4.).

There is a great difference between the German and 222 English language, as to the use of the past tenses; for the German idiom requires, in a great many cases, the tense formed by the auxiliary verb haben or sein (*perfect tense*) where in English the simple *imperfect tense* is used.

The imperfect is employed to denote not so much past time, as a relation to some past event performed at the same time; e. g. als er ankam, reifete ich ab, when he arrived, I departed.

Als ich Abschied nahm,
Waren Kisten und Kasten so schwer;
Als ich wieder kam
War alles leer. (S.)

When either of the two past actions precedes the other in time, it is expressed in the *pluperfect tense* as in English; e. g. ich reifete ab, ehe er angekommen war, I departed before he had arrived. Zur Schmiede ging ein junger Held; er hatt' ein gutes Schwert bestellt. (U. 4. l.)

The relation of past events to one another is that which forms the historical narration, in which, accordingly, the *imperfect tense* is always used; e. g. Die Westgothen wollten durch Italien nach Afrika wandern: unterwegs starb plötzlich Marich, ihr König, den sie über die Maßen liebten. Da leiteten sie den Fluß Busento, der neben der Stadt Cosenza am Fuß des Berges fließt, aus seinem Bette ab. Mitten in dem Bette ließen sie nun durch einen Haufen Gefangener ein Grab graben, und in den Schooß der Grube bestatteten sie, nebst vielen Kostbarkeiten, ihren König Marich. Als das geschehen war, leiteten sie das Wasser wieder ins alte Bett zurück, und tödteten, damit die Stätte von Niemand verrathen würde, alle die, welche das Grab gegraben hatten.

The *present tense* is also used instead of the imperfect in historical narration, in order to render the description more animated; this tense answers to the Latin '*praesens historicum*'; and this practice is more common in German than in English; e. g.

Nächtlich am Busento lispeln bei Cosenza dumpfe Lieder;
Aus den Wassern schallt es Antwort, und in Wirbeln
flingt es wieder.

Und den Fluß hinauf, hinunter ziehn die Schaaren tapfrer
Gothen,

Die den Marich beweinen, ihres Volkes großen Todten.

(Platen.)

Das Wasser rauscht', das Wasser schwoll,

Ein Fischer saß daran,

Sah nach der Angel ruhevoll, .

Kühl bis ans Herz hinan.

Und wie er sieht, und wie er lauſcht,

Theilt sich die Flut empor;

Aus dem bewegten Wasser rauscht

Ein feuchtes Weib hervor.

(Göthe.)

- 223 2. The predicate is put in the imperfect tense, when the action, expressed by it, is frequently repeated, or of a longer duration; e. g. die alten Deutschen lebten in Wäldern, the old Germans lived (used to live) in forests.

In jüngern Tagen war ich des Morgens froh,

Des Abends weint' ich; jetzt da ich älter bin,

Beginn' ich zweifelnd meinen Tag, doch

Heilig und heiter ist mir sein Ende. (Hölderlin.)

Nun komm' ich heut' in diesen Tempel, den ich oft be-
trat, um Sieg zu bitten. (G.) Schon früh in meiner Kind-
heit war mein täglich Spiel der Krieg. (Stolberg.)

- 224 In all other cases, the German idiom requires the *perfect tense*; this is particularly to be observed in common conversation, the perfect tense being more usual there than the imperfect tense; e. g. I saw your brother this morning, ich habe heute Morgen Ihren Bruder ge-

sehen; we have good hope that Albert escaped from that fatal day; young Albaney saw him a mile from the field — Young Albaney lied. (W. Sc.) Wir haben Hoffnung, daß Albert von dem unglücklichen Tage davon gekommen ist; der junge Albaney hat ihn eine Meile vom Schlachtfelde gesehen — der junge Albaney hat gelogen. Did you ever fight a duel? — Many, but I never was wounded. Haben Sie sich je geschlagen? — Oft, aber ich bin nie verwundet worden. You were at the theater last night? Sie sind gestern Abend im Theater gewesen? Yes, I was. Ja, ich bin da gewesen.

When in the passive form not so much the past time, as the *reality* of the past action is to be pointed out, the participle of the auxiliary verb werden (worden) is omitted; e. g. die Schlacht ist gewonnen, the battle is won; der Dieb ist entdeckt, the thief was discovered. Sie ist ermordet auf der Londner Straße (Sch.), she was murdered on the road to London; Napoleon ist in Korsika geboren, Napoleon was born in Corsica.

Forms of expression such as: *I am to speak, he is to come*, do not exist in German; they are rendered by the first future, ich werde sprechen, er wird kommen; and if a necessity rather than a relation of time is to be expressed, by the auxiliary verb sollen; e. g. *what am I to hear?* was soll ich hören? Ein Augenblick sollte Wallenstein jetzt von der Fülle der Gewalt in das Nichts des Privatstandes herunterstürzen (Sch.), one moment now *was to precipitate* Wallenstein from the height of power to the condition of a private man.

The relative tenses expressed by the forms *I was about or going to speak, he was to come*, are always rendered in German by the auxiliary verbs wollen and sollen; the former being employed when the action depends on the will of the subject of the sentence, and the latter when it depends on the will of another subject; e. g. er wollte sprechen, he was about to speak; er sollte gehängt werden, he was to be hanged.

· *I was going to moralize upon this fable when etc.*
 Ich wollte eben über diese Fabel moralisiren, als ꝛc.

Sometimes we use im Begriff sein, e. g. *I am going to compose a Grammar, ich bin im Begriff, eine Grammatik zu schreiben.*

OBSERVATION. The English auxiliary verb *I will* sometimes expresses the frequency of an action: e. g. When our visitors *would* say, You have fine children, she *would* answer etc. Sometimes our neighbour *would* pay us a visit. While one played, the other *would* sing. This meaning is either not expressed in German, or it is pointed out only by a relational adverb, as *zuweilen, wol* (§. 138, 139); e. g. *wenn unsere Freunde wol, or zuweilen sagten ꝛc., antwortete sie wol ꝛc.*

CHAPTER V.

OF THE USE OF THE MOODS.

226 The *Indicative mood* denotes *actual existence* and *certainty*, which is either *asserted, denied* or *inquired about* in the sentence by the speaker; respecting its *use*, it may be said to be rather more limited by the other moods, than is the case in English.

The *Conditional mood* represents an assertion of the speaker as *contrary to reality*, that is to say: it denotes *actual existence* or *occurrence* merely *assumed* or *conceived* by the mind; and consequently involves the *concurrent* notion of *incertainty* or a greater or less degree of *improbability* or even *impossibility*; e. g. *wenn er noch lebte, wäre er jetzt ein reicher Mann*, if he were still alive, he would now be a rich man (but in *reality* he is *neither* alive, *nor* a rich man). *Du wärest Don Manuel?* (involves the *latent notion* of: 'you probably or

certainly are not that person; or *'it is impossible you should be Don M. (my brother*)*. (See §. 226 c. and 227.)

Wenn Alles eben käme,
 Wie du gewollt es hast,
 Und Gott dir gar nichts nähme,
 Und gäb' dir keine Last;
 Wie wär's da um dein Sterben,
 Du Menschenkind, bestellt?
 Du müßtest fast verderben,
 So lieb wär' dir die Welt. (Fouqué.)

The *Conditional mood* is not only used in similar conditional sentences, but also a) when the condition is only understood and not expressed; e. g. *ich hätte die Sache anders gemacht*, I should have arranged the matter differently (if it had been my business). An die Möglichkeit der That glaubt Keiner, da müßten sie dich fürchten und dich achten (Sch.). Du könntest merken, daß du lästig bist (Sch.), — or when it is contracted with the conditional sentence; e. g. *ich hätte an seiner Stelle anders gehandelt*, in his place (if I had been in his place) I should have acted otherwise. Du würdest wohl thun, diesen Platz zu leeren. (Sch.)

b) If what we *wish for*, or *imagine*, is to be represented as contrary to reality; e. g. *wäre er doch noch am Leben!* would that he were still alive! *Hätte ich ihn doch nie gesehen!* O that I had never seen him! *Du ging's von hier gerade in's Feld des Todes, und alle Schwerter durchdrängen meinen Busen!* (Sch.) *Den möcht' ich wissen, der der Treuste mir von Allen ist.* (Sch.) *Du sprichst, als ob die Welt jetzt wäre, wie sie sonst war. Wer mit Euch wanderte, mit Euch schiffte!* (Sch.)

c) If it is a questionable possibility; e. g. *wäre es denn wahr?* could it be true? *Hättest du wirklich deinen Freund verrathen?* could you really have betrayed your friend? *Wär's möglich, Vater?* (Sch.) *Hättest du's mit*

*) The *context* of the tragedy 'die Braut von Messina' will verify the above in a striking manner.

Vorbedacht dahin treiben wollen? (Sch.) Sollt' ich's nun im Ernst erfüllen müssen? (Sch.) Gastfreundlich hätte England sie empfangen? (Sch.)

- 227 The use of the *conditional* mood depends not so much on the assertion being actually in itself *impossible*, as on its being conceived in the mind of the speaker, and therefore represented, as impossible. Thus in saying, wenn er heute ankäme, if he should arrive to-day, — the arrival is conceived and represented as impossible, though in fact it may be possible (s. §. 226).

The *tenses* of the *conditional* may be divided into 1) *Pres.* ich spräche. 2) *Perf.* ich hätte gesprochen. 3) *I. Fut.* ich würde sprechen. 4) *II. Fut.* ich würde gesprochen haben.

Though the present conditional (ich spräche) is formed from the imperfect indicative (ich sprach), and the perfect conditional (ich hätte gesprochen) from the pluperfect indicative (ich hatte gesprochen), these tenses, with respect to time, agree with the present and perfect indicative respectively; e. g. wenn ich jetzt Zeit hätte, ginge ich spazieren, if I had time now, I should take a walk; wenn er vor drei Monaten in Rom gewesen wäre, hätte er seinen Bruder angetroffen, if he had been at Rome three months ago, he would have met his brother. In point of time these sentences express the same; e. g. if I *have* time etc.; if he *has been* at Rome etc.

The first future conditional (ich würde sprechen) does not, in point of time, differ from the present (ich spräche), nor the second future (ich würde gesprochen haben), from the perfect (ich hätte gesprochen). The first and second futures are, however, used especially to express conditional possibility, the condition being expressed by the present and perfect; e. g. wenn er hier wäre, würde er dich besuchen, or würde er dich besucht haben, if he were here he would pay, or he would have paid you a visit. Wenn ich etwas nützen könnte, so würde ich hier bleiben, if I could be of any good, I would remain here. Aufstehn würde Englands ganze Jugend, sähe der Britte seine Königin. (Sch.) Stünd' er ihr gegenüber, er würde sein Geständniß widerrufen. (Sch.)

In order to render an expression less positive or more polite, necessity as well as possibility is, as in English, frequently represented as only *conditional*. For this purpose the conditional moods of the auxiliary verbs of mood *müssen, sollen, wollen, and können, dürfen, mögen*, are frequently employed instead of the indicative; e. g. *du solltest* or *du müßtest ihn besuchen*, you ought to (instead of: must) pay him a visit; *ich wollte, Sie begleiteten mich*, I wished (instead of: I wish) that you would accompany me; *Sie könnten mir das wol erlauben*, you might allow me that; *ich möchte hier bleiben*, I should like to stay here. *Sollte nicht ein glückliches Naturell allein Schauspieler zum Ziele bringen? — Anfang und Ende möchte es wohl sein und bleiben; aber in der Mitte dürfte dem Künstler Manches fehlen. (G.) Schwerlich möchte sie der goldne Schlüssel schützen. (Sch.) Ich hätte längst erfahren können, wer der fremde Herr ist; aber ich mag nicht. (Lessing.) Nie hätte meine Andacht inniger sein sollen, als heute; nie ist sie weniger gewesen, was sie sein sollte. (Less.) Ich möchte schwer zu überreden sein, daß ich an Dir ein schuldvoll Haupt beschütze. (G.)*

The *conjunctive mood* expresses that the predicate is 228 not *asserted by the speaker*. It is in general used when a predicate is *quoted*, i. e. when a thought is represented as being asserted by another person; e. g. *er sagt, der Baum blühe*, he tells me that the tree is in blossom; *er glaubt, die Sonne gehe um drei Uhr auf*, he thinks that the sun rises at three o'clock; *Cäsar berichtet, er sei in Britannien gewesen*, Caesar relates that he was in Britain. *Man sagt, sie habe den Gemahl ermorden lassen (Sch.)*, they say, she caused her husband to be killed. *Er verfluchte sich, er habe falsch gezeugt, die Unglücksbriefe an Babington seien falsch, er habe andere Worte geschrieben (Sch.)*, he cursed himself, (saying) that he had borne false witness, that the unhappy letters to B. were spurious, and that he had written different words.

There is no difference in the above respect, —

whether the first predicate of a *compound* sentence relates to the subject *speaking* or whether it implies a statement relating to *another* person; e. g. du sagst, du seist gesund, you say that you are in good health; ich glaubte, er sei krank, I thought he was ill. Ich schrieb ihm, daß ich in dem Hause eines sehr guten Mannes aufgenommen sei, und mit ihm große und schöne Arbeit verfertige; ich suche was zu lernen, und hoffe, mit meiner Geschicklichkeit ihm bald Nutzen und Ehre zu bringen. (G.) Er fragte mich, wer ich sei, und ich antwortete, ich sei ein Goldschmied. (G.) The conjunctive thus being the mood of a quoted predicate, can stand only in an accessory sentence. The form of the conjunctive occurs in principal sentences however, when it is employed to supply the third person of the imperative mood, as will be explained in §. 231.

The conjunctive is also employed, as in Latin, in *final* sentences, that is to say, such as express *purpose* or *intention*, by means of the conjunctions daß *that* (Lat. *ut*), damit, auf daß, *in order that*, *for the purpose that*; e. g. ich wünsche, daß er bald genesse, I wish that he may soon recover; ich nehme Arznei, damit ich genesse, I take physic in order that I may recover; er spricht laut, damit ein Jeder ihn verstehe, he speaks loud so that everybody may hear him. The conjunctive accordingly may stand after verbs implying a hope, wish, advice, request, command, permission, fear, preventing, forbidding etc., though they are, as in English, more commonly followed by the supine.

229 The assertion quoted in the accessory sentence is, on the other hand, commonly expressed by the *indicative mood*, when it is considered as a statement of a real fact by the speaker also, and when it is not so much the assertion quoted, as rather the act of quoting, which is to be pointed out; e. g. er selbst hat gesagt, or gestanden, daß er gefehlt hat, he himself has said or confessed that he has been in fault; er will es nicht glauben, daß sein Bruder gestorben ist, he will not believe

that his brother is dead; er hat allen Leuten erzählt, daß er heirathen will, he told everybody that he is about to be married. Ihr sagtet selbst, daß er von Sinnen war. (Sch.) Könnt Ihr es leugnen, Lord, daß jene Akte zu meinem Untergang erfunden ist? (Sch.) Daß er betrogen ist, kann er nicht sehen; daß sie Betrüger sind, kann ich nicht zeigen. (G.) Habt Ihr denn jeder Ahnung Euch verschlossen, daß über Schuld und Unschuld ein rettend, rächend Wesen schwebt? (Sch.) According to this principle, the indicative is generally employed when the verb in the principal sentence implies such certainty as excludes all doubt. This is the case in wissen, erkennen to know; sehen to see; entdecken to discover; e. g. du weißt, or du siehst, daß er krank ist, you know, or you see that he is ill; er hat erkannt, daß er gefehlt hat, he has acknowledged that he has been in fault; er hat gezeigt or bewiesen, daß er gut gesinnt ist, he has shown that he is well intentioned. Wißt, daß wir auch nicht müßig sind. (Sch.) Dies Alles mahnt mich, daß ich heute von meinem Glücke scheiden muß. (Sch.) Ich weiß, daß Ihr verständig seid. (Sch.) Ich fühl's, daß ich der Mann des Schicksals bin. (Sch.) Karl V. erkannte vollkommen, daß Handel die Stärke der Nationen ist. (Sch.) Womit bezeugst du, daß du Agamemnon's Sohn bist? (G.) Ihr seht, wie mein Name gemißbraucht wird. (Sch.)

The time to which the quoted assertion is referred, 230 is always that in which it is asserted by the subject spoken of; and the quoted assertion therefore stands in the present, perfect, or future tense, according as the fact, event, or activity asserted either coincides with, precedes, or follows the assertion of the subject spoken of; e. g. er hat mir vor drei Monaten erzählt, sein Bruder sei ein reicher Mann (present), er habe ein Jahr zuvor ein großes Vermögen geerbt (past), und werde ein Gut kaufen (future), he has told me three months ago, that his brother was a rich man, that he had inherited a large fortune a twelvemonth before, and that he was to purchase an estate. In the conjunctive mood, accordingly, the historical tenses (imperfect and pluper-

fect) are not distinguished, though there be a relation to another event (§. 222); e. g. er hat erzählt, man habe den Hamlet gespielt, als er im Theater gewesen sei; er sei aber hinaus gegangen, nachdem er den ersten Akt gesehen habe, he said that Hamlet was acted when he was at the play, but that he left the theatre after having seen the first act. The quoted assertion generally stands in the present, perfect, or future tense, though the verb of the principal sentence be in the imperfect or pluperfect; e. g. er sagte, er sei krank, or er sei krank gewesen, he told me that he was ill, or had been ill. Drauf schrie er in die Gassen hinab, er sei der Schreiber der Maria, sei der Bösewicht, der sie falsch angeklagt, er sei ein falscher Zeuge. (Sch.) Er meinte, man müsse bei den Freuden der Kinder ernst scheinen. (G.) Sie behaupteten, obgleich der Lieutenant sehr viel gethan habe, so perorire er doch meist zu affectirt, dagegen spreche der junge Anfänger vortrefflich. (G.) Sie fragte, ob er noch etwas zu befehlen habe. (G.) The German practice, however, is not strictly established in this respect; and the tenses of the conditional mood also are frequently employed instead of the present and perfect of the conjunctive; e. g. er sagte, er wäre in Paris gewesen, he said that he had been at Paris. Das wären die Planeten, sagte mir mein Führer, sie regierten das Geschick. (Sch.) This is done especially when the present and perfect tenses of the conjunctive do not differ in their form from the corresponding tenses of the indicative; e. g. er sagte, ich ginge (instead of ich gehe) nach Frankfurt, he said that I was going went to Frankfort. Sie glaubten, sie würden (instead of werden) sich leicht als Helden darstellen. (G.) Er behauptete, nur ein seltenes Vergnügen könne bei den Menschen einen Werth haben; Kinder und Alte wüßten (instead of wissen) nicht zu schätzen, was ihnen Gutes begegnete. (G.) Er meinte, man müsse die Kinder nicht merken lassen, wie lieb man sie habe, sie griffen (instead of greifen) immer zu weit um sich. (G.) Ich that nach Ihrer Vorschrift, führte an, Sie hätten über unser Kind bestimmt, und möchten gern dem künftigen Gemahl noch vor dem Feldzug die Verlobte zeigen. (Sch.)

OBSERVATION. It will be seen, that the rules for the use of the conjunctive mood in German differ from those of the English language, in which an assertion quoted is commonly expressed either by the present or perfect indicative, when it stands after a verb in the present or perfect; e. g. he *tells* me, or *has told* me, that he *is* ill, or *has been* ill; — or by the imperfect or pluperfect indicative, if it stands after a verb in the imperfect or pluperfect; e. g. he *told* me, or he *had told* me, that he *was* ill, or *had been* ill. The proper manner for employing the conjunctive, accordingly, requires particular attention.

Imperative sentence.

A sentence in the *Imperative* expresses a *command* ²³¹ or *precept* etc. addressed to the person spoken to and it is *generally* speaking employed in German, as in English; e. g. *Sprich!* speak (thou)! *Sprechet!* speak (you)! *Fürchte Gott, und ehre den König!* fear God, and honour the king. The pronoun of the second person is generally omitted. But when, as is usually done, a person is addressed in the third person plural, the pronoun *Sie* *you*, must be expressed; e. g. *Sprechen Sie!*

Imperative sentences are always inverted, the verb taking the first place; e. g. *halte dich für zu gut, Böses zu thun; hänge dein Herz an kein vergängliches Ding; sage nicht Alles, was du weißt, aber wisse immer, was du sagst.* (Claudius.)

The third person of the imperative is generally supplied by that of the conjunctive mood, and then the arrangement of words is frequently not altered; e. g. *der edle Mensch sei hilfreich und gut; unermüdet schaff' er das Nützliche, Rechte.* (G.) *Gott verhüte, daß ich spaße.* (Sch.) *Gott grüß' Euch, edle Frauen.* (Sch.)

Wer reisen will,
Der schweige still,
Geh' steten Schritt,
Nehm' nicht viel mit,
(So braucht er nicht zu sorgen)
Und geh' recht früh am Morgen. (Philander.)

Wer Recht will thuen immer und mit Lust,
Der hege wahre Lieb' in Sinn und Brust. (G.)

- 232 A peculiar form of imperative expression is made in German from the passive voice of either transitive or intransitive verbs, used personally or impersonally, by which the subject is pointed out only in a general and indefinite way. Since *brevity* of expression should accompany a command in order to render it more *emphatic*, sentences are expressed *elliptically*; e. g. *ausgetrunken!* (es werde ausgetrunken), *drain your glasses!* *Degen weg!* *swords aside!* *aufgestanden!* (es werde aufgestanden), *get up! up! rise!* (or more *emphatically get up!* [*I tell you or I say*]); *an die Arbeit!* (es werde an die Arbeit gegangen), *set to work!* *Wohlauf Kameraden!* *Aufs Pferd!* *aufs Pferd!* *ins Feld,* *in die Freiheit gezogen!* — — *Frisch Kameraden,* *den Rappen gezäumt!* *die Brust zum Gefechte gelüftet!* (Sch.) *Mit Eichenlaub den Hut bekränzt!* (Claudius.)

In any very *distinct* and *implicit* command the second person *indicative* is frequently used; e. g. *du gehst so gleich!* *go directly.* *Hanna, du bleibst!* (Sch.) *Ihr schweig,* *bis man Euch aufruft!* (Sch.) When, on the other hand, the *imperative* is expressed in an *entreating manner*, so as to approach a request, the *conjunctive* mood of the auxiliary verbs *mögen* and *wollen* is frequently used; e. g. *du wollest mir verzeihen,* *please to pardon me;* *mögen Sie meiner gedenken,* *may you remember me.* *Was ich nun sprach,* *möge Niemand mich befragen.* (Sch.)

The imperative mood sometimes stands in the place of a conditional expression; e. g. *sei ohne Freund,* *wie viel verliert das Leben,* *be (= if you be) without a friend,* *and your life loses much.*

SECTION II.

SYNTAX OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE
COMBINATION.

CHAPTER VI.

All *common nouns substantive* (§. 38) being the *re-* 233
presentatives of generic notions, that is to say, such as
relate to or, comprise a whole *class* or *species*, as: *man*,
horse, *king*, they cannot at the same time express by
themselves the *particular individuals* of the class of
persons or things which they signify in general. —
The particular *kind* or *individual* must therefore be
pointed out either by an *attributive* word, i. e. a word
expressive of its peculiar qualities or relations to ano-
ther person or thing, as: a *prudent* man, a *good* horse,
a *bad* horse, *my brother's* horse, a *mighty* king, the king
of Prussia etc. — or by pointing out its relation to
the speaker. The relations of substantives to the
speaker are expressed by articles, pronouns, or nume-
rals, the use of which has been already explained in
Etymology. Here we only treat of the *Attributive pro-*
per, i. e. *substantives* or *adjectives*, used to qualify or
individualize another substantive. The connexion of a
substantive with its attributive is termed *Attributive*
combination.

Forms of the Attribute.

Different things of the same kind are distinguished 234
from each other by their different actions or qualities;
the *Attributive* combination therefore generally results
from a *Predicative* combination, previously asserting
some action or quality of a thing. Thus, from the
sentences: this man is old, this man is young, the
water boils, the horse dies, William conquered Eng-

land, my brother is in Paris, we form the **Attributive combinations**: the old man, the young man, the boiling water, the dead horse, William the conqueror, my brother in Paris. — It is obvious, therefore, that the **Attribute** will, in general, assume the same forms, as the **Predicate** (§. 195); namely, it is expressed by:

- 1) an adjective (or participle used *adjectively*),
- 2) a substantive (in *apposition*), agreeing in gender, number, and case,
- 3) a substantive in the genitive case,
- 4) a substantive with a preposition *),
- 5) the preposition *zu cum infinitivo*.

OBSERVATION. Adverbs *alone* are in general not employed as attributes. The adverbs: *allein alone, only, beinahe nearly, fast almost, kaum scarcely, nur only, ungefähr about*, are however to be considered as attributes, when connected with a substantive, as in: *Gott allein, beinahe ein Jahr, fast das ganze Volk, kaum die Hälfte, nur die Hälfte, ungefähr ein Jahr*.

Sometimes a substantive is qualified or individualized by a whole *accessory* sentence (§. 27); as: the man *who was here yesterday*, the horse *which I bought*, a king *who governs with prudence* etc. Such attributive accessory sentences, standing in the room of an adjective, are termed *Adjective accessory sentences*. They are explained in Chapter XVII.

Attributive Adjective.

235 The attributive adjective relates to a substantive either *expressed* or *understood* and agrees with its substantive in gender, number and case. It is generally placed before its substantive as in English.

*) The English and German languages often employ different attributive forms in expressing the same idea. Such are:

the rest of the day	der übrige Tag,
" " " " family	die übrige Familie,
" " " " money	das übrige Geld &c.
plenty of time	viel Zeit,
houses of their own	eigene Häuser,
a man of easy access	ein zugänglicher Mann &c.

Ein kleiner Mann, ein großes Pferd, ein kurzer Arm, ein langes Schwert, muß eins dem andern helfen (Uhl.). Der Große wird er wieder, der er war (Sch.) (he will again become the great (*man*) that he was before). Was ist der langen Rede kurzer Sinn? (Sch.) Wo die hohen Eichen sausen, wo die starken Ströme brausen, alles das ist deutsches Land (Schenkendorf). Es klingt ein heller Klang, ein schönes, deutsches Wort in jedem Hochgesang der deutschen Männer fort; das ist der heil'ge Rhein &c. id. Süßes Wasser und guter Rath sind oft zu Schiffe theuer (Uhl.).

The following adjectives are never employed as Attributes: bereit ready, feind hostile, gar made, done, gänge und gebe current, eingedenk mindful of, getrost of good cheer, gram bearing hatred, kund known, leid distressing, nuß useful.

When an attributive adjective still retains that as- 236serting power, originally peculiar to the predicate, it is placed after its substantive and, being considered as the predicate of an abridged sentence, is not inflected. Common prose admits of this construction only when the adjective is to be further explained by an object, and when it is in the nom. or acc. case; e. g. mein Vater, mäßig aus Gewohnheit, hatte nicht gern Gastmähler, my father (who was), frugal by habit, did not like feasts; die Mutter, umgeben von ihren Kindern, the mother (who is) surrounded by her children; sie hat ein Herz voll Empfindung, she has a heart full of feeling.

In all other cases the adjective must be placed before its substantive, or transformed into an accessory sentence; e. g. the army enjoyed good cheer in a country so much richer than their own, in einem Lande, das so viel reicher war als ihr eigenes; since time immemorial, seit undenklichen Zeiten; times gone by, vergangene Zeiten; on a morning appointed, an einem bestimmten Morgen; your ardour is the natural effect of virtue animated by youth, Ihr Eifer ist die natürliche Wirkung der Tugend, die durch Jugend belebt wird.

OBSERVATION. In poetry this construction is more usual; as: die Rüstung blank — ein Röslein roth — manchet Ritter werth — ein Eber wild (Uhl.). Die Blicke, frei und fessellos, ergehen sich in ungemessnen Räumen (Sch.). Und ein Edelknecht, sanft und feck, tritt aus der Knappen jagendem Chor (Sch.). Even the adjective, preceding its substantive, is sometimes not inflected in poetry; as in: Jung Siegfried, Klein Roland (Uhl.).

An adjective may stand alone in German when its substantive, is understood; the adjective then takes the case of the substantive which it represents; as in: Er hat zwei Söhne; den älteren (accus.) läßt er studiren; der jüngere (nom.) soll die Handlung lernen. Ich hatt' einen Kameraden; einen bessern find'st du nicht (Uhl.).

Apposition.

237 When a substantive constitutes the *attribute* of another substantive, it is termed a substantive in *Apposition*, agreeing with the first in gender, number and case; e. g. Wilhelm der Eroberer, William the conqueror; Gustav Wrangel, Oberst vom blauen Regimente Südermannland (Sch.). Auf der Hochzeit meines gnädigen Herrn, des Pfalzgrafen (G.).

The *substantive* in *apposition* in some cases may represent or be equivalent to a sentence pronounced by the speaker; e. g. Ein Schwert, das Zeichen des Krieges (Sch.), a sword, the token of war (= is the token etc.). — Tilly, Euer letzter Hort (Sch.), Tilly, your last protection (= he is your last protection).

Adjectives also and ordinal numerals are used as substantives in apposition to distinguish *proper names* from each other; as: Friedrich der Große, Frederick the great; Friedrich der Weise, Frederick the wise; Karl der Große, Charlemagne; Karl der Fünfte, Charles the fifth.

In poetry all substantives (not only *nouns proper*, *Nomina propria*) may take their adjective after them, by way of a substantive *in apposition*, when the adjective is to be pointed out emphatically; as in: Niemand, als Du, soll diesen Krieg, den fürchterlichen, enden (Sch.). Das Böse, das der Mann, der mündige, dem

Manne zuzügt, vergibt sich schwer (Sch.). Erspare dir die Qual der Trennung, der nothwendigen (Sch.).

The names of towns, countries and months are constructed like substantives in apposition, without the preposition *of*; as: die Stadt Rom, the city *of* Rome; das Königreich Preußen, the kingdom *of* Prussia; der Monat Mai, the month *of* May; die Universität Göttingen, the university *of* Gottingen. 238

When one of the two substantives joined by apposition is a proper name, it is not declined; e. g. die Macht des Kaisers Karl, the power of the emperor Charles, des Prinzen Eugen, of Prince Eugen; des Herrn Müller, of Mr. Mueller.

When however the first substantive is only to be considered as a title, and has no article, it is not declined; and in this case the proper name must be declined; e. g. Doctor Gall's Vorlesungen, the lectures of Dr. Gall; Kaiser Karl's Heere, the armies of emperor Charles, Herzog Albrecht's Gemahlin, the wife of duke Albrecht.

Attributive substantive in the Genitive case.

A substantive, qualifying or individualizing another substantive, and connected with it by the preposition *of*, is in German put in the *Genitive case*; as: der Zug des Heeres, the march of the army; der Lauf der Sonne, the course of the sun; der Garten des Fürsten, the garden of the prince; die Krone des Königs, the crown of the king; der Hut des Knaben, the hat of the boy; der Vater des Mädchens, the father of the girl; der Diener meines Bruders, the servant of my brother; das Dach des Hauses, the roof of the house; der Gipfel eines Baumes, the top of a tree; des Volkes Stimme ist Gottes Stimme. *Proverb.* Wallenstein drückt des Kaisers Länder mit des Kaisers Heer (Sch.). Die Gnade der Großen, die Gunst der Gewaltigen, die Förderung der Thätigen, die Neigung der Menge, die Liebe der Einzelnen, Alles wandelt auf und nieder, ohne daß wir es festhalten können (G.). 239

OBSERVATION. When the attribute is expressed by a verb in the infinitive, as: the pleasure *of seeing* you. He conceived hopes *of obtaining* his freedom etc., the infinitive in German is not put in the Genitive case, but takes the preposition *zu* (which form is termed *Supine* §. 67; see §. 346); e. g. die Freude, Sie *zu* sehen; er faßte die Hoffnung, seine Freiheit *zu* gewinnen.

240 The preposition *von* *of* is employed instead of the Genitive case in the following instances:

1) Whenever the Genitive case cannot be pointed out by inflection, either in the attributive substantive itself or by the article. Thus we are obliged to say: ein Vater *von* zehn Kindern, a father of ten children, because the Genitive case, zehn Kinder, in no way differs from the nominative; whilst adding the article (the father of *the* ten children), it will be: der Vater der zehn Kinder. For the same reason we say: die Nähe *von* Städten, the vicinity of towns: but: die Nähe der (or einer) Stadt, the vicinity of the (or a) town; die Lage *von* Paris, the situation of Paris; but: Rom's Lage, the situation of Rome. Die theure Frucht *von* dreißig Kriegesjahren (Sch.). Man hat mich vor ein Gericht *von* Männern vorgesfordert (Sch.). Ich gehe zum Bischof *von* Constanz (G.).

Proper names of persons and abstracts, however, although they generally require no article, by themselves, take the article, in order to point out the Genitive case by inflection; e. g. die Schätze des Croesus, the treasures of Croesus. Sucht die Verräther in des Gallas Lager (Sch.), in the camp of Gallas. Zerriß er mit den Fesseln der Furcht nur nicht die Zügel der Scham (Sch.). Es blühet Tugend aus der Tugend Samen (G.).

2) *Names of towns and countries* generally take the preposition *von*, although the Genitive case might be expressed by inflection; e. g. der König *von* Frankreich, die Königin *von* England, die Straßen *von* Wien, die Einwohner *von* London, die Straße *von* Gibraltar.

3) *Attributes expressing the quality or material* of a thing, always take the preposition *von*; as: ein Pferd

von weißer Farbe, a horse of white colour; ein Geschäft von Wichtigkeit, a business of importance; ein Mann von Ansehen, a man of consequence; ein Mann von Ihrem Schlage, a man of your cast; eine Sache von geringem Werth, a matter of little value; ein Ring von Gold, a ring of gold; eine Tafel von Marmor, a tablet of marble.

Partitive genitive.

The Genitive case of a substantive, depending on a pronoun or numeral or adjective in the superlative degree, is termed *Partitive genitive*; as: Keiner meiner Freunde, none of my friends; eine der merkwürdigsten Begebenheiten, one of the most remarkable occurrences; der älteste meiner Brüder, the eldest of my brothers.

This form of expression is more usual in German 241 than in English; it is frequently used to point out emphatically the pronoun, numeral or adjective in the superlative degree; as: Der wackern Männer kenn' ich viele dort (Sch.). Sechszig bis siebenzig der Zurückbleibenden übergaben dem Rathe eine Bittschrift (Sch.). Du sendest mir der Schmerzen viel (Uhl.). Voran dem Zuge schwärmten der muntern Kinder viel (Uhl.). Wir haben so der guten Freunde wenig (Sch.). Wir Menschen beklagen uns oft, daß der guten Tage so wenig sind und der schlimmen so viel, und meist mit Unrecht (G.). Auch im Lager gibt es der braven Männer genug (Sch.). Es sei genug der Gräuel (Sch.).

The *partitive genitive* is especially retained in the following and similar expressions: 'Wer und was Anders'? *who and what else?* 'Wo anders', *where else?* and 'anderswo', *elsewhere*; 'viel, wenig, mehr Gutes', *much, little, more good*; 'etwas Schönes', *something beautiful*; 'nichts Neues', *nothing new* *).

The *partitive genitive* is also used in connection with

*) In the two last examples however, the *indefinite* pronoun may likewise be looked upon as an *adjective pronoun*, and consequently 'Schönes', 'Neues' would no longer be considered as *partitive genitives*.

a *superlative*, especially if the latter is *emphatic* or forms a *prominent* part of the sentence: Verweigre nicht Gerechtigkeit und Gnade dem Letzten Deines Volkes (Sch.) (*do not refuse justice and grace to the last [person] of thy people*). — Dein unglücksel'ger Vorwitz übereilt die fürchterlichste der Entdeckungen (G.) (*your unfortunate inquisitiveness hurries on the most fearful of discoveries*).

The *partitive genitive* in *English* is sometimes dependent on the latent notion of 'some' (etwas); e. g. 'to drink *of* the brook (= *of its waters*); we find similar instances in German, although chiefly in *scriptural* language only; e. g. 'Er trank des Baches' (1 Kings, 17, 6).

The preposition *von* is frequently used instead of the *partitive genitive*; and in particular, it must be employed in all those cases which do not admit of a transposition into a common attributive combination; e. g. Wer *von* uns? which of us? einer *von* uns, one of us*); die Meisten *von* uns, most of us all; Jeder *von* Euch, each of you. Wer kömmt noch *von* den Andern? (Sch.), which of the others is still to come? Der treueste *von* meinen Freunden (Sch.). *Von* den Spaniern waren gegen achthundert, *von* den Niederländern etliche Tausend auf dem Platz geblieben, und auf beiden Seiten wurden viele *von* dem vornehmsten Adel vermißt (Sch.).

242 The attributive substantive is not declined, nor is the preposition *von* (*of*) admitted in the following cases:

1) In the *dates of the months*; as: der erste Mai, the first of May; der zweite April, the second of April; der fünfte August, the fifth of August.

2) After names of *measure, weight or number*; as: eine Flasche Wein, a bottle of wine; ein Scheffel Korn, a bushel of corn; eine Elle Tuch, a yard of cloth; ein Pfund Brod, a pound of bread; ein Zentner Kohlen, a hundred-weight of coals; ein Duzend Eier, a dozen of eggs; ein Paar Äpfel, a couple of apples; ein Regiment Soldaten, a regiment of soldiers; ein Buch Papier, a quire of paper;

*) Unser einer signifies: a man of our condition.

ein Bund Federn, a bundle (25) of pens; ein Stück Zucker, a lump of sugar; eine Reihe Zähne, a set of teeth.

These names of measure etc. are, in a manner, considered as numerals, preceding substantives; therefore the name of the thing measured is sometimes declined when preceded by a preposition, whilst the name of the measure is not declined; e. g. mit drei Paar Schuhen (Dat.), with three pair of shoes; von zwei Duzend Eiern, of two dozen of eggs; mit einer Menge Kindern (Dat.), with a number of children. Ein Paar is always indeclinable when it means a few; e. g. in ein Paar Tagen, in a few days; mit ein Paar Worten, in a few words.

The following substantives are constructed in the same way:

Art, *kind, sort*; e. g. es gibt viele Arten Thiere, there are many kinds of animals; Pünktlichkeit ist eine Art Beständigkeit, punctuality is a species of constancy.

Stück, *piece*; e. g. ein Stück Holz, a piece of wood, ein Stück Geld, a piece of money; ein Stück Land, a piece of land.

Haufen, *heap*; e. g. ein Haufen Steine, a heap of stones; ein Haufen Geld, a great deal of money.

Menge, *number, mass*; e. g. eine Menge Menschen sind gestorben, a great many men died; er hat eine Menge (or Summe) Geld verloren, he lost a great sum of money.

Eine Prise Taback, a pinch of snuff.

When however the name of a thing measured has an attributive adjective connected with it, it frequently stands in the genitive case; e. g. eine Menge fröhlicher Kinder, a number of happy children; ein halbes Duzend guter Freunde (Sch.), half a dozen good friends; dreitausend Mann spanischer Truppen, three thousand Spanish troops.

Construction of the Attributive Genitive.

The *attributive genitive* denotes, in general, the *attributive* as being productive of a certain effect; e. g. 243

der Glanz der Sonne (the brightness of the sun, i. e. *radiating* from the sun); der Fleiß des Schülers (the diligence of [= *displayed* by] the pupil).

The attributive substantive in the genitive case for the most part follows the substantive to which it refers. Sometimes however it precedes it, and in this case the other substantive has no article, as in English; e. g. meines Vaters Haus, my father's house; seines Bruders Kinder, his brother's children; des (Gen.) Königs Mutter, the king's mother. An Gottes Segen ist Alles gelegen. Des Volkes Stimme ist Gottes Stimme. *Proverb.*

This construction is more usual in German, than in English, being frequently employed in order to point out one of the two substantives emphatically; as in: Ihr nennt euch fremd in Englands Reichsgesetzen, in Englands Unglück seid ihr wohl bewandert (Sch.). Schön ist des Mondes liebliche Klarheit unter der Sterne blickendem Glanz, schön ist der Mutter liebliche Hoheit zwischen der Söhne feurriger Kraft (Sch.). O! was ist Goldes, was Juwelen Schein, womit der Erde Könige sich schmücken! (Sch.)

Attributive substantive with a preposition.

244 Various prepositions are used in German, as in English, to express particular attributive relations, with respect to which the following observations will be found sufficient.

A great number of abstract substantives require the same preposition as the verbs from which they are derived, as will appear from the following comparison

ich denke an Gott	der Gedanke an Gott
I think of God,	the thought of God,
ich durste nach Ruhm	der Durst nach Ruhm
I thirst after fame,	thirst after fame,
ich fürchte mich vor Gefahr	die Furcht vor Gefahr
I fear danger,	the fear of danger,
ich vertraue auf meine Macht	das Vertrauen auf meine Macht
I confide in my power,	confidence in my power,

ich sorge für die Kinder	die Sorge für die Kinder
I take care of the children,	care of the children,
ich klage über Ungerechtigkeit	die Klage über Ungerechtigkeit
I complain of injustice,	the complaint of injustice,
ich reise nach Paris	die Reise nach Paris
I go to Paris,	the journey to Paris,
es mangelt an Geld	der Mangel an Geld
there is want of money,	want of money.

In the same manner we say: die Schlacht bei Leipzig, the battle of Leipzig; der Sieg bei Waterloo, the victory of Waterloo; der Bund gegen Frankreich, the confederacy against France; die Anhänglichkeit an den König, the adherence to the king; ein Kampf auf Leben und Tod, a combat for life and death. Die Furcht vor der Macht des Ministers überwog den Abscheu vor seiner Verwaltung (Sch.). Die Verbindung der Niederlande mit dem deutschen Reiche (Sch.). Es schmerzt mich, Deinen Glauben an den Mann zu stürzen (Sch.), &c.

OBSERVATION. We say also in order to avoid ambiguity: die Liebe zu Gott, zu dem Vaterlande, der Haß gegen den Feind, love *towards* God etc., which is different from die Liebe Gottes, the love of God etc.

Concrete substantives likewise are frequently followed by prepositions, as in English, if a verb governing this preposition is understood; e. g. der Dom zu Cöln, the cathedral (standing) at Cologne; mein Bruder in London, my brother (living) in London; Frankfurt am Main, Frankfort on the Main.

The preposition *to* is sometimes employed in English as a sign of the Dative case, in expressions such as: a friend or relation *to* this person, an enemy *to* the country. In German the *genitive* is used in similar expressions: ein Freund or Verwandter dieses Menschen, ein Feind des Landes.

Attributive combination expressed by compounds.

Substantives connected with an attribute in such a 245 manner as to be adopted as usual denominations of

particular kinds of things, are generally rendered in German by *compound* substantives. Such are:

matter of fact	Thatsache,
order of battle	Schlachtordnung,
field of battle	Schlachtfeld,
man of business	Geschäftsmann,
right of royalty	Majestätsrecht,
day of marriage	Hochzeitstag,
love of truth	Wahrheitsliebe,
swarm of bees	Bienenschwarm,
wreath of flowers	Blumenkranz,
art of printing	Buchdruckerkunst,
„ „ dancing	Tanzkunst,
„ „ poetry	Dichtkunst,
„ „ war	Kriegskunst,
bridge of boats	Schiffbrücke,
drop of blood	Blutstropfen,
maid of honour	Ehrendame,
tax on dogs	Hundesteuer,
box on the ear	Ohrfeige,
dealer in glass	Glashändler,
„ „ works of art	Kunsthändler,
stable for horses	Pferdestall,
stall for sheep	Schafstall,
baker to the court	Hofbäcker,
chaplain to the prince	Hosprediger,
coat for the summer	Sommerrock,
„ „ „ winter	Winterrock,
civil war	Bürgerkrieg,
religious zeal	Religionsseifer,
„ liberty	Religionsfreiheit,
„ contention	Religionsstreit or -krieg,
privy counsellor	Hofrath,
a crooked mind	Querkopf,
a fainting fit	eine Ohnmacht,
public spirit	Gemeinsinn,
etc.	etc.

SECTION III.

SYNTAX OF THE OBJECTIVE COMBINATION.

CHAPTER VII.

CLASSIFICATION OF OBJECTS.

In the same manner, as the *generic* idea of a being, 246 expressed by a *substantive*, is limited by an *attribute*, in order to express a particular *kind* or *individual* (§. 233), the generic idea of an *action*, expressed by a *verb* or *adjective*, is likewise limited and explained by its *objects*. Every word, or connection of words, or accessory sentence, added to a verb or adjective, in order to determine or limit its sense, is termed its *Object*; and the connection itself of a verb or adjective with its object is termed *Objective combination*.

There is a great variety of forms of expression, adopted in different languages for the particular objects; and in the use of these forms the German language differs very materially from the English. The German language distinguishes by means of distinct *cases* of the substantive, as well as by various *prepositions*, particular kinds of *objective relations*, which are not distinguished in the same manner in *English*. Attention therefore is to be paid to the difference of the German and English *idiom* with regard to the forms, by which the different kinds of objective relations are expressed.

All objects are either Completing, or Adverbial.

A great number of verbs and adjectives are of such 247 a nature as to require an object, which must be added in order to express a *complete* predicate. Thus, for instance, the predicates: *he makes, he gives, he rejoices,*

he asks, are *incomplete*, unless an *object* be added stating what the subject alluded to, is *making*, *giving* etc.; as: he makes clocks, he gives *lessons*, he rejoices *at his good luck*, he asks *the price* of something etc. Such objects, completing the predicate, are termed *Completing objects* (thus for instance, '*clocks*' is a *completing object* of *he makes*). And verbs or adjectives, requiring such an object, are termed *Objective verbs* or *adjectives*. Those, on the contrary, which do *not* require such an object, as: *he sleeps*, *he dies*, *he is ill* etc., are termed *Subjective verbs* or *adjectives*.

All those objects, which are not required, in order to form a complete predicate, but merely express particular circumstances, relative to *place*, *time*, *manner* etc., are termed *Adverbial objects*; e. g. he sleeps *during the day*, he sleeps *in his brother's bed*, he died *on Sunday*.

Adverbial objects may also be added to *objective* verbs; e. g. he is making clocks *all the year round*, he gives lessons *every day* etc.

- 248 The distinction, made between *objective* and *subjective* predicates, does not so much depend upon the verb or adjective itself, as upon the *meaning*, attached to it in any particular case. It frequently occurs that the same verb in one signification requires an object and accordingly is *objective*, whilst when used in a different sense, it expresses by itself a complete notion, and consequently is *subjective*. Thus, for instance, in saying: the earth moves, *to move* means: *to be in motion*, and is a *subjective* verb; but in: I move my head, the same verb means *to put into motion*, and is *objective*. The same may be observed in comparing the following sentences.

Predicate a) subjective.

The house is burning,
Money is wanting,
The glass will break,
The tree grows,

b) objective.

They burned the house,
I want money,
I will break the glass,
The man grows rich,

The army encamped, He encamped his troops,
 The ship sinks, He sinks the ship,
 He did not speak (utter He did not speak (make
 words), mention) of him,
 He speeded (made haste), God speed you!

A. COMPLETING OBJECTS.

There are four kinds of completing objects, viz.

249

*the Suffering *) Object,*
the Personal Object,
the Genitive Object,
the Factitive Object.

The *suffering* object is expressed by the *Accusative* case, the *personal* object by the *Dative* case, the *genitive* object by the *Genitive* case or by *prepositions*; the *factitive* object is in the *nominative* or *accusative* case or takes a *preposition*.

Suffering object.

The *suffering object* is that object which stands with all *transitive verbs*. The action, expressed by these verbs, is conceived as having an effect upon the object; as in: he kills his dog, he builds a house, the shepherd tends his flock, she bought a book, the horse threw off his rider etc. All these objects (dog, house etc.) conceived as suffering the action (of killing, building etc.), must be in the accusative case.

Personal object.

The *suffering* object is in general *inactive*. When, 250
 on the contrary, the object is considered as an active being (as a person), the action of which corresponds with the action of the subject, it mostly is in the *Dative* case and is termed *Personal object*. There are

*) *Germ.* (leidend) so called as it receives or *suffers* the action of the *subject*.

indeed a great number of actions, which cannot be conceived by the mind without a corresponding action of another person, as: to obey and to command, to give and to receive, to precede and to follow. One cannot obey or give or precede, if there is not an other person commanding, receiving or following and vice versa. The person, then, to whom the verb directly or indirectly relates, is put in the Dative case. The English language, having lost the original declension of the Dative case, does not distinguish the personal and suffering objects in so decided a manner as the German language; sometimes, however, the preposition *to* is employed to express the Personal object, as in: the aid shall instantly be rendered *to you*; William has taught that song *to our Dick*; the house was known *to none* but some officers; but in general the Dative case is not expressed. In German also it occurs that an object, al though conceived as *active*, is put in the accusative case; see §. 260 etc. *).

On the other hand, it is not necessary that the personal object should always be a *person*; provided only that the meaning of the predicate requires a personal object; thus, *to give, to assist, to listen*, must necessarily

*) A clearer and more simple mode perhaps of setting forward this point, will be, to introduce the *terminology* adopted, in this respect, in *Greek and Latin Grammars*, which distinguish between the 'nearer' and the 'more distant' object (das näher und entferntere Objekt). In the phrase: '*docere aliquem artem*', for example, the *thing* taught would be the 'nearer' object; the person *to* whom it is (= *who is*) taught, the 'more distant' object. The same in *διδάσκουσι τοὺς παῖδας σωροσύνην*, the second accusative (denoting the *thing* that is taught) is the *nearer* and *τοὺς παῖδας* (the *persons* taught) denotes the 'more distant' object. The above may be extended to the following, as well as phrases of a similar description; e. g. *λαμβάνω τὴν ἀσπίδα*, *I take the shield*; here *ἀσπίδα* is the 'nearer' object; but if we join an accessory notion attended by a preposition and say: *λαμβάνω τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπὸ τοῦ πασσάλου*, *I take the shield from the nail*, the latter would be termed the 'more distant' object (cf. *Bulmann*, Syntax §. 129 — 131. Note of the present editor).

have a personal object. Nevertheless it is said: To give variety *to our amusements* the girls sang to the guitar. It is necessary and of avail *to all our other faculties*. To listen with credulity *to the whispers of fancy*, — and *amusements, faculties, whispers*, are to be considered as personal objects, and put in the Dative case.

Genitive object.

The relation of the Genitive object is opposed both 251 to that of the *personal* and *suffering* objects. The genitive object, though not being really active, exercises an influence upon the subject, the result of which is expressed by the predicate. Thus in saying: the man boasts of his vices, the vices, though performing no action by themselves, still are conceived as *making the man boast*. In: he spoke of his friend, the friend is not considered as an *active* person (as it would be in: he spoke *to* his friend), nor as being influenced by the action, but as the object occasioning the subject to speak. The genitive object is in English expressed by the prepositions, *of, at, for, from, in, on, upon, with* etc.; as: he complains of your behaviour, he gazes at the flowers, he longs for liberty, he recovers *from* his illness, this country abounds *in* metals, they conversed *on* that subject, he prides himself *upon* being a good scholar, I am content *with* you etc. In German the same relations are expressed by the *genitive* case, which however is frequently supplied by various prepositions.

Factitive object.

When the effect which the predicate has either upon 252 the *suffering* object or upon the subject itself, is expressed by a completing object, this object is termed *Factitive object* *).

*) It is necessary to introduce into English grammar this new term, adopted by the modern German grammarians, because the particular relation expressed by it is totally different from all other objective relations, with which it has

If we say: '*he converted water into wine*', '*water*' is the object suffering the conversion, and the effect which this conversion has upon the water, is expressed by the Factitive object *into wine*. Or in: he will make his son a merchant; *the son* is the suffering object, and his becoming *a merchant*, is the effect of it; therefore *a merchant* is the Factitive object.

If the predicate is an *intransitive* or *passive* verb, the subject itself will be affected by the action, the effect of which is expressed by the Factitive object; e. g. water was changed *into wine*, he grows *old*, he remains *a child*, he becomes *a merchant*.

It is, in general, indifferent whether the effect, caused by the action, is a real fact or merely an assertion, conceived by the understanding as an effect of the action. Thus in saying: I took him *for his brother*, he has not *in reality* become his brother by my mistake, but the opinion (assertion), that he was his brother, is an effect of this mistake. The same is the case in the following sentences: I think him a fool (I think, that he is a fool), he is considered *a fool*; he seems *to be very rich* etc.

- 253 OBSERVATION. — The use of particular cases and prepositions depends not so much on the nature of the relation in itself, as on the manner in which it is *conceived by the mind*, or was conceived at that period, when the form in which it is now expressed, was first adopted in language. This accounts for the different forms frequently employed in different languages, and even in one and the same language, in order to express the same kinds of relation.

hitherto been confounded. The factitive expresses, what the subject or a suffering object *becomes* or is *thought to be*, by which it is easily distinguished from the suffering object in such sentences, as: he writes *a letter*, he builds *a house*, they made *peace* etc. On the other hand, the factitive expresses a *completing* object, by which it is distinguished from an object expressing purpose (see §. 317); e. g. he travels *for pleasure*, he works *for money*.

The human race, when still in their childhood, were more sensitive and felt themselves to a greater extent depending on and acted upon by the objective nature; it was only by the progress of intellectual cultivation that man was taught to subdue nature and use it for his own purposes. In *ancient* languages, accordingly, a greater number of objects are conceived as influencing the subject in an active way, and consequently expressed in the Genitive case, whilst modern languages, considering almost every thing as suffering from the energy of the subject, generally prefer the accusative case. The English language, in particular, has a predominant tendency of constructing all objects as *suffering objects in the accusative case*. The German and French languages, on the contrary, formed at an earlier period, afford many instances of constructions different from the English; they like to personify every thing and to attribute life and action even to *inanimate* beings. Hence the great difference between these languages, as to the use of the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative cases.

B. ADVERBIAL OBJECTS.

There are five kinds of adverbial objects, viz.

254

- the object of Locality,*
- ” ” ” *Time,*
- ” ” ” *Manner,*
- ” ” ” *Causality,*
- ” ” ” *Co-existence.*

There is no difficulty in distinguishing these different objects, in respect to which the following remarks will be sufficient.

The objects of *locality* and *time* express the place and time, in which an action is performed; e. g. I met him *in the street yesterday*.

The object of *locality* is sometimes necessary for

completing the predicate; e. g. he put the money *in his pocket*, he sends a letter *to England*, he goes *to church*, the palace stood *on an eminence*. It is then termed *completing object of Locality* *).

The *object of manner* qualifies the *predicate*, by expressing a particular kind of action, opposed to another one; e. g. he speaks *distinctly*, or *indistinctly*, he swore *falsely*, he works *with pleasure* etc.

Causality comprehends the *cause* and *condition* as well as the *motive* or *purpose* of an action; e. g. he suffers *from cold*, he gives alms *out of vanity*, she wept *for joy*, I did it *for your sake* etc.

The term *co-existence* relates to that object which expresses any *circumstance* or *action*, co-incident in time with the action expressed by the *predicate*, without, however, defining either the time or the manner of the action; e. g. he said it *in my presence*, he went out *with his head uncovered*, I looked round about me *with pleasing terror*.

The object of co-existence is easily known by its admitting of a transformation into a co-ordinated sentence; as: he said it, *and I was present*, he went out, *and his head was uncovered*, I looked about me, *and felt a pleasing terror* etc.

- 255 It will be of great use to the pupil, in order to make himself acquainted with the classification of objects introduced in this grammar, to make an analysis of what he wishes to translate into German, in the following manner:

*) The completing object of locality in German takes a different place in the arrangement of the objects, from that which is not completing, as will be explained §. 290 seq. and for this reason it is important to distinguish whether the object of locality is *completing* or *not*. Both objects however, being expressed by the same prepositions or adverbs, shall be combined under the head of Adverbial objects.

1 A stag	} Access. sentence Attr. of 1.	Subject of 6. Subject of 3. Predicate of 2. Object of 3 (suffering). Adverbial object of loc. of 3.
2 who		
3 was quenching		
4 his thirst		
5 in a clear lake		
6 was struck		
7 with the beauty		
8 of his horns		
9 which		
10 were reflected		
11 in the water		
1 At the same time	} Access. sentence Attr. of 8.	Predicate of 1. Compl. object, Genitive of 6. Attribute of 7. Subject of 10. Predicate of 9. Adverbial object of loc. of 10. Adverbial object of time of 3. Subject of 3. Predicate of 2. Attribute of 5. Compl. suffering object of 3. Attribute of 5. Predicate of 2. Subject of 9. Predicate of 8.
2 he		
3 observed		
4 the extreme		
5 slenderness		
6 of his legs		
7 an said:		
8 It		
9 is a pity		

10 that so fine a creature	} Access. sentence	Subject of 11.
11 is furnished		
12 with such despicable	} Subject of 9.	Attribute of 13.
13 spindleshanks!		
1 What a noble		Attribute of 2.
2 animal		Predicate of 3.
3 I		Subject of 2, 4.
4 should be		Predicate of 3.
5 if my legs	} Access. sentence det. obj. of caus. of 2 — 4.	Subject of 6.
6 corresponded		Predicate of 5.
7 with my horns		Compl. pers. object of 6.
1 { In the midst of		Adverbial object of time, of 3.
2 { this soliloquy		Subject of 3.
3 was alarmed		Predicate of 2.
4 with the cry		Compl. object genitive 3.
5 of some hounds.		Attribute of 4.

He immediately bounded over the forest and left his pursuers far behind. He might have escaped; but suddenly his horns became entangled in the branches, where he was held, till the hounds came up and tore him in pieces. In his last moments he exclaimed: How ill do we judge of our true advantage! The legs which I despised would have borne me away in safety, had not my horns betrayed me to ruin.

Arrangement of Objects.

All objects are in general placed before the pre- 256
dicate not conjugated, and if they refer to a verb or
adjective which is not predicate, they stand before this
verb or adjective; as in:

I have seen my father, *ich habe meinen Vater gesehen*;
I have seen him yesterday, *ich habe ihn gestern gesehen*;
he immediately entered the room, *er trat sogleich in die
Stube* (place of the pred. not conj.); he has been at
church, *er ist in der Kirche gewesen*; he is at church, *er
ist in der Kirche*; I shall never forget him, *ich werde ihn
nie vergessen*; to see my father, *meinen Vater zu sehen*;
seing my father, *meinen Vater sehend*; shouting with joy,
vor Freude jauchzend etc.

When, however, the object is expressed by an *acces-
sory sentence*, or by the *supine* of a verb, enlarged by
some other objects, it is generally placed after the
predicate not conjugated; e. g. he has learned Greek
in order to read Homer, *er hat Griechisch gelernt, um den
Homer zu lesen*; I have told him, that I would come to-
morrow, *ich habe ihm gesagt, daß ich morgen kommen würde*;
I am glad to see you, *ich bin froh, Sie zu sehen*; in a
few months I shall be able to converse with the learned
men, *ich werde in einigen Monaten im Stande sein, mit
den Gelehrten zu verkehren*; some were unwilling to teach
another what they had with difficulty learned them-
selves, *Einige waren nicht geneigt, einen Anderen zu lehren,
was sie selbst mit Mühe gelernt hatten*.

When there are two or more objects connected with 257
the same predicate in different relations, they are ar-
ranged according to their greater or less importance,
depending both upon the signification of the words by
themselves, and upon the different kinds of objective
relation in which they stand to the predicate. In this
respect the *principal* object must be distinguished from
the *subordinate* objects. That object is to be considered
as principal, which qualifies the predicate in such a

manner as to express a particular kind of action; e. g. to go to bed, to go on horseback, to go home, to take a cold, to catch fire, to give occasion, to give notice, to rouse suspicion, to grow old, to grow sick etc. Those objects, on the contrary, which serve merely to individualize the action by referring it to an individual place, time, person or thing, are subordinate objects; e. g. he goes to bed at 11 o' clock; he went home *alone*, I took a cold *last night*, he gave *me* notice of it, he was taken ill *from fatigue* etc. The *principal object* is always known by its taking the principal *accent* in German as well as in English; but the arrangement of objects in German is, in most cases, contrary to that used in English, as will appear from the following rules.

258 *The principal object always follows the subordinate object; e. g. er geht um 11 Uhr zu Bett. Er ging allein nach Hause. Ich habe gestern Abend einen Schnupfen bekommen. Er wurde von der Ermüdung krank u.; and in particular the different objects are arranged in the following way:*

1. Adverbial object of time.
2. " " " locality.
3. " " " causality.
4. " " " co - existence.
5. Completing personal object (Dative).
6. " suffering " (Accusative).
7. Adverb of modality, or negation.
8. Object of manner.
9. Completing object of locality, or Genitive or Factitive object.

Ich habe am Sonntag (1) in der Kirche (2) eine gute Predigt (6) gehört. Er hat aus Vorsicht (3) seinem Sohne (5) viel Geld (6) gegeben. Bappenheim starb am folgenden Tage (1) zu Leipzig (2) an seinen Wunden (9). (Sch.) Die Inquisition sollte ihr Amt (6) mit Gerechtigkeit und Mäßigung (8) verwalten. (Sch.) Die Inquisition hat ihr Amt (6)

nicht (7) mit Gerechtigkeit (8) verwaltet. Wir haben in den Tagen unsers Glücks (1) dem Schmeichler (5) ein zu willig Ohr (6) geliehen. (Sch.) Der Fürst will die Armee (6) zum Feind (9) hinüberführen. (Sch.) Er war Tags vorher (1) nach Bamberg (9) geritten. (G.) Die Zeichen, die mir das arme Herz (6) mit Freude (9) füllen. (G.) Trözene hat bereits (1) den Hippolyt (6) als Herrscher (9) anerkannt. (Sch.) Du sollst in diesen Tagen (1) überall (2) mit Freuden (4) meine Künste (6) sehn. (G.) Friedrich V. tröstete sich einige Augenblicke (1) in der verlassnen Residenz seines Nebenbuhlers (2) über den Verlust seiner Länder (9). (Sch.)

When however an object is to be pointed out as particularly *emphatic*, it takes its place after other objects which according to this rule ought to be placed last; e. g. Ich habe eine Predigt in der Paulskirche gehört. Wir müssen das Werk in diesen nächsten Tagen weiter fördern.

The highest degree of emphasis is pointed out by placing an object even after the predicate at the end of the sentence; e. g. es freue sich, wer da athmet im rosigen Licht, und begehre nimmer zu schauen, was die Götter bedecken mit Nacht und Grauen. (Sch.) Wir haben diesen Boden uns erschaffen durch unsrer Hände Fleiß. (Sch.)

The same is the case with most *objective* accessory sentences.

The *suffering* object, according as it qualifies or 259 individualizes the predicate, is to be considered as a *principal* or a *subordinate* object. When it expresses an individual being acted upon, as: the wind shakes the tree, I do not like this wine, he bore his loss with great patience etc., the suffering object is subordinate and takes the place appointed in the above plan, viz. that before the adverb of modality or negation and before the object of manner; e. g. der Wind erschüttert den Baum nicht (or vielleicht, stark &c.); ich trinke diesen Wein nicht gern; er ertrug seinen Verlust mit großer Geduld; du wirst deinen Bruder wahrscheinlich nicht finden.

When, on the other hand the *suffering* object is not so much an individual being acted upon, as a general notion qualifying the predicate in such a manner as to express a particular *kind* of action, as: to shake hands, to drink wine, to bear witness, to bid defiance, to draw breath, to catch fire, to get work etc., it is to be considered as the principal object (§. 257) and is placed after the adverb of modality, negation or manner; e. g. Ich drückte dem Fremden gern die Hand; er hat vielleicht Wein getrunken; er wollte in dieser Sache nicht gern Zeugniß ablegen; er bot seinem Gegner auf alle Weise Troß; er holte nicht mehr Athem; das Stroh fing plötzlich Feuer; du wirst wahrscheinlich keine Arbeit finden &c.

When however an adverb of negation or modality refers to one particular part of the sentence (the subject or an object), without affecting the predicate, they always precede the word they refer to; e. g. Ich habe nicht meinen Vater, aber wol meinen Bruder gesehen. Ich werde vielleicht nächstes Jahr nach England gehen. Nicht Elisabeth, nicht Englands Parlament ist Euer Richter. (Sch.) Wol manches Fahrzeug vom Strudel gefaßt, schoß jäh in die Tiefe hinab; doch zerschmettert nur rangen sich Kiel und Mast hervor aus dem Alles verschlingenden Grab. (Sch.)

Pronouns precede all other objects, and among themselves they are arranged in the following order:

1. the reflexive pronoun,
2. the pronoun es,
3. the personal pronoun in the accusative case,
4. „ „ „ „ „ dative or genit. case,
5. the demonstrative pronoun.

Er schämt sich (1) deiner (4). Ich habe es (2) ihm (4) gesagt. Ich habe ihm (4) das (5) gesagt. Ich will dich (3) ihm (4) vorstellen &c.

CHAPTER VIII.

OBJECT IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

*(Suffering object.)**All transitive verbs (§. 202) govern the Accusative case.* 260

A verb is said to be *transitive* when its object is conceived to suffer and be affected by the action expressed by the verb; e. g. he kills the dog, he drinks wine etc. In general, verbs corresponding to English transitive (or active) verbs, govern the accusative case in German also. Some verbs however differ in this respect, governing either one of the oblique cases, or requiring a preposition. Particular attention is therefore to be paid to the following observations.

Some *English verbs*, are used *transitively* while the corresponding *German verbs* take their object, some in the *genitive*, or *dative case* and others under the government of a *preposition*; e. g. *to help a person*, Einem [*dat.*] helfen; *to want a thing*, einer Sache [*gen.*] bedürfen. On the other hand some verbs are *transitive* in *German* which in *English* are under the government of a *preposition*; e. g. Etwas bezahlen (*to pay for a thing*); Einen erwarten (*to wait for a person*).

1. *All causative verbs are transitive*, i. e. all those which express causing a person or thing to do something, as: lehren to teach (to make somebody learn), führen to lead (to make somebody go). Two kinds of causative verbs are to be distinguished:

a. *Derivative verbs*, formed from intransitive verbs, or adjectives, and employed in the causative signification only. Such are:

setzen to seat,	from sitzen to sit,
stellen to place,	„ stehen to stand,
legen to lay,	„ liegen to lie,

föhren to lead,	from fahren to move,
fällen to fell,	„ fallen to fall,
fenken to sink,	„ finken to sink,
fprengeu to burst,	„ fpriugeu to burst,
tränken to water, to give to drink,	„ trinken to drink,
weden to awaken,	„ wachen to be awake,
erfchrecken (mod. form) to frighten,	„ erfchrecken (anc. form) to be frightened,
verfchwenden to spend etc.	„ verfchwenden to vanish,
wärmen to make warm,	„ warm warm,
freuen to rejoice,	„ froh glad,
fchwächen to weaken,	„ fchwach weak,
ftärken to strengthen,	„ ftarf strong,
tödten to kill, etc.	„ tödt dead.

b. Primitive verbs, adopting the *causative* sense without changing their form, which are accordingly used both in an intransitive and in a transitive sense; as:

brechen to be broken	and to break something,
reißen to be torn	„ to tear „
fahreu to move quickly	„ to drive „
ziehen to move *)	„ to draw, pull something,
jagen to run swiftly	„ to make one run,
fchießen to rush	„ to shoot,
halten to stop, to halt	„ to stop, or hold something,
brennen to be burning	„ to consume by fire,
fochen } fieden } to be boiling	„ to boil something,
fchmelzen to be melting	„ to melt „
wiegen to weigh	„ to weigh „
weiden to graze	„ to tend „
heißen to be called	„ to call „
abnehmen to decrease	„ to take off „

*) Ziehen is used intransitively only when speaking of a body of troops, or birds of passage, of clouds, and in the sense of removing from an habitation.

This practice is not however so common in German as in English; it is never admitted with derivative verbs, as is frequently done in English; e. g. to march troops, to return a visit; and the number of primitive intransitive verbs, used at the same time in the causative signification is very limited; thus e. g. rennen to run, is not used as the English in: to run a horse, a stag; nor gehen like the English: to walk a horse.

2. All verbs with the prefix *b e* are transitive.

261

a. Verbs, originally intransitive, are made transitive by the prefix *b e*.

ich denke an etwas I think of something,	ich bedenke etwas I consider something,
ich diene dem Herrn (Dat.)	ich bediene den Herrn I serve a master,
ich drohe dem Feinde „	ich bedrohe den Feind I threa- ten the enemy,
ich fahre auf dem Strome,	ich befahre den Strom,
ich greife nach — I seize —	ich begreife I conceive,
ich handle mit Klugheit I act prudently,	ich behandle den Menschen mit Klugheit I treat the man prudently,
der König herrscht über sein Volk,	er beherrscht sein Volk,
er jammert über sein Elend,	er bejammert seinen Freund,
ich klage über seinen Tod,	ich beklage seinen Tod,
ich komme,	ich bekomme Geld, Briefe,
ich lebe,	die Sache belebt mich,
ich lüge,	ich belüge dich,
das Geld nutzt mir,	ich benutze das Geld,
ich wohne in dem Hause,	ich bewohne das Haus,
ich folge dem Führer,	ich befolge das Gesetz,
ich antworte meinem Freunde,	ich beantworte seinen Brief,
ich steige auf den Berg,	ich besteige den Berg,
etc.	etc.

b. Verbs, originally transitive, when compounded with the prefix *b e*, take the accusative of an object,

different from that governed by the simple verb, as will be evident from the following examples:

Ich decke das Tuch über den Tisch,	Ich bedecke den Tisch mit einem Tuche,
Ich erbe das Vermögen meines Vaters,	Ich beerbe meinen Vater,
Ich grabe ein Grab,	Ich begrabe den Todten,
Ich raube ihm das Geld,	Ich beraube ihn des Geldes,
Ich schenke dir das Buch,	Ich beschenke dich mit dem Buche.

Sometimes also the signification of the verb is entirely altered by the prefix *be*; as in:

Ich schreibe (write) einen Brief,	Ich beschreibe (describe) ein Fest,
Ich suche (seek) meinen Hut,	Ich besuche (pay a visit to) meinen Freund,
Ich kenne (know) den Menschen,	Ich bekenne (confess) meine Sünden,
Ich halte (hold) das Pferd,	Ich behalte (keep) das Pferd, etc.

A great number of verbs, with the prefix *be*, govern merely the accusative of the reflective pronoun, and of course do not admit of another accusative case. Most of them are contained in the list of reflective verbs (§. 205).

The following verbs are exceptions, and do not govern the accusative case:

behagen	with the dative to please,
belieben	” ” ” ” ”
begegnen	” ” ” to meet,
beharren auf	” ” ” to persevere in —,
beruhen auf	” ” ” to be founded on,
bestehen auf	” ” ” to insist upon —,
bestehen aus	” ” ” to consist of —.

262 3. *All inseparable compound verbs with one of the prefixes durch, um, über, unter hinter, are transitive; except:*

unterbleiben (hinterbleiben) to remain undone,
 unterliegen, with the Dat. to be subdued by —,
 unterhandeln mit — w. t. Dat. to negotiate with —.

In some expressions the German language employs 263
 a verb with an accusative object, in the place of a
 simple English verb; as in:

Argwohn hegen to suspect,	Theil nehmen to participate,
einen Beschluß fassen to re- solve,	ein trauriges Ende nehmen to end tragically,
die Regierung führen to go- vern,	Vorlesungen halten to lecture,
Beschwerde führen gegen — to complain of —,	Briefe mit Jemand wechseln, to correspond with some- body etc.,
Bürgschaft leisten to bail,	Hülfe leisten to help, assist.

The contrary is the case in the following phrases:

to get a cold sich erkälten,	to make one's appearance
to make haste sich eilen,	erscheinen,
to make a fine appearance schön aussehen,	to take alarm unruhig werden,
to make a surrender sich übergeben,	to lay hold of — etwas er- greifen,
to make shift with — sich behelfen mit —,	to lay siege to a town eine Stadt belagern,
to make an appointment sich verabreden,	to bear obedience gehorchen, to bear sway herrschen, etc.

The following phrases ought particularly to be ob-
 served, because the German idiom requires a construc-
 tion different from that which is usual in English:

to ask a person	einen Menschen fragen; but —
to ask the price, the way etc.	nach dem Preise, dem Wege fragen,
to beg a person	einen Menschen bitten; but —
to beg pardon	um Vergebung bitten,
to brave a danger	einer Gefahr (Dat.) trotzen (see §. 265),
to enter a house, church etc.	in ein Haus &c. eintreten,

to cross a river	über einen Fluß setzen,
to pass a bridge	über eine Brücke gehen,
to invade a country	in ein Land einfallen,
to attend a meeting etc.	einer Versammlung (Dat.) bei- wohnen.

CHAPTER IX.

PERSONAL OBJECT IN DATIVE CASE.

Preliminary Remark.

264 The *dative case* has a very extensive employment in German, denoting, in fact, the object (either a *person* or a *thing**) in whose *favour*, but likewise to whose *detriment*, the act expressed by the verb takes place and it thus answers to what in *Latin grammar* generally is designated by the *t. t.* '*dativus commodi et incommodi.*'

Principal Rule:

The Dative case is governed by those verbs and adjectives, which require a completing object conceived as active.

It has been explained §. 250, which objects are to be considered as personal objects, and accordingly must be in the *dative case*. The English language, having lost the terminations of declension, frequently expresses the dative case by the preposition *to*, or, this preposition being omitted, no distinction is made between the dative and accusative cases. Therefore care must be taken, to examine 1) whether the particle *to* is a sign of the dative case, or a *preposition*, expressing direction towards a place; and if there is no such

*) In the *generality* of cases however, the *dative* relates to a *person*, and if to a *thing*, the latter must be looked upon as being *personified* in a certain sense.

particle, to know 2) whether the verb governs the dative or accusative case.

1) In a sentence like the following: *I send a letter to my brother*, the brother, receiving the letter, is the *personal* object: thus *ich schicke meinem Bruder einen Brief*. But in: *I send a letter to Frankfort*, Frankfort is the *place* where I send it, and *to*, being a real *preposition*, must be translated by *nach*. The same difference is between: I said *to him* (dat.), *ich sagte ihm*, and: I went *to* (prepos.) him, *ich ging zu ihm* etc.

2) In: *I obey my father*, 'my father', being considered as commanding, is the *personal* object and must be in the dative case in German; but in: *I see my father*, he is not active, that is to say, the action of seeing does not require another action corresponding with it; therefore it governs the *accusative* case.

The dative case is governed by the following verbs: 265

1. *Intransitive verbs.*

anhängen to adhere to —,	entsprechen to correspond,
antworten to answer,	fehlen to be wanting *),
begegnen to meet,	folgen to follow,
beistehen to assist,	gefallen to please *) and
beistimmen to assent,	mißfallen to displease,
danke to thank,	gehen to go, when used im-
dienen to serve,	personally **),
drohen to threaten,	gehören to belong,
einfallen to occur to the me-	gehörchen to obey,
mory,	gelingen to succeed *),
entfallen to be forgotten,	genügen to suffice,
entgehen } to escape,	geziemen to be proper, to be-
entfliehen } come,	
entsagen to renounce,	glauben to believe, to trust,

*) Fehlen, gefallen, gelingen, are never constructed as in English, the person being the subject; e. g. I want money, if you please, he succeeds; but: *es fehlt mir an Geld; wenn es Ihnen gefällt; es gelingt ihm*.

***) *Wie geht es Ihnen?* how do you do? *Es geht mir gut*, I am well etc.

gleichen to be like,	troßen to bid defiance,
sich nahen, nähern to approach,	trauen to trust,
nützen to be useful,	unterliegen to be overcome by,
schaden to injure (a person),	vergeben to pardon,
scheinen to seem,	widersprechen to contradict,
erscheinen to appear,	widerstehen to oppose,
schmeicheln to flatter,	weichen to yield.

Examples.

Als sie aus dem Walde traten und sich zu der großen Straße wendeten, begegnete ihnen ein Zug von Reisenden. (Tieck.) Was der König hat, gehört dem Glück. (Sch.) Er schadet uns, und nützt sich nicht. (G.) Ergeht's euch wohl, so denkt an mich, und danket Gott so warm, als ich für diesen Trunk euch danke. (G.) Des Menschen Seele gleicht dem Wasser. (G.) Mir gefällt ein lebendiges Leben. (Sch.) König ist hier, wer den Augen gefällt. (Sch.) Dem männlichen Alter geziemt's, einem ernstern Gott zu dienen. (Sch.) Der strengen Diana laffet uns folgen. (Sch.) Gar leicht gehorcht man einem edlen Herrn, der überzeugt, indem er uns gebietet. (G.) Die Ehre ziemt dem Gast. (Uhl.) Das Leben gleicht der Bühne. (Uhl.) Er hat, dünkt mir, dem Urtheil und dem Geschmacke der Franzosen geschmeichelt, denen ich aber in der Anlage einer Batterie eher folgen wollte, als in der Kritik über reine Weiblichkeit. (Seume.) Ja, ja, antwortete Ademar, traut nur solchen Versprechungen! (Tieck.)

2. Transitive verbs.

266 A great number of transitive verbs, besides governing the accus. case of a *suffering* object, require a personal object in the *dative* case; and in general, when a verb has two objects, one relating to a person, and the other relating to a thing, the personal object must be in the dative case in German; e. g. he gave me the money, er gab mir das Geld; I offered him my purse, ich bot ihm meine Börse an; she showed the stranger a room, sie zeigten dem Fremden eine Stube.

Examples.

Ich habe meinem Freunde einen Brief geschrieben (or — einen Brief an meinen [acc.] Freund). Fühlbar ist mir allein der Schmerz, der mir den Busen zerreißt. (G.) Sein Anblick wird mir im Herzen wehe thun. (G.) Des Lebens ungemischte Freude ward keinem Sterblichen zu Theil. (Sch.) Die goldne Kette gib mir nicht; die Kette gib den Rittern. (G.) Körper und Stimme leiht die Schrift dem stummen Gedanken. (Sch.) Früchte bringet das Leben dem Mann. (G.) Wer Andern eine Grube gräbt, fällt öfters selbst hinein. *Proverb.* Drei Tage will ich Dir schenken. (Sch.) Sie ließ der Welt, was ihr die Welt geliehen. (Uhl.) Dem dunkeln Schooß der heil'gen Erde vertraut der Sämann seine Saat. (Sch.)

It may be inferred from the preceding general rules, that the *dative* is likewise required in sentences like the following, in which the *suffering* object is expressed by the supine, or by an *accessory* sentence; e. g. he commanded him to come, er befahl ihm zu kommen; I promised him to be silent, ich versprach ihm zu schweigen. Ein Laut aus Ihrem Munde gebietet mir, zu sein und zu vergehen. (Sch.) Ich erlaube Euch, den Prinzen zu verzeihen. (Sch.) Ich glaube Dir, was Du mir sagst. Ich wünsche Dir, daß Du glücklich werden mögest. Ich sagte ihm, ich sei nicht wohl &c.

3. A considerable number of *verbs, compounded with separable prepositions*, govern the dative case. 267

Er hat mir viel Geld ab- gewonnen	He has won much money from me,
Er hat dem Feinde eine Schlacht ab-gewonnen	He has won a battle (lit. from the enemy),
Ich will ihm das Pferd ab- kaufen	I wish to buy the horse from him,
Er wohnt der Versamm- lung bei	He attends the meeting,
Ich werde Dir das Buch vor-lesen	I will read the book to you,

Dem Volke Steuern auflegen = To lay taxes upon the people.

Ich ziehe die schädliche Wahrheit dem nützlichen Irrthum vor. (G.) Wohntet ihr dem Ritterspiele bei? (Sch.) Sehr gern steht Karlos dem Minister nach. (Sch.) Die Königin sah dem Kampfe zu. (Sch.) Sie wenden nur das Herz dem Gütlen zu. (Sch.) Sie rief ihm zu ein süßes Wort. (Uhl.) Sie verließ die Stube sogleich und eilte dem Sohne nach. (G.)

OBSERVATION. The following verbs, on the other hand, most of which have a causative signification, are excepted from the general rule (§. 264), and govern the accusative case, although their objects be persons:

ärgern to make angry,	mahnen, ermahnen to admonish,
freuen to make glad,	
loben to praise,	anflagen to accuse,
tadeln to blame,	fragen to ask (a person),
führen } to guide,	bitten to beg "
leiten } to guide,	lieben to love,
meiden to avoid,	hassen to hate,
lehren to teach,	heirathen to marry etc.,
unterrichten to instruct,	

and moreover all verbs compounded with the inseparable prefixes *be*, *durch*, *um*, *über*, *unter*, *hinter* (§. 261, 262).

In some idiomatic expressions the object is, in German, not conceived as a personal one, but as an object of locality, and requires particular prepositions. Such are:

zu Gott beten to pray to God,
 zu Jemand reden, sprechen to speak to —,
 zu Jemand seine Zuflucht nehmen to have recourse —,
 sich an Jemand richten, wenden to apply to —,
 vor Jemand knien to kneel to somebody,
 sich auf Jemand verlassen to trust to somebody.

268 4. The dative case is governed by *compound expressions, requiring an active object, such as:*

wehe thun to hurt,	das Wort reden to speak for—,
wohl thun to do good,	Hohn sprechen to mock,
unrecht thun to do wrong,	Wort halten to keep his
kund thun to announce,	word,
zu Hülfe kommen to assist,	einen Besuch machen to pay
zu Muthe sein to feel,	a visit etc.

Examples.

Es thut mir leid um den Obersten. (Sch.) Sein Anblick wird mir im Herzen wehe thun. (G.) Die Bequemlichkeit wird mir wohl thun. (G.) Straflose Frechheit spricht den Sitten Hohn. (Sch.) Nicht ihrer Schuld rede ich das Wort. (Sch.) So haltet ihr mir Wort ihr Himmelsmächte! (Sch.) Wie Sterbenden zu Muthe sei, wer mag es sagen? (Uhl.)

5. The following *impersonal expressions* govern the dative case :

es ahnet mir I have a forebody,
 es grauet mir I feel horror,
 es ekelt mir I am disgusted,
 es schwindelt mir I am giddy,
 es ist mir gut (or schlecht) zu Muthe, I feel well (ill).

e. g. Mir grauet weiter fortzufahren. (Sch.) Es ahnet mir nichts Gutes &c.

Dative governed by adjectives.

All adjectives comprehended under the general rule 269 (§. 264) govern the dative case. The following are the most usual :

angenehm agreeable,	fremd not known by —,
geneigt kind,	verdächtig suspected by —,
gewogen } favourable,	verhaßt hated by —,
günstig } favourable,	schuldig owing to —,
gnädig gracious,	gehorsam obedient,
ergeben devoted,	gleich equal,
nützlich useful,	ähnlich like,
schädlich hurtful,	lieb and leid in particular
gemein common to,	expressions.
bekannt known by —,	

Examples.

Es ist mir lieb, daß Du kommst, I am glad that etc. Es ist mir leid, daß ic., I am sorry that etc. Es ist mir nicht bekannt, I do not know anything of it. Diese Sprache ist mir fremd, this is a foreign tongue to me, or, I do not know this language. Der Mensch ist mir verdächtig, I suspect that man. Du bist ihm viel Dank schuldig, you owe him many thanks. Diese neue Würde sieht einer Landesverweisung ähnlicher als einer Gnade. (Sch.) Die Höflichkeit war dem Edlen und Bürger, wie dem Bauer gemein. (G.) Mein guter Eckart, sei mir treu, wie Du es meinem Vater warst. (Uhl.)

Non-completing Dative.

- 270 An object in the dative case is frequently employed in German after verbs which by themselves do not require a completing object, if the relation of the predicate to its object must be conceived as a relation to a person; e. g. Ihnen bedeutet dieses Opfer nichts (Sch.), to you, this sacrifice is of no value. In this sentence the verb *bedeuten* does not *require* a completing personal object; but the object, added to explain it, must be a person, and is accordingly in the dative case.

Examples.

Frei ist dem Wanderer der Weg. (Sch.) Soll der Freund mir, der liebende, sterben? (Sch.) Euch theil' ich meine Lande. (Uhl.) Die Thränen erleichtern mir das Herz. (G.) Auf! trinkt erneuter Freude dies Glas des ächten Weins. (G.) Laßt mir herein den Alten. (G.) Begrüßet seid mir, edle Herrn. (G.) Die Gegend deckte mir ein trüber Flor. (G.)

OBSERVATION. Sometimes even the dative of a personal pronoun is added in a manner entirely superfluous; e. g. Laßt mir herein den Alten (G.), let the old man enter. Begrüßet seid mir, edle Herrn. (G.) Das Gute liebt sich das Gerade. (Sch.) Heute will ich das Beste mir im ganzen Umkreis des Gebirgs gewinnen. (Sch.) Ihr Harfner, wer weiß mir das schönste Lied? (Uhl.)

Dative of the possessor.

The *dative* of a substantive is frequently employed 271 instead of the *genitive* of the *possessor* and the *dative* of the *personal pronoun* instead of the *possessive pronoun*; e. g. Sie stehen meinem Bruder im Wege (litr.) 'you stand to my brother in the way'; = you stand in my brother's way. Er sieht dem Vater nach den Augen (litr.) 'he sees to the father at the eyes' = he looks at his father's eyes. Er tastet dem Manne an die Ehre (litr.) 'he touches to the man at his honour' = he touches this man's honour.

The above given *literal* translations will enable the pupil to detect a similar construction in the following phrases and sentences: my head aches, my heart is breaking, der Kopf thut mir weh; das Herz bricht mir. They cut off the enemy's retreat, sie schnitten dem Feinde den Rückzug ab; he filled my pockets with money, er füllte mir die Taschen mit Geld; those poor children break my heart, diese armen Kinder brechen mir das Herz. Ein Schuß tödtete mir das Pferd, dem Könige wurde der linke Arm zerschmettert, a shot killed my horse, the left arm of the king was shattered; er salbte mir das Haupt, he anointed my head; die Haare standen mir zu Berge, my hair stood on end; er lacht sich in's Äußeren, he laughs in his sleeves. Das Wasser rauscht, das Wasser schwoll, neßt' ihm den nackten Fuß. (G.) Die Leier, die so hell erschollen, liegt ihm im Arme, ohne Klang. (Uhl.) Man sieht Dir's an den Augen an (by your eyes); gewiß, du hast geweint. (G.) Die Mutter starb Dir frühe. (Uhl.)

The *dative* is also employed in many constructions where a *preposition* would rather be expected; e. g. dem Briefe das Siegel aufdrücken (litr. 'to impress the seal to [= upon] the letter' = to seal it.

Personal object expressed by Prepositions.

The following prepositions are employed instead of 272 the *dative* case, to denote the *personal object*:

1) gegen *towards* (with the accus. case) after the adjectives:

freundlich kind, aufrichtig sincere, nachsichtig indulgent,
feindlich hostile, offen frank, open, grausam cruel,
gnädig gracious, gerecht just, etc.

and some other adjectives of a similar signification; e. g. der König war gegen Sie nicht gnädig, nur gerecht. (Sch.) Ich bitt' Euch, seid nicht so barsch und rauh gegen den guten Mann; Ihr seid ja sonst gegen Alle freundlich. (G.)

2) mit *with*, and für *for*, are used in the same way as in English, to denote a personal object. The following expressions only are different from the English:

verwandt mit — related to —,
befreundet mit — friend to —,
sich verbinden mit — to join one,
sich verheirathen mit — to marry,
sich vereinigen mit — to unite to —,
sich versöhnen mit — to reconcile.

Examples.

Mit Euch, Herr Doktor, zu spazieren, ist ehrenvoll und ist Gewinn. (G.) Sie gehen friedlich mit einander, Alte und Junge, und Männer mit den Weibern. (G.) Wo das Strenge mit dem Zarten, wo Starke sich und Milde paarten, da gibt es einen guten Klang. (Sch.) Prüft mir das Gemisch, ob das Spröde mit dem Weichen sich vereint zum guten Zeichen. (Sch.) Mit des Geschickes Mächten ist kein ew'ger Bund zu flechten. (Sch.)

273 3) von *of*, is employed instead of the English *by*, after the *passive voice of verbs*, in order to express the active object; e. g. he was seen *by* my brother (my brother saw him), er ist von meinem Bruder gesehen worden. Sein Obstgarten wurde oft von Schulbuben geplündert, his orchard was often robbed *by* schoolboys; die Flotte wurde von widrigen Winden aufgehalten, the fleet was detained *by* contrary winds; die Herzen der Zuschauer

waren von den verschiedensten Empfindungen bewegt (Sch.),
the hearts of the spectators were moved *by* the most
various sensations etc.

CHAPTER X.

GENITIVE OBJECT.

All those *completing* objects are comprehended under 274
the genitive relation, which, though not being active
like the personal object, still are conceived to exert an
influence upon the subject, in such a manner that the
Predicate may be considered as the result of it (§. 251).

The *genitive* (as a *completing object*) is used after many
intransitive verbs and *adjectives* (see the following §§.)
which denote a *wish*, *want*, *aversion*, or imply the notion
of *knowing* or similar mental *perceptions* or *functions* (see
the *examples* in the subsequent §§.).

OBSERVATION. A great many grammatical con-
structions of a various description, have to be classed
under this head, although in some of them it seems dif-
ficult, in our times, to show the original conception,
which caused them to be constructed in this manner;
and the poetical genius of language, personifying all
things and imputing all sensations and emotions of
mind to the influence of external causes, must account
for a great number of such constructions the *original*
meaning of which cannot be easily traced at the pre-
sent time. Also the use of the genitive case is much
more limited in modern prose, than in poetry and in
the language of earlier times, being partly supplanted
by the accusative case, partly supplied by prepositions.
In the following §§. modern prose is chiefly taken
into consideration.

Examples.

Wohl dem, der sich des Dürftigen annimmt. — Mir konnt' es wenig helfen, mich meines Glückes zu bedienen. (Sch.) Es ist der Fluch der Höhern, daß die Niedern sich ihres offenen Ohrs bemächtigen. (Sch.) Eure Jugend freut sich noch des Puges. (Sch.) Der Landmann rühme sich des Pflugs. (Sch.) Du darfst Dich Deiner Wahl nicht schämen. (Sch.) Ich schäme mich der Unerfahrenheit meiner Jugend nicht. (G.) Er wird sich Deiner erbarmen. (G.) Natur läßt sich des Schleiers nicht berauben. (G.) Welch andrer Sünde klagt das Herz Dich an? (Sch.) zc.

275 1. *The following*) verbs and adjectives always govern the genitive case:*

a. *Reflective verbs.*

sich einer Sache annehmen	to undertake —,
» » » bedienen	to make use of —,
» » » bemächtigen	} to take possession of —,
» » » bemeistern	
» » » enthalten	to abstain from —,
» » » erbarmen	to pity,
» » » erinnern	to remember,
» » » freuen	to rejoice at —,
» » » rühmen	to boast of —,
» » » schämen	to be ashamed of —.

*) The following are but rarely used:

sich anmaßen to usurp,	sich überführen to convict,
» befeissen to apply to —,	» unterfangen } to dare,
» begeben to give up,	» unterwinden }
» bescheiden to acquiesce,	» vermessen }
» entäußern to alienate,	» versehen to expect,
» ent schlagen to rid one's self of,	» verweisen des Landes to banish from the country,
» entfinnen to remember,	» weigern to refuse,
» entbinden } to release from	» würdigen to think one worthy of,
» entladen }	» zeihen to accuse,
» entledigen to dispense,	» bedürftig in want of —,
» entwöhnen to wean,	» benöthigt in need of —,
» erwehren to defend oneself from,	» gewärtig in expectation of,
» getrösten to trust in,	» gewiß certain of —,
» überheben to save one (the trouble),	» theilhaft partaking in —,
	» verlustig losing something.

Sich erinnern, freuen, rühmen, schämen are now commonly followed by prepositions (see §. 277).

b. *Transitive verbs.*

Einen eines Verbrechens an= to accuse one of a crime,
 klagen, beschuldigen
 Einen seines Geldes berauben to rob one of his money,
 Einen seines Amtes entsetzen to turn one out of his
 office.

c. *Adjectives.*

bewußt conscious of —,
 eingedenk mindful of —,
 fähig capable of —,
 kundig knowing —,
 mächtig master of —,
 schuldig guilty of —,
 verdächtig suspected of —,
 würdig worthy of —.

Ein guter Mensch in seinem dunkeln Drange ist sich des rechten Weges wohl bewußt. (G.) Die meisten Verluste sind eines Erfasses fähig. (Sch.) Auch Du hältst mich der schweren Sünde schuldig? (Sch.) Ich bin des Weges nicht kundig &c.

2. The following verbs and adjectives govern the genitive case in sublime style, but are more usually constructed with the accusative case: e. g. Mein, der Mann bedarf der [gen.] Geduld; er bedarf auch des reinen, immer gleichen, ruhigen Sinnes, und des geraden Verstandes. (G.) Die Welt könnte seiner [gen.] Wohlthaten genießen und wie sie (i. e. die Welt) sehr oft gethan, des Gebers vergessen. (G.)

bedürfen to want,
 begehren to desire,
 brauchen to use, want,
 entbehren to miss,
 erwähnen to mention,
 genießen to enjoy,

pflegen to take care of —,
 schonen to spare,
 verfehlen to miss,
 vergessen to forget,
 wahrnehmen to observe,

los werden to get rid of,
 gewahr werden to observe,
 gewohnt sein to be accustomed to —,
 müde sein to be weary of —,
 voll sein to be full of —,
 werth sein *) to be worth,
 überdrüssig sein to be disgusted at —.

Die Stube ist voll Rauch. Den Künstler wird man nicht gewahr. (Sch.) Das heutige Geschlecht wird diesen Jammer nicht los. Ein Becher voll Wein. Ich bin es nicht gewohnt; ich bin es überdrüssig &c. Although we find in Schiller and other writers also the *gen.*, e. g. die meisten Verluste sind eines Ersatzes fähig. Ich bin des Lebens und des Herrschens müde.

Prepositions.

277 Instead of the genitive case the prepositions *an*, *auf*, *nach*, *über*, *um*, *von*, are used to express the different genitive objects.

In general, a verb signifying:

Privation, or separation	requires	<i>von</i>	with the	Dat.
Want	"	<i>an</i>	" "	"
Loss, or mourning about —	"	<i>um</i>	" "	Acc.
Victory, or government over —	"	<i>über</i>	" "	"
Fear, aversion, horror	"	<i>vor</i>	" "	Dat.
Grief, sorrow, pleasure or astonishment	"	<i>über</i>	" "	Acc.
Delight	"	<i>an</i>	" "	Dat.
Longing, asking for —	"	<i>nach</i>	" "	"
Confidence, hope } Envy, suspicion }	"	<i>auf</i>	" "	Acc.
Begging	"	<i>um</i>	" "	"
Thinking, speaking, hearing of	"	<i>von</i>	" "	Dat.
Remembrance	"	<i>an</i>	" "	Acc.
Doubt	"	<i>an</i>	" "	Dat.

*) The following phrases however are used in common prose: *das ist nicht der Mühe werth*, *der Rede werth*, it is not worth the trouble, not worth mentioning.

When the object is not expressed by a substantive, 278 but by a supine or by an accessory sentence; as: he thinks of going home, they spoke of what had happened yesterday; the aforesaid prepositions form compounds with the pronoun *da* or *dar*, according to §. 143, and are followed by the supine, or by the accessory sentence; e. g. *er denkt daran, nach Hause zu gehen; sie sprachen davon, was gestern geschehen war. Ich verlange darnach, sie zu hören. Ich fürchte mich davor, ihm zu begegnen. Ich vertraue darauf, daß er mir hilft. Ich beneide ihn darum, daß er reich ist* &c.

The same compounds are employed, if the pronouns *it* or *what* stand in the place of a genitive object; e. g. I will think of it, *ich werde daran denken; of what do you speak? Wovon sprechen Sie? — Ich weiß nichts davon. Ich vertraue darauf. Worauf hoffest du?* &c.

The following list shows the use of the prepositions 279 employed in German to express the genitive object:

<i>after.</i>	<i>nach</i> , with the Dat. case.
to ask, inquire after someth.	<i>nach</i> einer Sache fragen, sich erkundigen,
„ seek, strive „ „	<i>nach</i> einer Sache verlangen, trachten, streben,
„ thirst, hunger „ „	<i>nach</i> einer Sache dürsten, hungern.

<i>about.</i>	<i>um, über</i> , with the Acc. case.
to be uneasy about someth.	<i>um</i> etwas besorgt, in Angst sein,
„ talk, converse „ „	<i>über</i> etwas reden, sich unterhalten.

<i>at.</i>	1. <i>über</i> , with the Acc. case.
to rejoice, exult at someth.	<i>über</i> eine Sache sich freuen, frohlocken,
„ grieve, repine „ „	<i>über</i> eine Sache unzufrieden sein, sich betrüben, sich grämen,
„ weep, grumble „ „	<i>über</i> eine Sache weinen, murren,
„ be stung by, or, shocked at something	<i>über</i> eine Sache empfindlich, empört sein,

to be surprised at someth.	über eine Sache verwundert sein,
„ be affected, afflicted,	über eine Sache bewegt, be-
alarmed at something	trübt, in Angst sein,
„ wonder, be astonished	über eine Sache sich wundern,
at something	erstaunt sein,
„ gaze, stare at someth.	über eine Sache staunen,
„ laugh, smile „ „	„ „ „ lachen, lächeln,
„ rail, flout, sneer at	„ „ „ spotten, sticheln,
„ blush, redden at	„ „ „ erröthen, sich
	schämen

2. nach, with the Dat. case.

to look at someth.	nach einer Sache sehen,
„ aim, drive „ „	„ „ „ streben,
	trachten,
„ throw, shoot „ „	„ „ „ werfen,
	schießen,
„ snap, snatch etc. „ „	„ „ „ schnappen,
	haschen.

Different constructions.

to play at cards, chess etc.	Karte, Schach 2c. spielen,
„ make at one	auf Einen losgehen,
„ point „ „	„ „ zeigen, hinweisen,
„ value, rate someth. at —	etwas schätzen, rechnen auf —.

for.

für, with the Acc. case.

to thank, reward for someth.	für eine Sache danken, beloh-
	nen,
„ provide „ „	„ „ „ sorgen,
„ punish, atone „ „	„ „ „ strafen, büßen,
„ answer „ „	„ „ „ sich verbürgen,
	verantwortlich sein.

nach, with the Dat. case.

to ask, inquire, wish for something	nach einer Sache fragen, ver-
	langen,
„ long, sigh for someth.	„ „ „ sich sehnen,
	schmachten,
„ look out „ „	„ „ „ sich umsehen,

to send for somebody	nach Jemand schicken,
„ dig for treasures	nach Schätzen graben.
	um, with the Acc. case.
to ask, beg, pray for someth.	um eine Sache bitten, beten,
„ sue, mourn „ „	um etwas werben, trauern,
„ contend, care „ „	„ „ streiten, sich bekümmern.
	auf, with the Acc. case.
to hope, wait, stay for something,	auf etwas hoffen, warten,
„ care for someth.	harren,
„ weep, grieve „ „	„ „ achten (Gen.),
	über eine Sache weinen, sich grämen.
	von, with the Dat. case.
free, exempt from someth.	von einer Sache frei, befreit,
to deliver, discharge, disengage etc.	„ „ „ befreien, retten,
„ redeem, release	„ „ „ entbinden,
„ absolve from something	„ „ „ erlösen, loskaufen,
„ desist, deter „	„ „ „ lossprechen, reinigen,
„ part „	„ „ „ abstehen, abschrecken,
„ seclude, remove „	„ „ „ scheiden, sich trennen,
„ dissent, distinguish „	„ „ „ ausschließen, entfernen,
„ derive	„ „ „ abweichen, unterscheiden,
„ recover	„ „ „ herleiten,
„ deviate	„ „ „ sich erholen,
„ separate	„ „ „ abweichen,
	„ „ „ sich trennen.
	aus, with the Dat. case.
to arise, result from something	aus etwas entstehen, entspringen,
„ rouse from sleep	aus dem Schlafe wecken,
„ expel from something	aus etwas vertreiben.

		vor, with the Dat. case.
to secure, screen from some- thing	vor etwas schützen, sichern,	
„ preserve, defend from something	„ „ bewahren, verthei- digen,	
„ conceal something from one	etwas vor Jemand verbergen (or Einem etwas verbergen).	
	<i>in.</i>	an, with the Dat. case.
to abound	in something	Überfluß haben an —,
„ delight	„ „	Bergnügen finden, sich ergötzen,
„ exceed	„ „	überwiegen (intr.), überrreffen (transit.),
„ take part	„ „	Theil nehmen,
equal, great	„ „	gleich, groß, klein an etwas,
rich, poor	„ „	reich, arm an etwas,
to believe in God		an Gott (Accus.) glauben.

Different constructions.

to confide in something	auf etwas vertrauen,
„ persist „ „	„ „ bestehen, beharren,
„ excel in „ „	sich in etwas auszeichnen,
„ engage in a business	sich in ein Geschäft einlassen,
„ deal in something	sich mit etwas befassen,
„ terminate „ „	mit etwas endigen,
„ traffic „ „	„ „ handeln.

Of is expressed by the *Genitive case* after the verbs and adjectives explained §. 275. The following verbs always govern the *Accus. case* in German.

to accept	of something	etwas annehmen,
„ admit	„ „	„ zulassen,
„ allow	„ „	„ zugeben, erlauben,
„ approve	„ „	„ billigen.

The following prepositions are the most usual.

		von, with the Dat. case.
to speak, talk, treat of something	von etwas sprechen, reden, handeln,	

to hear, dream	of someth.	von etwas hören, träumen,
„ inform one	„ „	Einen von etwas benachrichtigen, in Kenntniß setzen,
„ persuade one	„ „	Einen von etwas überzeugen
„ cure, rid	„ „ „	„ „ „ heilen, befreien,
„ acquit	„ „ „	„ „ „ lössprechen,
„ demand, require, take something of one		etwas von Jemand fordern, verlangen, nehmen,
„ abate of a price		von einem Preise ablassen,
of a small figure		klein von Gestalt,
of tender limbs		zart von Gliedern.

um, with the Acc. case.

to cheat, defraud one of something	of	Einen um etwas betrügen,
„ deprive one of someth.	„ „ „	bringen,
„ be deprived	„ „	um etwas kommen,
ignorant of the world		mit der Welt unbekannt.

an, with the Dat. case.

there is want of something		es fehlt, mangelt, gebricht an etwas,
to partake	„ „	an etwas Theil nehmen,
„ be ill, die	„ „	„ „ krank sein, sterben*),
„ doubt, despair	„ „	„ „ zweifeln, verzweifeln.

an, with the Acc. case.

to think	of something	an etwas denken, sich erinnern,
„ remind one	„ „	Einen an etwas erinnern,
„ admonish	„ „	„ „ „ mahnen.

über, with the Acc. case.

to judge	of something	über etwas urtheilen,
„ inform one	„ „	Einen über etwas belehren,
„ complain	„ „	sich über etwas beschweren, beklagen.

*) The Genitive is usual in the expression · Hungers sterben, to die of hunger.

	auf, with the Dat case.
blind of one eye	auf einem Auge blind,
lame of one leg	„ „ Beine lahm.
	auf, with the Acc. case.
to be proud, jealous of something	auf etwas stolz, eingebildet sein.
	aus, with the Dat. case.
to consist, be composed of something	aus etwas bestehen, zusammengesetzt sein,
what has become of your nephew?	was ist aus Ihrem Neffen geworden?
	nach, with the Dat. case.
to smell, taste of someth.	nach etwas riechen, schmecken,
„ smell „ „	„ „ duften.
	über, with the Acc. case.
to reflect, meditate etc.	über etwas nachdenken, finnen,
„ ruminat on something	„ „ grübeln,
„ converse „ „	über (von) etwas sich unterhalten,
„ deliberate „ „	über etwas sich berathschlagen,
„ decide on, upon „	„ „ entscheiden,
„ resolve on, „ „	sich zu etwas entschließen.
	auf, with the Acc. case.
to depend, rely upon something	sich auf etwas verlassen, bauen,
„ insist on, upon someth.	auf etwas bestehen, beharren,
„ be founded on „	„ „ fußen,
„ depend on, upon „	sich auf etwas verlassen,
he prides himself on his nobility	er bildet sich auf seinen Adel etwas ein.

Different constructions.

To be dependent upon somebody		Von etwas abhängen,
„ subsist on something	„ „	leben,
„ have pity on somebody		mit Jemand Mitleid haben,
„ take revenge upon somebody		sich an Jemand rächen,
„ make an attempt upon a man's life		Einem (Dat., §. 271) nach dem Leben trachten,
„ congratulate upon something		zu etwas Glück wünschen.
	<i>over</i>	über, with the Acc. case.
to rule, triumph over —		über — herrschen, triumphiren.
	<i>to</i>	auf, with the Acc. case.
to refer, relate to someth.		auf etwas beziehen (trans.),
		„ „ sich beziehen, Bezug haben (intrans.),
„ answer, reply		auf etwas antworten, erwiedern,
„ listen	„ „	„ „ hören, horchen,
„ attend	„ „	„ „ aufmerken, aufmerksam sein,
„ trust	„ „	auf etwas sich verlassen, vertrauen,
„ appeal	„ „	auf etwas sich berufen,
„ subscribe	„ „	„ „ unterschreiben.
		an, with the Acc. case.
to accustom one to someth.		Jemand an etwas gewöhnen,
„ be accustomed „	„	sich an etwas gewöhnen, etwas (Acc.) gewohnt sein,
„ hold	„ „	sich an etwas halten.
		nach, with the Dat. case.
„ conform	„ „	sich nach etwas richten,
„ aspire	„ „	nach etwas streben.

	<i>to</i>	<i>in, with the Acc. case.</i>
to assent, consent to some- thing		in etwas einwilligen.

With is in general expressed by *mit* with the *Dat.* case.

Content, discontented w. something
mit etwas zufrieden, unzufrieden,

acquainted w. something,	„ „	bekannt,
to furnish, endue, supply etc.	„ „	versehen, begaben,
„ load, encumber	„ „	beladen, belasten,
„ mix, unite	„ „	vermischen, vereinigen,
„ meddle etc.		mit etwas sich abgeben, sich befassen zc.

Those predicates only, which express feelings, are excepted, and take the prepositions: *über, von, an.*

	<i>über, with the Acc. case.</i>
to be happy at, glad of —	über etwas glücklich, froh sein,
„ „ charmed, transported with	„ „ entzückt sein,
to be angry, vexed, enra- ged, incensed at —	„ „ ärgerlich, zornig, entrüstet sein,
to be displeased with —	über etwas unzufrieden sein.

	<i>von, with the Dat. case.</i>
to be tired of —	von etwas müde sein,
„ „ taken with —	„ „ eingenommen sein.

	<i>an, with the Dat. case.</i>
to be pleased with —	an etwas Freude finden, „ „ Lust, Gefallen haben.

CHAPTER XI.

FACTITIVE OBJECT.

All those completing objects are comprehended under 280 the Factitive relation which express the effect, exerted by the predicate either upon the suffering object or upon the subject itself (§. 252).

Generally speaking or rather as a *general definition*, the *factitive* object is distinguished 1) as the *effected* or *resulting* object, from the simple *accusative* as *passive object* e. g. *he carves wood (acc.)*; but if we add: '*into an image*', the latter is the *factitive* object. — *They elected him (acc.)* but by adding *another* expletive *subst. in apposition*, the latter is termed *factitive*, f. i. as in Latin *Caesarem consulem eligere*. — Although in German we say 'einen Consul wählen' ('*to elect a consul*' [*acc. or passive object*]), the latter phrase is *distinguished* from: *den Cäsar zum Consul erwählen* — here the term *zum Consul* is said to be the *factitive* object. The above remark and examples will impart to the pupil a *general notion* respecting this grammatical term, which will be further developed in the subsequent §§.

The effect of an action is A. a *real one*, if a person or thing is really changed into something different; as: water is changed *into ice*; Ich will ihn zum Gelächter machen (Sch.) (*I shall make a laughing stock of him* — or, *expose him to laughter*). Da wurde Leiden oft Genuß, und selbst das traurige Gefühl zur Harmonie (G.), or B. a *moral one*, as: Ich rathe zum Frieden (*I advise or vote for peace*). Mancher, der in blindem Eifer jetzt zu jedem Neuffersten entschlossen scheint. (Sch.) C. a *logical one*, as: für diesen (sc. einen treuen Diener) erkenn' ich ihn, will ich erkannt ihn wissen. (Sch.) Die bange Stunde, die man die letzte nennt. (Sch.)

It has already been observed (§. 252), that the *factitive* 281 *object*, connected with the *suffering object* or *subject*, generally admits of a transformation into a new (accessory) sentence, in which the factitive object takes the place of the predicate, as: *He thinks, he is a gentleman; I imagined, they were men of great profundity; he looks*

as if he was younger, than he really is. This transformation must generally be adopted in translating into German, if the Factitive object is expressed by the supine of a verb, after a predicate expressing an act of intellect, as: to know, to believe, to say, to suppose etc.; e. g. *I know him to be my friend*, ich weiß, daß er mein Freund ist. *They will deny it to be natural*, sie werden läugnen, daß es natürlich ist. *I have found my liveliest pleasures to arise from illusions*, ich habe gefunden, daß meine lebhaftesten Freuden aus Täuschungen entspringen. *He believed it to be a visit to himself*, er glaubte, es sei ein Besuch für ihn selbst.

The same transformation is required in German, when the predicate in English is in the passive voice, instead of which an active construction with man is usually employed in German; e. g. *The French fleet was known to be at sea*, man wußte, daß die französische Flotte in See war. *These incidents were supposed to be supernatural*, man nahm an, daß diese Vorfälle übernatürlich seien. *The tower was said to be accessible only by a small drawbridge*, man sagte, der Thurm sei nur durch eine kleine Zugbrücke zugänglich.

Remark 1. In such expressions as 'to burn wood to ashes', 'to grind to powder' etc. the two idioms agree, viz.: das Holz zu Asche brennen (cf. §. 283).

Remark 2. In the (logical) factitive relation expressed by als, the verb of 'considering' is to be understood, e. g. *mein Vater als der einzige Erbe*, *my father (being or being considered) the only heir*. *Er stand da als müßiger Zuschauer*, *he stood there (as) an idle spectator* (cf. phrases §. 285 p. 296).

282 The factitive object is expressed

1. by a *substantive* (with or without a preposition);
2. by an *adjective* undeclined;
3. by a *verb* in the infinitive.

1. *Factitive substantive.*

Prepositions are more usual in German than in English, to denote the effect of an action. Only the verbs:

werden *to become, to turn,*
 bleiben *to remain, to continue,*
 heißen *to call or to be called,*
 nennen *to name,*

are followed by a substantive without any preposition; the substantive is in the nom. case after the intransitives werden, bleiben, heißen (to be called), and in the accusative after the transitive verbs heißen to call, and nennen to name; e. g. Er wird ein Lügner, he becomes *a liar*. Er bleibt ein Kind, he remains *a child*. Die Juden nannten Johannes den Täufer, the Jews called John *the Baptist*. Johannes wurde der Täufer genannt, or hieß der Täufer, John was called *the Baptist*. Den wird man einen Ritter nennen, der nie sein Ritterwort vergißt. (Uhl.)

In the following cases the factitive object is expressed by the preposition zu *), with the dative case: 283

- 1) after the verbs werden, to be turned into;
 machen, to make;
 wählen, to choose;
 bestimmen, to appoint;
 ernennen, to nominate;
 einsetzen, to appoint;
 gereichen, to turn out;
 dienen, to serve for —.

Wasser wird zu Eis, water turns into ice. Der Mensch wird zu Staub, man turns into dust. Du machst mich zu Deinem Sklaven, you make me your slave. Die Römer haben Brutus und Collatinus zu Konsuln erwählt or ernannt, the Romans chose Brutus and Collatinus consuls. Cäsar setzte Octavian zu seinem Erben ein, Cesar appointed Octavianus his heir. Dies Zimmer dient mir zur Bibliothek, this room serves me for a

*) If zu is followed by an article definite or indefinite, it is always contracted with it into zum (masc. and neuter), and zur (fem.).

library. Diese That gereicht ihm zur Ehre, this action turns out to his honour.

Ihrer Blicke sanfter Schein
Ward in mir zu wildem Lodern,
Ihrer Rede mildes Wehn
Ward in mir zu Sturmestoben,
Sie, der schöne Maientag,
In mir zum Gewitter worden.

2) After all those *verbs which express an energy of, or influence upon, human will*, as :

zwingen, to force to —, nöthigen, to compel to —,
bestimmen, to determine to —, ermahnen, to exhort to —,
überreden, to persuade to —, verleiten, to induce to —,
reizen, anreizen, to instigate herausfordern, to challenge,
to —,
sich entschließen, to resolve sich bereiten, to prepare for,
to —, etc.

Man zwingt einen Verbrecher zum Geständniß, a criminal is forced to confess. Er nöthigte den Feind zur Flucht, he compelled his enemy to flight. Ich bestimmte ihn zur Rückkehr, I determined him to return. Er reizte mich zur Rache, he roused me to revenge. Karl V. forderte den König von Frankreich zum Zweikampf heraus, Charles V. challenged the king of France to a duel.

The following idiomatic expressions are moreover to be observed :

etwas zu Stande bringen	to bring something to pass,
Einen zur Rede stellen	to call one to account,
es kömmt zu Schlägen	it comes to blows,
Einen zu Gast bitten	to invite one,
sich zu Tode grämen	to grieve one's self to death,
Einem etwas zur Antwort geben	to say something in reply,
Einen zum Besten haben	to make fun of one.

The preposition *in, into* is used after the verbs: 284

verwandeln, to change into —, theilen, to divide into —,
 bringen, to bring into —, zerlegen, „ „ „
 gerathen, kommen, to come zerfallen, to decay into —,
 to —, etc.
 setzen, to put into —,

Die Wüste wurde in einen Garten verwandelt, the desert was changed into a garden (or by *reflexive* verbs; e. g. Schnell wirst du Recht in Unrecht sich verwandeln sehen (Sch.) [*Quickly will you see right changed into wrong*]). Ich theile den Apfel in drei Theile, I divide the apple into three parts. Etwas in Sicherheit — in Ausführung — in üblen Ruf bringen, to bring something into security — into practice — into disrepute; in Vergessenheit kommen, to be forgotten; in Armuth gerathen, to fall into misery; in Gang bringen, to set agoing; in Ordnung bringen, to put into order; in Bewegung setzen, to put into motion; in Erstaunen setzen, to put into astonishment; in's Werk setzen, to carry into effect; in Stücke reißen, to tear to pieces; ein Haus in Brand stecken, to set fire to a house; in Brand gerathen, to take fire etc. Deutschland theilt sich in zwei großen Unionen, die einander gewaffnet gegenüber stehen (Sch.) (*Germany divides itself into two great Unions which stand opposed to each other in arms*).

The preposition *für, for*, is used after verbs, expressing an *act of intellect*, as: 285

halten, to hold, to think, achten, to consider, to count,
 erklären, to declare, gelten, to be taken for —,
 ausgeben, to pretend to be, erkennen, to acknowledge.

Er hält sich für einen feinen Herrn, he thinks himself a fine gentleman; ich erkläre ihn für einen Betrüger, I declare him to be an impostor; er gibt sich für einen Künstler aus, he pretends to be an artist. Ich achte seine Freunde für meine Feinde, I count his friends my foes. Ich halte (achte) es für eine Ehre, I consider it an honour. Guer Gnaden sind bekannt für einen großen Priester.

gesfürsten (Sch.), *Your Grace is known as (= to be) a great warlike prince.* Nimm es für einen Traum, was dir begegnet ist (L.), *take it for (= to be) a dream what has occurred to you.* Bekennt Ihr endlich Euch für überwunden, *do you at length declare yourself overcome?*

286 The conjunction *als as*, assuming almost the character of a preposition, introduces a factitive object in the nominative or accusative case, according as the predicate is intransitive (passive) or transitive, after the following verbs:

ansehen, to consider as —, erscheinen, to appear,
betrachten, „ darstellen, to represent,
kennen, to know for, etc.

Ich sehe Dich als meinen Bruder an, *I consider you as my brother.* Das betrachtete er als ein gutes Zeichen, *this he considered a good omen.* Er kannte ihn als einen gründlichen Politiker, *he knew him for a profound politician.* Einige Sittenlehrer haben die Schöpfung als einen Tempel Gottes angesehen; andere haben sie als die Wohnung des Allmächtigen betrachtet. Den Marquis hab' ich zwar als Mann von Ehre stets gekannt. (Sch.) Weil er mein Erstaunen als Furcht auslegte. (Sch.) Ihr habt mich stets als eine Feindin nur betrachtet (Sch.) (*you have always considered [= looked upon] me, to be your enemy only*). Du hast mich hier als einen Wüthenden getroffen (G.) (*you have met me here raging [= as one raging]*). Du kanntest meine Gesinnung, die Du so oft als Erbtheil einer zärtlichen Mutter schaltetest (G.) (*you knew my sentiment, which you often disapproved of, as [being] inherited from a tender mother*). Ihr habt die Reizung nicht erwidert, wol gar als leere Formel sie verkannt (Sch.) (*you have not responded to the [= my] inclination [towards you], nay, even perhaps mistaken it as empty form*). The factitive relation (§. 280) expressed by *als*, as in the preceding sentences, may also assume the form of *apposition* (cf. §. 237); e. g. Ich will mein Leben als ein Geschenk aus Eurer Hand empfangen (Sch.) (*I will receive my life at your hands as a boon*). Im Angesichte

meines Königs reich' ich ihr die Hand, als meiner fürstlichen Gemahlin (*in the presence of my king I offer [to] her my hand, as [to] my princely sponse*). Der wird als Bürger sich bewähren, der seine Burg zu schirmen weiß. (Uhl.)

2. Factitive adjective.

When the factitive object is expressed by an ad- 287
jective, it is *undeclined*, and takes no preposition, after the verbs:

werden, to grow, become,	bleiben, to remain, continue,
machen, to make,	lassen, to let,
sehen, to see,	halten, to keep,
finden, to find,	fühlen, to feel,
aussehen, to look,	preisen, to praise,

whereas the verbs enumerated §. 285 and 286, require für and als before the adjective.

Das Wetter wird milder, the weather is getting milder. Sie werden stark, you become stout. Ich sehe mich genöthigt, das zu thun, I find myself obliged to do so. Das Wetter bleibt mild, the weather continues mild. Er kann sich nicht wach halten, he cannot keep himself awake. Laß mich zufrieden, let me alone. Er sieht sehr traurig aus, he looks very sad. Ich sehe ihn beständig heiter, aber ich fühle mein Gemüth ruhelos und unbehaglich, I see him constantly cheerful, but feel my own mind restless and uneasy. Ich kann es nicht geheim halten, I cannot keep it a secret. Er soll dem König ungehorsam werden; die gute Sache wird stark durch einen Königssohn. (Sch.) Bleibt Eurem neuen Herrn getreuer als dem alten. (Sch.) Das einzige Wesen, das mir treu geblieben. (Sch.) Gustav Adolph ließ kein Mittel unversucht, diesen Schritt zu verhindern. (Sch.) Ich fühle Dich mir nahe, (ich fühle) die Einsamkeit belebt. (Uhl.) Laß Du mir ungeschwächt der Väter fromme Sitte. (Uhl.) Wie? hielten schwere Träume mich befangen? (Uhl.) Mein Arm wird stark und groß mein Muth. (Stolb.) Ein Federstrich kann Dich adelig machen; edel kann Dich kein Kaiser machen. *Prov.* Die Strafe macht

Dich frei von dem Gefühl der Schuld. (Rückert.) Ich halte ihn nicht für schuldig, I do not think him guilty. Er gilt für sehr reich, he is considered as being very rich. Er bekennt sich für schuldig, he confesses to be guilty. Ich halte es für klug, neutral zu bleiben, I think it prudent to remain neutral. Den wird man für erlaucht erkennen, der von dem Recht erleuchtet ist. (Uhl.) — Ich betrachte das als gleichgültig, I consider it as indifferent. Er scheint als grausam, he appears as cruel. Du stellst ihn als reich dar, you represent him as rich etc.

The adjective takes no preposition in some idiomatic expressions, like :

vertraulich thun	to converse familiarly,
sich zufrieden geben	„ be content,
„ gefangen „	„ deliver oneself up,
Jemand gefangen nehmen	„ take one prisoner,
„ glücklich schätzen	„ consider one happy,
„ todt schlagen	„ kill one,
„ lieb haben	„ love one,
„ frei sprechen	„ absolve one,
„ heilig sprechen	„ canonize one.

3. *Factitive verb.*

288 The factitive object is expressed by a *verb in the infinitive*, after:

sehen to see,	machen to make,
fühlen to feel,	lassen to let,
bleiben to continue,	heißen to order.
hören to hear,	

Ich sah ihn sterben *), I saw him die. Er hörte mich singen, he heard me sing. Ich fühle den Tod kommen, I feel death approaching. Ich sehe den Hund laufen (= laufend) und höre ihn bellen (= bellend), I see the

*) These *infinitives* are equivalent to *participles*, f. i. sterben = sterbend; singen = singend.

dog run and hear him bark (= *running, barking*) *).
 Alles ist todtenstill, man hört sie Athem holen. (Sch.) Ich
 sah das junge, stolze Blut in seine Wangen steigen (= *stei-*
gend), seinen Busen von fürstlichen Entschlüssen wallen,
 sah sein trunknes Aug' durch die Versammlung fliegen, in
 Wonne brechen. (Sch.) Ich bleibe sitzen, liegen, stehen,
 I continue sitting, lying, standing. Er hieß mich gehen,
 he ordered me to go. Ich fühlte neuen Muth in meiner
 Brust erwachen, I perceived new courage kindle in my
 bosom. Heiß mich nicht reden, heiß mich schweigen. (G.)
 Schnell wirfst Du die Nothwendigkeit verschwinden und
 Recht in Unrecht sich verwandeln sehen. (Sch.) Der Heere
 Vorschritt macht die Erde dröhnen. (Uhl.) Der Sänger
 läßt sein Lied ertönen. (Uhl.)

Instead of a *substantive* in the *accusative*, an *adjective*
 is used; e. g. Er fühlt sich verjüngt (*he feels himself*
restored to youth). Man preiset mich glücklich (Sch.) (*they*
praise me happy). Du hast mich frei erklärt (G.) (*you have*
declared me free). Ich bekenne mich schuldig (Sch.) (*I con-*
fess myself [= *plead*] *guilty*).

The *supine* is used after the verbs:

289

scheinen to seem,	sich dünken	} to imagine,
glauben } to believe,	sich einbilden	
wähnen } to believe,	behaupten to affirm,	
meinen to think,		

and after those verbs which express an energy of, or
 influence upon, human will (§. 283. 2).

Er scheint es nicht zu wissen, he seems not to know
 it. Er glaubt krank zu sein, he believes he is ill. Er
 bildet sich ein, sehr klug zu sein, he imagines he is very
 prudent. Er behauptet, reich zu sein, he affirms that he
 is rich etc.

Remark on the factitive object expressed by the supine **).

*) The ancient or *Ang. Sax. participial* form 'a-running'
 'a-barking' etc.

***) The *supine*, from its origin, represents or is equivalent
 to the *dative* of an *infinitive* connected with the *prepos.* 'zu';

When the *abstract notion* of an *activity*, relates to the *predicate*, as an *expletive*, it is rendered in many cases by the *supine*; e. g. Ich bin, spricht Jener, zu sterben (= zum Tode) bereit (Sch.) (*I am — prepared to die*).

CHAPTER XII.

OBJECT OF LOCALITY.

290 *Adverbial notions* in general are such as express α) the *place*, *time* or the *peculiar manner* in which an *action* is performed, β) or which relate, in the above respects, to a *state* in which any individual *person* or *thing* may be represented as existing.

With peculiar reference to *locality* the relation is threefold, according as the predicate implies either

1. *Motion from a place*, or:
2. *Motion towards a place*, or:
3. *Rest in a place*.

The object of locality is expressed either by a substantive with a preposition, or by adverbs of locality (§. 151); e. g. he lives *in this house*, or: he lives *here*; he goes *to England*, or: he goes *home*.

OBSERVATION. — Under the head of Locality we must comprehend also those metaphorical expressions, in which an abstract substantive is considered as an expression of locality; as: to be schooled *in adversity*, to put one *to death*, *to silence* etc.

e. g. Ich muß einmal zu reden mich entschließen (Sch.) (*I must for once determine to speak*). Was Sie auch Willens sind zu thun (*Whatever you intend to do [= doing]*).

I. *Locality expressed by prepositions.*

Motion from a place is expressed by *von* and *aus*, 291 governing the Dative case. The preposition *von* expresses this motion in the most general way; whilst *aus*, being opposite to *in*, implies a motion *from within a place*; e. g. Er kömmt von einem Freunde, von Paris, von Osten zc.; er kömmt aus dem Hause, aus der Kirche, aus der Stadt. Der Bote kömmt von dem Könige. (G.) Vom Felsen rauscht das Wasser klar, er springt vom Rosse schnell; er schnallt vom Haupte sich den Helm und trinkt vom kühlen Quell. (Uhl.) Was im Menschen nicht ist, kömmt auch nicht aus ihm. (G.) Aus der Wolke quillt der Segen, strömt der Regen, aus der Wolke ohne Wahl zuckt der Strahl. (Sch.) Von der Stirne heiß rinnen muß der Schweiß, soll das Werk den Meister loben; doch der Segen kömmt von Oben. (Sch.)

The preposition *von* denotes moreover the distance from a place; e. g. der Ort liegt zehn Meilen von Berlin; and when connected with *bis*, it expresses the commencement of a space; e. g. vom Rhein bis an die Elbe. — Er ist vom Wirbel bis zur Sohl' in harten Stahl geschnallt. (Uhl.)

In a few instances the *preposition* is omitted, such 292 as, des Weges kommen (*to come that way*) etc. *Motion towards a place and rest in a place* are denoted by the prepositions *in*, *an*, *auf*, *über*, *unter*, *neben*, *vor*, *hinter*, which govern the accusative case when implying *motion*, and the dative case when *rest*; by the prepositions *bei*, *zu*, and *nach* which only govern the dative case, and by *durch* and *um* which govern the accusative case.

Bis in das Innerste der Häuser dringen die Boten der Gewalt. (Sch.) Ins innere Afrika hat sich wenig menschliche Cultur von Carthago aus verbreitet. (Hd.)

The use of these different prepositions depends partly on the particular kind of *objective relation* to be

pointed out, partly on the different manner of determining the place either by a *proper name* of a town or country, or a name of a person, or a common name of a thing (as in: he lives *at* Frankfort, he lives *with* his brother, he lives *in* this house). As to the particular kind of objective relation we must distinguish:

A. *Locality, in a proper sense*, expressing merely the direction of an action, or the place where it is performed; e. g. he goes into the town, he lives in this house etc.

B. *Locality, in a metaphorical sense*, when the object, denoting a place, implies at the same time some particular action or business to be performed in that place; e. g. he went *to bed* (to sleep), will you take this letter *to the post* (to be sent away), he is *at the university* (studying) etc.

A. Locality, in a proper sense.

293 The place where an action is performed, is expressed in a generical manner by *in* (with the dative); motion towards a place is expressed by *nach* (with the Dat.) with *proper names* of places and by *in* (with the Accus.) with *common names* of places:

Motion.

Ich gehe in das Haus, in die
Stadt, in die Kirche,
ich reise nach Frankfurt,
„ „ nach England,
Boten ziehn nach Ost und
West. (Uhl.)

Rest.

ich wohne in dem Hause, in
der Stadt,
ich wohne in Frankfurt,
ich lebe in England,
in bin in der Kirche.
Ich ging im Walde
So für mich hin —
Im Schatten sah ich
Ein Blümlein stehn. (G.)
Mein Herr ist König im Land,
Ich herrsch' im Garten der
Rosen. (Uhl.)

When the notion of locality relates to a person, the prepositions *zu* and *bei* (with the Dat.) are employed.

Ich gehe zu meinem Vater. Ich wohne bei meinem Vater.
 Zu Dionys dem Tyrannen Bei einem Wirth, wundermild,
 schlich Mörser. (Sch.) Da war ich jüngst zu Gaste.
 (Uhl.)
 Das ist bei uns Rechtens.
 (Sch.)

OBSERVATION. — The prep. *bei*, used in this way, to express *locality* (e. g. *ich esse bei meinem Bruder*, I dine with my brother, i. e. in my brother's house), is not to be confounded with *mit*, which denotes *company* (e. g. *ich esse mit meinem Bruder*, I dine together with my brother). *Zu* is also employed after *sprechen*, *reden* &c.; e. g. *sie sprachen zu dem Schiffer*. (Uhl.) *Er redet zu dem Volk*, whilst after *schreiben* the prep. *an* is usual; e. g. *ich schreibe an meinen Bruder*. *Nach* is used, like the E. *for*, in expressions such as: *wir reisten nach Paris ab*, we set out for Paris; *mein Schiff ist nach Neuhorf bestimmt*, my vessel is bound for N. — *Nach* and *zu* are employed irregularly in: *nach Hause home*, *zu Hause at home*.

The following prepositions are expressive of *peculiar kinds of locality*. 294

The preposition *an* relates more particularly to the *precincts* of an object and also denotes *actual contact*; e. g. *ich wohne an dem Rhein*; *ich gehe an den Rhein*. *Frankfurt liegt an dem Main*. *Das Bild hängt an der Wand*. *Ich hänge es an die Wand*. *Das Heer steht an der Grenze*. — *An* is moreover usual in: *am Ende*, at the end; *an diesem Ort*, at this place; *an dieser Stelle*, in this place; *an seiner Stelle*, in his place.

The preposition *bei* signifies vicinity but without contact; e. g. *Dffenbach liegt bei (near) Frankfurt*; and *neben* corresponds to the E. *at the side of*; e. g. *er stand neben dem Wagen*; *er stellte sich neben den König*.

Unter *under*, *below*, is opposed to *auf* *on*, *upon*, and *über* *over*, *above*; e. g. *das Buch liegt nicht auf dem Tische*, sondern *unter dem Tische*. *Lege es auf den Tisch*. *Der Vogel saß auf einem Baume*; *er flog über den Bach*

und setzte sich auf das Haus. Es zieht ein Gewitter über die Stadt.

Über signifies also *across*, *beyond*; e. g. über einen Fluß, über eine Brücke gehen. It is moreover used in a particular manner like the E. *by* or *over*; e. g. er geht über Paris nach London, über Frankreich nach Italien.

In a similar manner *vor*, *before*, and *hinter*, *behind*, are opposed to each other; e. g. Man spannt die Pferde vor den Wagen. Er reitet hinter dem Wagen. Er thut es vor meinen Augen — hinter meinem Rücken.

Zwischen, *between*, always refers to *two* persons or things; when more than two are spoken of, *unter among* must be used; e. g. Er steht zwischen mir und Dir. Stelle Dich zwischen uns. Er stand unter den Bauern.

Durch, *through*, expresses motion through the interior of something; um, like *round* and *about*, refers to the outside of things and implies either motion or rest; e. g. er reiset durch Deutschland, er geht durch die Stadt; ich aber gehe um die Stadt. Er ist immer um (about) den König.

Remark: In some *peculiar expressions*, the *genitive* is used in *local relations*; e. g. Man sucht ihn aller Orten (*they are looking [out] for him at every place or all over*). Aller Orten läßt der Engländer sein sieghaft Banner fliegen. (Sch.) Des Weges kam er (Sch.) (*he came [litr. 'of that way' =] that way* *). Dort seh' ich drei scharfe Schüden linker Hand **) um ein Feuer sitzen. (Sch.)

Examples.

Am Rhein, am Rhein, da wachsen unsre Neben. Da wachsen sie am Ufer hin. (Claud.) Ich schlief am Blütenhügel, hart an des Thales Rand. (Uhl.) Zu Haus und in

*) In some cases however, the *acc. (absol.)* is used; e. g. Zwei Wanderer steht er die Straße ziehn. (Sch.)

**) Litr. 'of the' (= to the) left.

dem Kriege herrscht der Mann. (G.) Er muß sich setzen auf den Fels; er schlummert auf demselben Stein, das Haupt gesenket auf die Brust. (Uhl.) Auf den Bergen ist Freiheit. (Sch.)

Schön ist der Friede, ein lieblicher Knabe
Liegt er gelagert am ruhigen Bach;
Und die hüpfenden Lämmer grasen
Luftig um ihn auf dem sonnigen Rasen. (Sch.)

Auf den Wellen ist Alles Welle,
Auf dem Meer ist kein Eigenthum. (Sch.)

Über Thal und Fluß getragen
Ziehet rein der Sonnenwagen. (G.)

Es steht ein Regenbogen wol über jenem Haus. (G.)

Über diesen Strom vor Jahren
Bin ich schon einmal gefahren. (Uhl.)

Und unter den Füßen ein nebliges Meer,
Erkennt er (der Alpenjäger) die Städte der Menschen nicht
- mehr;

Durch den Riß nur der Wolken erblickt er die Welt,
Tief unter den Wassern das grünende Feld. (Sch.)

Durch diese hohle Gasse muß er kommen,
Es führt kein anderer Weg nach Rößnacht. (Sch.)

Die Ritter alle fielen vor des Königs starkem Sohne,
Aber vor des Kampfes Gitter ritt zuletzt ein schwarzer
Ritter. (Uhl.)

Hinter dem schwarzen Wolkenflor da glänzt des Vollmonds
Licht. (Uhl.) Nur durch das Morgenthor des Schönen
dringst du in der Erkenntniß Land. (Sch.)

Es tritt ein Wandersmann herfür
An eines Dorfes Schenke;
Er setzt sich vor des Hauses Thür
Im Schatten auf die Bänke,
Und legt sein Bündel neben sich. (Schlegel.)

Man rettet gern aus trüber Gegenwart
Sich in das heitere Gebiet der Kunst. (Uhl.)

Die offene Straße ziehet über Steinen; doch einen kürzern Weg kann euch mein Knabe über Lomerz führen. (Sch.) Ich wandle zwischen Freud' und Schmerz in der Einsamkeit. (G.)

B. Locality, in a metaphorical sense.

- 295 When the *object of locality* does not relate so much to *place*, as to some *definite* business or action, to be performed in that place, the prepositions *auf* and *zu* are employed in the following manner:

Er bringt einen Brief auf die Post (to be sent away).

Er ist auf der Universität (studying).

Ich gehe auf die Jagd (hunting), auf den Ball (dancing).

Er geht auf das Lesezimmer (in order to read).

Sie lebt auf dem Lande. Er reist auf die Messe, auf den Markt.

Er ist auf keiner Akademie gewesen. (G.)

Ich gehe zu Tisch, zu Bett, zur Kirche.

Ich sitze zu Tisch, liege zu Bett.

Ich gehe zu Schiffe. Das Kind kommt zur Welt (is born).

Ich stehe ihm (Dat. §. 271) zur Seite (I assist him).

Ich werfe mich ihm zu Füßen (in order to implore him).

- 296 A great many compound expressions of the same kind are now employed to denote simple ideas, in a metaphorical sense; the following are remarkable:

zum Äußersten kommen	to come to extremities,
zu Grunde gehen	to be ruined,
zu Schaden kommen	to come to harm,
zu Stande kommen	to be accomplished,
zu Jahren kommen	to grow older,
zu Vernunft kommen	to listen to reason,
zu Ende gehen	to come to a close,
in Ohnmacht fallen	to swoon,
in Schlaf fallen	to fall asleep,
etwas im Gedächtniß behalten	to remember something,
Einen in den Bann thun	to excommunicate one,
in See stechen	to put to sea,

sich auf die Wissenschaften legen	to apply to sciences,
etwas auf die lange Bank schieben	to delay something,
ein Heer auf die Beine bringen	to raise an army,
den Feind aufs Haupt schlagen	to defeat the enemy,
aus der Rolle fallen	to act out of character,
Jemanden beim Wort halten	to take one at his word,
hinter's Licht führen	to deceive.

II. *Adverbs of locality.*

The *place* and the *direction* of any *action*, relative 297 to the *speaker*, are denoted by *adverbs of locality*.

In German the different kinds of relation of locality, and principally the particular directions of an action, are pointed out in a peculiar manner by the adverbs of locality, *her* — *hin*, and their compounds with other adverbs or prepositions: *hierher*, *dorthin* — *hinunter*, *hinauf*, *herein*, *heraus* &c. Einen goldnen Becher werf ich *hinab* (Sch.), *a gold cup I am throwing down (into the vortex)*. Er wirft sich *hinein* in die brausende Flut (Sch.), *he throws himself down into the roaring flood*. Da stürzet die raubende Rotte *hervor* aus des Waldes nächtlichem Ort. (Sch.)

The adverb *her*, in fact, implies a motion towards the speaker, and *hin* a motion away from him; either of them must be added whenever a verb requires a completing object of locality, which, however, is not expressed; e. g. ich lege mich *hin* (auf die Erde). Wo kommst du *her*? (Aus der Stadt.) The adverbs *her* and *hin* are compounded with the demonstrative adverbs *hier here*, *da and dort there*, and the interrogative adverb *wo where*, which commonly take the principal accent; e. g. komme nicht *hierher*, sondern gehe *dorthin*. Lege das Buch *dahin*. *Wohin* soll ich das Buch legen? &c.

298 The particular kinds of locality, explained §. 294, are expressed by the adverbs:

oben above,	unten (ab) below,
außen (aus) outside,	innen (ein) inside,
vorn before,	hinten behind.

These adverbs, or the corresponding prepositions, are sometimes compounded with *da* (or *dar*, §. 142), when rest is to be denoted, and always with *her* or *hin*, when the verb implies motion from or towards the speaker; *her* and *hin* are sometimes supplied by the preposition *von* and *nach*;

er ist oben (droben),	er geht hinauf,	er kömmt herauf,
er ist unten (drun-	er geht hinunter	er kömmt herunter
ten),	(or hinab),	(or herab),
er ist draußen,	er geht hinaus,	er kömmt heraus,
er ist drinnen,	er geht hinein,	er kömmt herein,
er ist vorn,	er geht nach vorn	er kömmt von vorn,
er ist hinten,	er geht hintenhin	er kömmt hintenher
	(or nach hinten),	(or von hinten).

Of the same description are the following:

er ist drüben,	er geht hinüber,	er kömmt herüber,
(beyond, on the other side)		
er geht hindurch,	er kömmt herbei.	

These compound adverbs are sometimes connected with a preceding substantive in the accusative case; e. g. *ich gehe den Berg hinunter, die Treppe hinauf, ich ziehe die Straße hindurch* &c. *Er kömmt eben den langen Gang herauf.* (G.) *Was klingen und singet die Straß' herauf?* (Uhl.) *Und (sie) rudern mit bekränztem Rahn den See hinab, den See hinan* (Bürg.) (*and they are rowing in a boat [= gondola] wreathed with flowers down the lake [and] up the lake*). *Hörst du, Liebchen, das muntere Geschrei den flaminischen Weg her?* (G.) *do you hear, o my love! the cheerful clamour (proceeding hither) from the 'via Flaminia'.*

The adverbs *herein*, *heraus*, *hinein*, *hinaus* are frequently preceded by a substantive with the prep. *zu*;

e. g. er trat zur Thür herein; der Vogel flog zum Fenster hinaus; he entered by the door; the bird flew in by the window.

In the same manner, the following compound expressions are employed: um die Stadt her, um mich her, von Anfang an, von da an, bis dort hin, von England her, von Grund aus, von Frankreich aus, nach Norden zu, nach England hin etc.

A great many other adverbs of locality are used in German, as in English, as will appear from the following examples.

Hier liegt die Burg im Abendschimmer,
Drüben rauscht das Meer wie immer. (Uhl.)

Und draußen am allerletzten Haus
Da schauet ein Mägdlein zum Fenster heraus. (Uhl.)

Schauet hinab, wie herrlich liegen die schönen Gebiete nicht da, und unten Weinberg' und Gärten; dort die Scheunen und Ställe. (G.) Ich lief wie ein Wiesel dahin und dorthin, Treppen hinauf und hinab. (G.) Wo Parteien entstehen, hält Jeder sich hüben und drüben. (G.) Wer nicht vorwärts geht, der kommt zurück. (G.) Von fern her kommen wir gezogen. (Sch.)

Droben stehet die Kapelle, schauet still ins Thal hinab;
Drunten singt bei Wies' und Quelle froh und hell der
Hirtenknab'. (Uhl.)

Hermann säumte nicht und fuhr bergan wie bergunter.
(G.) Ich wandre schon seit Jahren die Lande aus und ein. (Schlegel.)

Da droben auf jenem Berge
Da steh' ich tausendmal,
An meinem Stabe gebogen,
Und schaue hinab in das Thal. (G.)

CHAPTER XIII.

OBJECT OF TIME.

300 The relation of time is twofold, according as the object is denoting out either:

1. *the point of time, when* an action is performed, or:
2. *the duration of time, how long* the action continues to be performed.

Both the point and duration of time may be determined either by those names of dates and epochs, generally adopted (proper names of time), as: Sunday etc., morning, evening, six o'clock, a week, a month, a year etc., or by referring the action to some other action or event, the time of which is considered to be known, as: sunrise, a war, a person's arrival etc.

The object of time is, in German, expressed by a substantive with or without a preposition, or by one of those Adverbs of time, explained §. 152.

I. *Point of Time.*

301 The *point of time* expressed with reference to the *predicate* is either:

- A. *synchronous* (i. e. *simultaneous*) with the object.
- B. preceding the *object*, and
- C. succeeding it.

A. *Point of time synchronous*

(i. e. *simultaneous with another object*).

a. When the point of time in which an action is or was performed, is expressed by *proper names of time*, they are in the accusative or genitive case, or take one of the prepositions *in, an, um, gegen, zu*.

The preposition *in*, with the dative case, is usually employed with all substantives denoting a space of time, except *Tag*, *Morgen* and *Abend*, which require the preposition *an*, and *Zeit* and *Mal*, which commonly take the prepos. *zu*. The *hour* is expressed by *um* (*um ein Uhr*, at one o'clock; *um halb zwei*, at half past one), and *um* is likewise usual with *Mittag* and *Mitternacht*. Eine geheime Unterredung, die der Prinz am Abend seiner Flucht zu Stande bringen sollte (Sch.) (*a secret conference which the prince was to bring about at the evening of his flight*). An einem Morgen ist der Herzog fort (Sch.) (*some morning the Duke will be gone*).

The preposition *in*, with *dat.* is used relative to a *spoint of time*, e. g. Schiller wurde im Jahr 1759 im November geboren, und starb am 9. Mai 1805. — Mein Bruder besuchte mich in der vorigen Woche am Dienstag, und reiste in der folgenden Nacht um 2 Uhr wieder ab. — Sie mahnen mich zur rechten Zeit. — Ich sah ihn zum ersten Male. — Es stand in alten Zeiten ein Schloß, so hoch und hehr. (Uhl.) Wir haben in den Tagen unsres Glanzes, dem Schmeichler ein zu willig Ohr geliehen. (Sch.)

Fürwahr, es ist sehr wohlgethan,
Daß Ihr am frohen Tag erscheint:
Habt Ihr es vormals doch mit uns
An bösen Tagen gut gemeint. (G.)

Am Morgen lustwandelten Frauen, am Abend fochten die Helden. (Uhl.)

OBSERVATION. — Remark the following *peculiarities* in German: *im* Anfang, *at* the beginning, and *am* Ende, *at* the end.

The *accusative case* also is frequently made use of, with- 302
out any preposition, when time is denoted in a definite way, by adding to the name of the time some pronoun, adjective or adverb; e. g. er starb diesen Morgen, die letzte Nacht, gestern Abend, vorgestern Mittag; den fünfundzwanzigsten Mai. Göthe wurde den 28. August 1749 geboren und starb den 22. März 1832. —

Und so drei Nächte nach einander ließ die Heilige sich sehn. (Sch.) Noch diese Nacht muß er Madrid verlassen. (Sch.)

Instead of the *Acc.* the *prepos.* *an* is used in certain cases; e. g. Noch an eben dem Abend erschien Gustav Adolph auf der gegenüberliegenden Ebene. (Sch.)

The *genitive case*, on the other hand, denotes a point of time in an indefinite manner; e. g. er kam eines Tages zu mir; heutiges Tags, now-a-days, nächster Tage, one of these days. The genitive case is *especially* employed with reference to an *indefinite frequency* or *habitual recurrence*; e. g. die Rätthe versammelten sich des Mittags, so oft es der Herzog für gut fand (Sch.) (the counsellors assembled [= were *in the habit of assembling*] at noon, whenever the Duke thought proper. — Die Zeit verstrich ihm angenehm; des Morgens stand er mit neuer Hoffnung auf, des Abends ruhte er von der Arbeit und des Nachts schlief er gut. — In jüngern Tagen war ich des Morgens froh, des Abends weint' ich. — Tages Arbeit, Abends Gäste. (G.)

About is expressed by *um* and *gegen*; e. g. um diese Zeit, um Ostern, gegen 12 Uhr, gegen Abend. — Er wollte ja erst gegen 11 Uhr abreisen. (Sch.)

The limits of a *defined* or *definite* time, is expressed in German by: *binnen* and *innerhalb*; *binnen* is only used when speaking of future time; e. g. binnen vier Tagen soll sich ausweisen, wer von uns beiden Herr der Welt sein wird. (Sch.) Die Briefe lauten, daß Carlos binnen Mitternacht und Morgen Madrid verlassen soll. (Sch.) Wenn binnen dieser Zeit kein Heer im Feld erschien. (Sch.) Der Herzog landete innerhalb acht Tagen in Genua. (Sch.) Aus den wohlthätigen Stiftungen der Voreltern war der Reichthum der Kirche innerhalb eines Jahrtausendes zusammengelassen. (Sch.)

- 303 b. When the time of an action is fixed by referring it to some simultaneous action or event, the preposition *bei* is used; e. g. bei Sonnenaufgang, bei seiner Ankunft, bei dem Tode des Königs, bei dieser Gelegenheit, bei Tages

Anbruch. — Bei jedem Abschied zittert mir das Herz. (Sch.)
 Wer sah's, wie er beim letzten Hofball seine Dame, die Königin, im Tanze stehen ließ. (Sch.)

When the simultaneous action is of a longer duration, the prepos. *unter*, with the dative, and *während*, with the genitive, are employed, like the E. *during*; e. g. *Unter Karl's des Fünften Regierung* war Antwerpen die lebendigste und herrlichste Stadt in der Welt. (Sch.)
Während der spanischen Religionsverfolgung hatten sich einige protestantische Familien in die katholische Reichsstadt Aachen geflüchtet. (Sch.)

B. When the *predicate* is denoted as *preceding* the *object* relative to *time*, the preposition *vor*, with the dative, is employed, both for the E. *before*, and *ago*; e. g. *vor Abend*, before evening; *vor Sonnenaufgang*, before sunrise; *vor 6 Uhr*, before six o'clock; *vor dem Krieg*, before the war; *vor zwei Jahren*, two years ago; *vor einer Woche*, a week ago; *vor einigen Tagen*, a few days ago. *Vor einer Stunde* ging er weg. — Er will doch wiederkommen? — *Vor Mittag* noch, versprach er. (Sch.)
 Wir standen als Gemeinde noch *vor dreißig Jahren* bei Köln am Rhein. (Sch.)

C. When the *predicate* is denoted as *succeeding* the *object* relative to *time*, the prepositions *nach*, *after*, and *in*, *in*, are used; e. g. *nach Sonnenaufgang*, after sunrise; *nach 6 Uhr*, after six o'clock; *nach dem Kriege*, after the war; *in zwei Jahren*, in two years; *in einer Woche*, in a week; *in einigen Tagen*, in a few days. *Thue, was vor dir kein Weib gethan, nach dir kein Weib thun wird.* (Sch.)

In some cases the *prepos.* *auf* is employed; e. g. *auf blut'ge Schlachten* folgt Gesang und Tanz. (Sch.) *Und Welle auf Welle* zerrinnet. And *lastly*, the *prepos.* *über* (with *acc.*) and *in* (with *dat.*) are used, with reference to *future* actions or events; e. g. *über kurz oder lang* sind Sie *Ambassadeur* (*you will be ambassador, within a shorter or longer space of time* [= *some time or the other*], or, *at a more or less distant period*). *Ueber ein Kleines* so

werdet ihr mich sehen und über ein Kleines — (St. John 16. 16).

Hence it follows, that the prepositions *in*, with the dative, and *über*, with the accusative, are only employed with an object, expressing a *space of future time*; *über* implies that the action of the predicate is not to be performed *earlier*, and *in* that it is not to be performed *later* than after the space of time, fixed by the object.

II. Duration of Time.

306 The *duration of time*, relating to the *predicate*, is generally expressed by the *simple accusative*; e. g. er denkt den ganzen Tag (G.) (*he is thinking all the day*). Er war beim König zwei volle Stunden (Sch.) (*he was with the King two whole hours*). An dem Ufer steh' ich ganze Tage, das Land der Griechen suchend (G.) (*on the shore I stand whole days, looking out for the land of the Greeks*).

Duration of *time* is also expressed by the prepositions *in* (with the dative), *in*, *seit*, *since*, and *bis*, *till*; e. g. Rom ist nicht in Einem Tage gebaut. — In sechs Tagen hat Gott die Welt geschaffen. — Seit Ostern bin ich krank. — Er schläft seit drei Stunden. — Die Frau von Humboldt ist seit einiger Zeit hier (Niebuhr). Seit gestern sind wir deß gewiß (Sch.) (*since yesterday we are sure of this*). Er schläft bis acht Uhr. — Er bleibt bis Ostern in England.

Remark. *Emphatically* the preposition *durch* is also added, to denote duration; e. g. die Lerche erfreut uns den ganzen Sommer durch mit ihrem freundlichen Liede (Krum.)

OBSERVATIONS. 1. The adverb *lang* (as an *improper preposition*) is placed after the *accusative* in some cases, in order to denote the *duration of time*, relative to an *action*, more *emphatically*, when, in English the emphasis is produced by employing the *prepos.* 'for'; e. g. acht Tage lang, *for a week*; drei Jahre lang, *for three years*. Ich habe Jahre lang mich darauf vorbereitet (Sch.) (*I have for years been preparing myself for it*). Du hast es

Jahre lang bedacht (Sch.) (*you have been thinking upon it for years*). Die Treue, vierzig Jahre lang bewahrt (Sch.) (*faith kept for forty [whole] years*).

2. Bis (*till, until*) denotes the *final* point of *space of time* or *duration*, and is, in most cases, connected with another preposition; e. g. er bleibt bis zum Abend, bis in den Winter. — Ich bin ihm treu geblieben bis zum Tod. (Sch.) — Jede Tugend ist fleckenfrei bis auf den Augenblick der Probe. (Sch.) — Der König hatte den Feldzug bis tief in den Winter verlängert (Sch.) (*the king had prolonged the campaign until late in the winter*). Only before *adverbs of time* and some names of *dates*, as: Ostern, Pfingsten, Weihnachten, the prepos. bis does not require another preposition; e. g. bis jetzt, bis morgen, bis gestern, bis Ostern. Bis jetzt muß ich in Spanien ein Fremdling sein (*hitherto I was compelled to be a stranger in Spain*). Bis hierher bin ich ohne Schuld (*up to this moment I am without guilt*).

Adverbs of time.

A list of adverbs of time has been given §.152. In 307 this place some remarks must be added in order to explain some *peculiarities* of the German idiom.

Einſt or einmal, *once*, is employed to express a remote time, both past and future, in the most indefinite manner; e. g. Einſt auch glühten meine Wangen, nun ist alles Roth vergangen. (Uhl.) Einſt wird kommen der Tag, da die heilige Ilion hinsinkt. (Boß.)

Jüngſt, kürzlich denote a *past* time, not very distant from time *present*; e. g. Oft einſt hatte ſie mich mit duftigen Rosen beſchenkt. Eine noch sproſte mir jüngſt aus der Geliebteſten Grab. (Uhl.) — Bei einem Wirthe, wundermild, da war ich jüngſt zu Gaſte. (Uhl.)

Neulich is used like the E. *the other day*; e. g. der Sturmwind hat neulich ganze Wälder ausgeriſſen. (G.)

Sonſt originally means *at another time*; e. g. er trinkt heute Wein, ſonſt trinkt er Waſſer. — Sonſt (*formerly*)

war ich selbst mit in Feld und Wald; jetzt kann ich nichts mehr als den Schaffner machen. (Sch.)

Erst, *first*, schon, *already*, and noch, *still*, yet, if referred to the predicate, are employed in the same manner, as the corresponding adverbs in English; e. g. ich will erst arbeiten und dann spielen; er schläft noch, und es ist schon 10 Uhr. — Erst handeln und dann reden. (Sch.) Von Jugend auf hab' ich gelernt gehorchen, erst meinen Eltern und dann einer Gottheit. (G.)

Noch ahnt man kaum der Sonne Licht,
Noch sind die Morgenglocken nicht
Im finstern Thal erklungen.
Ich hab' mich längst ins Feld gemacht
Und habe schon dies Lied erdacht,
Und hab' es laut gesungen. (Uhl.)

These adverbs are, however, more extensively employed in German than in English, being frequently referred, not to the verb, but to another object of time, as: erst gestern, schon heute, noch diesen Abend. Such modes of expression, being generally contrary to the English idiom, cannot be literally translated; and the adverbs erst, schon, noch, are either entirely *suppressed* in English or rendered by *circumlocution*; erst implies *not before*, schon *not later than*; noch is used to give particular emphasis to the object of time (*at no other time than*); e. g. er ist erst gestern angekommen (not until yesterday) und will schon morgen abreisen (*so soon as tomorrow*). Er will noch heute Abend abreisen (this very evening). The following combinations are very usual: erst eben, just now; schon wieder, again; schon zum zweiten, dritten Male; noch immer, noch nie &c.

Bald signifies *soon*, but when repeated, it denotes: *now — then*.

Bersunken war ich in die frommen Sagen;
Bald kniet' ich vor Sanct Albans Wundersteine,
Bald schaut' ich Regiswird im Rosenscheine,
Bald sah ich Helicenas Münster ragen. (Uhl.)

The following compound expressions are to be re- 308
marked :

once, twice a day	einmal, zweimal des Tages, or täglich,
every other day	einen Tag um den andern, or alle zwei Tage,
every day	alle Tage, or immer,
ever since	seitdem immer,
this day week	heute über acht Tage,
„ „ fortnight	„ „ vierzehn Tage,
now-a-days, in our time	heut zu Tage,
by this time	jetzt, schon,
day by day	Tag für Tag,
for the time to come	in Zukunft,
for a while	auf einige Zeit,
at all times	stets, immer,
at any time	jemals,
at no time	niemals,
by that time	unterdessen,
for a time	eine Zeit lang,
from time to time	von Zeit zu Zeit.

CHAPTER XIV.

OBJECT OF MANNER.

The *object of manner* answering to the question *how?* 309 denotes the *particular kind* of the action, and may be regarded as an *attributive* to the latter; thus f. i. 'he speaks gracefully' = 'his speaking is graceful'. In as much as the *object of manner* qualifies the *predicate*, it is expressed:

1. by *particular adverbs* of manner;
2. by *genitives* of *substantives* and by a *substantive* with a *preposition* (mit, ohne, an, auf, nach, zu).

1. *Adverbs of manner.*

In *English* the *adverb* is usually distinguished from the *adjective* by the inflection *ly*, but in order to obtain a clear insight into the use of *German adverbs*, we may hint to phrases in English, like the following: *to ride fast, to work hard* (which likewise are *uninflected adjective-forms*); — in the latter manner now every adjective may be used, in German, as an adverb of manner, without assuming any affix (like the English *ly*); e. g. er schreibt schön (beautifully), er läuft schnell. Das Regiment hat sich brav gehalten. — Wer leicht glaubt, wird leicht betrogen (*he that easily believes, is easily deceived*). Vergieb, daß ich mir eigenmächtig mein Geschick erkoren (Sch.) (*pardon me, for having arbitrarily chosen my fate*). Nicht frei erwählt' ich's (Sch.) (*I did not chose it freely*). So offen dürfen wir's nicht treiben (Sch.) (*so openly we dare not carry matters on*). Wir find's gewohnt, daß man uns gut begegnet (Sch.) (*we are used to people treating us well*).

2. *Manner expressed by the Genitive.*

For the most part consisting of *ancient adverbial forms* and moreover chiefly used in *colloquial expressions*; e. g. stehenden Fußes (Lat. 'stante pede') *on the very spot, immediately*; eilends (*in haste*); zusehends (*visibly*); blindlings (*blindly*); glücklicherweise (*fortunately*). Schnellen Blicks erkannte sie ihn (Sch.) (*at a quick glance she recognized him*). Unverrichteter Sache abziehen ('infectare abire'). This *ancient form* we still repeatedly meet with in *modern poetry*; e. g. nicht eine Gunst war's, für die ich dir schon volles Herzens zu danken kam. (Sch.) Hörst du das Hifthorn klingen mächtigen Rufes? (Sch.) Nicht leichten Kampfes siegt der Glaube. (Körner.) Nach Uri fahr' ich stehenden Fußes (Sch.) Ich leist' euch jede Sicherheit, die ihr vernünft'ger Weise von mir fordern möget. (Sch.)

3. *Manner* expressed by *preposition*.

The prepositions employed in the *adverbial object* of 310 *manner* are the following: mit, ohne, an, auf, nach, zu.

Remark. The *preposition* bei remains (from the old German) as preposition of *manner* in expressions with nennen (*to name, call*); schwören (*to swear, take an oath*), as in English: *to name, or, call a person by his right name; to swear by heaven or by all that is holy etc.* (beim Himmel oder bei Allem, was heilig ist, schwören).

The prepositions mit and ohne are employed, in German, like *with* and *without*, to denote both the manner in which something is done, and the *instrument**) with which an action is performed; e. g. er spricht mit lauter Stimme, aber ohne Gefühl. Der Riese mit der Stange schlug. (Uhl.) Er stach nach euch mit dem Messer. (G.) Auf des Lebens Bahn dahin fliegt der Mensch mit Sturmeseile. (Uhl.) Er tanzt ohne Anmuth. Er isst ohne Gabel. Er treibt sein Geschäft ohne Ernst. Er hat sein Vermögen ohne Mühe erworben. Wie das Gestirn, ohne Hast, aber ohne Raft, drehe sich Jeder um die eigene Last. (G.)

The preposition an is only used with the superlative degree of adverbs of manner (§. 167); e. g. es ist nichts natürlicher, als daß ein König denen seine Befehle am liebsten aufträgt, die sie am besten verstehen. (G.) Wir verlegen am meisten, die wir am zärtlichsten lieben. (G.) Unter allen

*) Similarly in *Latin*, when rendered by the '*Ablativus*' or in *Greek* by the '*Dativus Instrumenti*' or *Dat. rei instrumentis*; e. g. πατάσσειν ῥάβδῳ (*to heat with a stick, cf. Schiller, damit* litr. '*therewith*' i. e. *with this sword*) vertilge meines Volkes Feinde (comp. the Examples given in the *Text*).

Rem. 1. Instead of nach, the *improper preposition* gemäß is employed; e. g. er lebte seiner Gesinnung und seinem Stande gemäß sehr einsam. (G.)

Rem. 2. The substantive, in *adverbial expressions*, is in some cases omitted; e. g. man beschloß, auf das schnellste eine militärische Macht zu errichten (*they resolved upon establishing a military force, in the most expeditious manner*). Du hast die Wachen vertheilt? Auf's genaueste. (G.)

Rittern gefällt er mir am besten. (G.) Wer wird nach ihm am würdigsten ihn (i. e. den Orden) tragen? (Sch.)

The preposition *auf*, with the accusative, is only used with the substantives *Art* and *Weise*, and with the superlative degree, if there is no comparison (§. 187). Wir dienen ihm auf unsre Art. (G.) Wir verrechnen uns auf ganz verschiedene Weise. (Sch.) Mir vergönne, daß ich auf meine Weise mich betrage. (Sch.) (Comp. Remark at the end).

Auf dem Wege (dative) means: *in this way*. Ich will auf kürzerm Wege mir Licht verschaffen. (Sch.) Was ich zwar längst auf anderm Wege schon in Erfahrung brachte. (Sch.)

The preposition *nach* denotes manner in conformity with something; e. g. Leise nach des Liedes Klange füget sich der Stein zum Stein. (Sch.) Da geht Alles nach Kriegsgesitt'. (Sch.) Ihr artet mehr nach Eures Vaters Geist. (Sch.)

The preposition *zu* is used in some phrases expressing the manner of going, travelling etc.; e. g. zu Fuße gehen, zu Pferde reisen, zu Lande nach Indien reisen, zu Schiffe hinreisen &c.

Manner is expressed in a peculiar mode, by comparing one thing with an other. The German language then employes the adverb *wie* (like), and the object must agree in case with the word with which it is compared; e. g. du hast wie ein guter Vater, und er wie ein gehorsamer Sohn behandelt. Du hast ihn wie einen Verbrecher behandelt. Heiter blickst du, wie ein Glücklicher, um dich. (Sch.) Da stand er plötzlich an des Klosters Pforte, schön wie ein Gott, und männlich wie ein Held. (Sch.)

CHAPTER XV.

OBJECT OF CAUSALITY.

General definitions.

The *adverbial notions of causality* are those, which 311 indicate either the *ground* (comprehending *cause, motive, reason*) or the *designed effect* or *purpose* of the *action*.

The *ground* may be: α) *actual*; e. g. *he has acquired wealth by industry.* β) *conditional*; e. g. *with a fair wind, the ship will soon be in port.* γ) *adversative*; *he does not lose courage, notwithstanding adversities.*

The *real ground* comprehends, implies or designates:

1. The *cause*, which of *itself* produces or effects the action of the subject; e. g. *he dies of hunger.*

2. The *means* by which an intention is effected; e. g. *she touched him by her tears.*

3. The *material* of which any thing is made; e. g. *to make a rope from hemp.*

4. The *argument* by which the subject is conscious of something; e. g. *to know by experience.*

5. The *moral cause*, or, *motive* which induces the subject to perform the action; e. g. *to do something from avarice, from jealousy.*

6. The *purpose* (or *final cause*), which is the *designed effect* of an action; e. g. *he goes armed for safety* (= *in order to be*; or, *for the purpose* or *with the intent of being safe*); *I do this for your advantage.*

The *purpose* may also involve the *motive*; e. g. *er arbeitet für seine Kinder* (*he labours for his children*); but the *moral cause* or *motive* is not in all cases the *purpose*; e. g. *he is sparing*, or, *lives sparingly for the sake of his*

children (= *he desires the good of his children, therefore he is frugal*).

These different relations of *causality* are expressed by *prepositions* and are in *German* more definitely distinguished than in *English* by the *prepositions* used, viz.:

The *cause* by *von, vor, wegen*.

The *means* by *durch, mittelst*.

The *material* by *aus*.

The *argument* by *aus, an, nach, zufolge, laut*.

The *motive* by *aus, wegen, halben, um — willen*.

The *purpose* by *zu, für*.

1. Cause.

312 When a cause is acting in a positive manner, producing the action of the subject, it is expressed by *von* (with the dative). When, on the other hand, it acts in a negative way, suppressing or preventing an action, or overpowering the subject, it is denoted by *vor* (with the dative); e. g. *die Flüsse schwellen von dem Regen. Er ist von hoher Sonne trunken, er ist von süßen Schmerzen matt. (Uhl.) Von des Vaters Blute triefen soll des Sohnes Stahl. (Sch.) — Man kann vor Nebel nichts sehen, vor Lärm nichts hören. — Er sieht den Wald vor Bäumen nicht. Prov. Ich schlafe vor Langerweile ein. Er weint vor Freude. Er konnte vor Müdigkeit und Hunger kaum etwas vorbringen. (G.) Vor dem Glauben gilt keine Stimme der Natur. (Sch.) Er kennt vor lauter Gelehrsamkeit seinen Vater nicht. (G.)*

OBSERVATION. If what prevents you from doing something, is your being occupied with another thing, the preposition *über* (with the dative) is employed; e. g. *Wer das Große über dem Kleinen versäumt, heißt mit Recht einfältig. (Jacobs.) Über der Beschreibung vergeß' ich den ganzen Krieg. (Sch.)*

The preposition *wegen* (with the genitive) denotes

an external *obstacle* preventing something; e. g. das Schiff konnte, ungünstiger Winde wegen, nicht auslaufen.

2. *The means.*

The preposition *durch* (with the accusative) denotes 313 the means, by which some purpose is effected; e. g. er erwirbt sich *durch* den Handel ein Vermögen. Sich *durch* Geschenke Freunde machen. Kein Mensch wird je *durch* Nachahmung groß. Die Niederländer schützen sich *durch* Dämme gegen ihren Ocean. (Sch.) Der Mensch ist frei *durch* Vernunft, stark *durch* Geseze, *durch* Sanftmuth groß, und reich *durch* Schätze. (Sch.) Die Masse der Gedanken wird nicht erworben *durch* Lesen, sondern *durch* Denken, so wie man nicht reich wird *durch* Vorgen, sondern *durch* Erwerben. (S. Jacobi). *Durch* Vergleichung der Wahrheit mit den Irrthümern wird man genöthigt, besser auf die unterscheidenden Merkmale beider aufzumerken (Fichte.)

In some instances 'durch' denotes the cause as *not efficient*, and without involving *final purpose*; e. g. er macht sich *durch* sein Betragen verdächtig (*he renders himself suspected by his behaviour*).

OBSERVATION. The preposition *durch* is always employed, when the subject itself is considered as producing some effect by some means; whilst, when the preposition *von* (§. 312) is employed, the subject is conceived to suffer the influence of the object. On the other hand, *the means* (*durch*, *by*) is to be distinguished from the *instrument* (*mit*, *with*, §. 310), and from the *personal object* (*von*, *by*, §. 273). The personal object is a *person* or a *thing*, considered to act like a person; e. g. Cesar was killed *by Brutus*, Cäsar wurde *von Brutus* getödtet; the instrument is a *concrete thing*; e. g. er erstach ihn *mit* einem Dolch. The means is generally an action, expressed by an *abstract* substantive; e. g. er glaubt sich *durch* falsches Zeugniß retten zu können. Wollt ihr die Wahrheit *durch* ein solches Opfer ehren? (Sch.) Denkt ihr, daß sie sich *durch* einen Eid gebunden glauben werden, den ihr ihnen *durch* Gaukelfünfte abgelöstet? (Sch.)

The preposition *vermittelt* (with the genitive) is employed instead of both *durch* and *mit*. *Vermittelt* dieser Verhandlungen suchte er zu bewirken — (*by means of these negotiations he endeavoured to effect*).

3. *The materials.*

- 311 The substance of which an object is made, is denoted in German by *aus* (with the dative); e. g. *aus Marmor ein Bild machen* (to make an image of marble). In *Hast und Eile baut der Soldat aus Leinwand eine leichte Stadt.* (Sch.) *Mich schuf aus gröberm Stoffe die Natur.* (Sch.) *Fest gemauert in der Erde steht die Form, aus Lehm gebrannt.* (Sch.)

The preposition *von* often takes the place of *aus*, particularly when the verb (made, built etc.) is omitted, as is the case in the attributive combination; e. g. *ein Tisch von Holz, von Stein* (§. 240, 3), and *in*: *der Tisch ist von Holz; das Haus ist von Stein* &c.

4. *The argument.*

- 315 The argument, i. e. the cause by which one knows something, is expressed by *aus, an, nach, zufolge, laut.*

The preposition *aus* denotes the origin from which some knowledge is derived; e. g. *ich weiß es aus Erfahrung, aus der Zeitung.* *Das bewies er Alles aus der Bibel.* (G.) *Ich will dir nur gestehen, daß ich es aus des Fürsten Mund habe.* (Sch.)

OBSERVATION. When the object is a person, the preposition *von* is employed instead of *aus*; e. g. *ich weiß von meinem Bruder.*

The preposition *an* denotes a mark by which something is distinguished; e. g. *man kennt den Vogel an den Federn.* *Man sieht's dir an den Augen an, gewiß du hast geweint.* (G.) *Am reinen Glanz will ich die Perle kennen.* (G.)

Eine Glocke am Klang,
Einen Vogel am Gesang,
Einen Mann am Gang,
Einen Thoren an den Worten
Kennt man an allen Orten. (Philander.)

5. *The moral ground.*

α) An *internal motive* is expressed by *aus*; e. g. 316
 er singt *aus* Eitelkeit (from vanity). Er hat sich *aus*
 Verzweiflung ins Wasser gestürzt. Die Königin säumt
 noch *aus* arger List, nicht *aus* Gefühl der Menschlichkeit.
 (Sch.) Gutes thun, rein *aus* des Guten Liebe. (G.) *Aus*
 Nothwehr thu' ich den harten Schritt. (Sch.) *Aus* Groß-
 muth, *aus* Barmherzigkeit. (Sch.) Sie hat *aus* falscher
 Großmuth sehr gefehlt. (Sch.)

β) An *external motive* is expressed by *wegen*, *halben*,
 and *um* — *willen* (with the genitive case); e. g. er
 hat sich seiner Schulden *wegen* ins Wasser gestürzt. Ich
 komme *deinetwegen*, *seinethalben* &c. (for your sake,
 for his sake). Ganz besonders rühmt man ihn *wegen*
 seiner Kraft im Disputiren. (G.) *Um* des Freundes *willen*
 erbarmet euch. (Sch.) Sie kam so sehr *um* *deinet*, als der
 Geschwister *willen*. (G.)

A *real ground* also is designated by *wegen*, if it in-
 volves or conveys the notion of *impediment*. Als man
 dieses Schiff in See brachte, fand sich's, daß es seiner un-
 behülflichen Größe *wegen* schlechterdings nicht zu lenken sei.
 (Sch.)

These prepositions, however, are not synonymous.
Wegen denotes a motive expressed in an indefinite
 manner, like *on account of*; e. g. er geht seiner Gesund-
 heit *wegen* nach Italien. *Halben* denotes a particular
 motive which we wish to distinguish from another;
 e. g. er thut es der Ehre *halben*, nicht des Gewinnstes
wegen. *Um* — *willen* is employed when a purpose,
 and in particular the wish or interest of a person is
 the motive of an action; e. g. *um* des Friedens *willen*,
 for the sake of peace. *Um* ihrer Ruhe *willen* muß es
 ihr verschwiegen werden. (Sch.)

6. *The purpose.*

The *purpose* is generally expressed a) by the prepo- 317
sition *zu*; e. g. der Fürst entdeckte redlich dir sein Herz *zu*
 einem bösen Zweck, und du willst ihn *zu* einem guten Zweck

betrogen haben. (Sch.) — Doch führ' ich ihn (= diesen Stab) zur Wohlfahrt Aller, zu des Ganzen Heil, und nicht zur Vergrößerung des Einen. (Sch.)

b) Very frequently by the *Supine* (viz. the *infin.* preceded by zu); e. g. ich komme nicht zu bleiben; Abschied zu nehmen komme ich (Sch.) (— not for the purpose, or, with a view of staying; I come to take leave). Nicht eine Braut zu suchen ging ich aus (— not with the intention, or, to the end etc.). Ich lese zu meiner Belehrung (I am reading with a view, or, an object of informing myself).

c) The preposition um is also in many cases placed before the *supine* denoting purpose; e. g. was habt ihr denn gethan, um sie zu retten? (*what after all, have you done, for the sake of rescuing her?*) Alles setz' ich d'ran, um sie recht groß zu machen. (Sch.) Um sich zu zerstreuen, hält sie sich in Bamberg auf. (G.)

d) If the act expressed by the verb is taking place to the benefit or the advantage of a person or an object, the preposition für is employed; e. g. rette dich für Flandern! Das Königreich ist dein Beruf; für dich zu sterben, war der meinige. (Sch.) Das hat ein Freund für seinen Freund gethan. (Sch.)

e) In the same manner when abstract ideas are personified, the preposition für is used; e. g. ich sterbe für die Freiheit, für die ich lebte und focht. (G.) Für die Freiheit floß das Blut seiner Rechten. (Schlegel.)

f) If, on the contrary, a *detriment* or *disadvantage* is denoted as the object or purpose of an action, the preposition wider and gegen are employed; e. g. ein Komplott, das wider Sie gespielt wird. (Sch.) Daß Briefe, in der Königin Schatulle gefunden, wider dich gezeugt. (Sch.) Ich fechte nicht gegen dich. (Sch.)

g) The effect of an action, even if not intended, is also expressed by zu; e. g. zu meiner größten Freude

kam mein Bruder. Zum Glück (fortunately), zum Unglück kam er zu spät. Sie sind sich zum Verwechseln ähnlich. Die Laute lieb' ich zur Raserei. (Sch.)

There are moreover some particular relations of causality expressed by particular prepositions.

Conformity with a cause is expressed by *nach* according to; e. g. ich habe Alles nach ihren Wünschen gethan; er ist nach der Aussage der Zeugen schuldig. Nach ewigen, ehren, großen Gesetzen müssen wir alle unseres Daseins Kreise vollenden. (G.) Ich darf hoffen, daß ich nicht nach dem Scheine gerichtet werde. (Sch.) Er scheint mir in Allem nach seinem Gewissen zu handeln. (G.) Jeder gibt nach seinem Vermögen, nach Kräften. Conformity is expressed in a more definite manner by *gemäß*, which is always preceded by the Dative; e. g. der Sitte gemäß, dem Gesetze gemäß.

Nach is employed like *after*, in: er kleidet sich nach der neuesten Mode. Er wurde nach seinem Großvater Georg genannt.

Zufolge (with the Dative) and *vermöge* (with the Genitive) are equivalent to: *in consequence of*. *Vermöge* is employed, when a particular quality of a thing is conceived as causing an effect; e. g. die Himmelskörper bewegen sich vermöge ihrer gegenseitigen Anziehung. Vermöge seiner Rechtlichkeit will der Deutsche Niemanden in seinem wohl erworbenen Eigenthum stören; vermöge seiner Besonnenheit läßt er sich nicht durch Chimären stören, und vermöge seiner Gradheit haßt er alle Imagination. (G.) *Zufolge* denotes an extrinsic cause; e. g. man entwarf einen Plan, welchem zufolge zwölf neue Ritter des Bließes in den Staatsrath gezogen werden sollten. (Sch.) Den Versicherungen der Franziskaner zufolge, steigt der heilige Franziskus wöchentlich einmal in das Fegfeuer, und befreit daraus Alle, die er in seiner Amtstracht findet. (Jacob s.)

Kraft (with the Genitive) means *by virtue of*; and *laut* (with the Genitive) expresses conformity with the contents of words, either spoken or written; e. g. er

thut es kraft seines Amtes, kraft des erhaltenen Auftrags, laut des Briefes, laut der Urkunde.

- 319 If an action or effect is not in conformity but in opposition to a cause, the latter is expressed by *wider-against*; *zuwider*, *contrary to*; *ungeachtet*, *notwithstanding*; *troß*, *in spite of*; e. g. sie stoßen gewaltsam wider meinen Willen mich hinein. (Sch.) Dem ausdrücklichen Verbot *zuwider*, ließen sich mehrere derselben in den Landstädten öffentlich hören. (Sch.) Der Konstitution *zuwider*, führte er fremde Truppen ins Gebiet. (Sch.) *Troß* meiner Aufsicht, meinem scharfen Suchen [finde ich] noch Kostbarkeiten, noch geheime Schätze! (Sch.) Des kaiserlichen Verbotes *ungeachtet*, gingen die Berathschlagungen vor sich. (Sch.)

CHAPTER XVI.

OBJECT OF CO-EXISTENCE.

- 320 We comprehend under the term of an Object of Co-existence all those objects which express a circumstance or action, co-incident in time with the action expressed by the predicate, without however defining either the time (when?) or the manner (how?) of the action (§. 254); e. g. er liegt wachend im Bette (*he lies awake in bed* = he lies in bed and is awake). Und dieses bei mir denkend, schlief ich ein (Sch.), *and thinking* (= 'whilst I was thinking') *this, I fell asleep*.

The Object of Co-existence is in German as in English expressed:

1. by the participle of a verb, which is then termed *Gerund*;
2. by an abstract substantive with a preposition.

1. *Gerund.*

The object of *co-existence* is also denoted in *German* 321 as in *English* by the *gerund* and by *prepositions*. α) by the *gerund* (i. e. the *participle active* or *passive* when *uninflected* and *adverbially* used; e. g. er ist lachend, weinend, fluchend hinausgegangen, *he went out laughing, weeping, cursing*; er kommt gelaufen, *he comes running*. β) by *prepositions*; e. g. er geht mit einem Dolche bewaffnet, *he goes armed with a dagger* (further remarks or *prepositions* see §. 323).

Examples from Authors: Es wirkt jeder Geist und jede Hand, belebend, fördernd, für des Ganzen Wohl. (G.) Ihr werdet sehn, wie sie geächtet irren, und in Verzweiflung sechtend untergehn. (Uhl.) Ich lockt' ihn schmeichelnd in des Todes Reg. (Sch.) Der eignen Kraft nicht mehr vertrauend, wandt' er sein Herz den dunkeln Künsten zu. (Sch.) Versunken in Dich selber stehst Du da. (Sch.) &c.

It must however be observed, that the use of this form is much more limited in German than in English. Common prose will scarcely admit of such Gerunds, when they are again enlarged by new objects; if this be the case (e. g. der eignen Kraft nicht mehr vertrauend; dies Alles bei mir denkend &c.), it is more usual to transform the Gerund into an accessory or even principal sentence (indem er der eignen Kraft nicht mehr vertraute; indem ich dies alles bei mir dachte &c. see §. 344).

This *gerund* expressive of *co-existence* is, in certain 322 cases, employed in an *elliptical* sentence (when the *present participle* habend [*having*] is understood); this peculiar kind of construction may in a certain respect be compared with the Greek *accusative absolute*; e. g. er stand, den Blick auf den Himmel gerichtet, *he stood, his look directed to heaven* (= *having* his look directed etc.).

In some cases the construction assumes a form still more *absolutely*, even the *participle* being dropt; e. g. die Hand am Schwerte kommen sie heran, *hand on sword they draw near* (the latter sentence is = die Hand am

Schwerte habend or gelegt habend (*having their hand or having placed it on their swords*). Die Hand am Schwerte (habend), schauen sie sich drohend an (Sch.). In der einen Hand den Degen, den Schild in der andern. führte er sie gegen den Feind. (Sch.) So muß ich fallen in des Feindes Hand, das nahe Rettungsufer im Gesichte. (Sch.)

We can trace, in more ancient German, instances where the object of *co-existence* is rendered by the *genitive*, which usage we find still retained in various *colloquial* expressions; e. g. frohen Muthes*) weggehen (*to set out in good cheer*). Trocknen Kleides durchkommen (*to get through without wetting ones clothes*). Also the following: stehenden Fußes (litr. 'of standing foot' [a *genitive absolute*] [Lat.] 'stante pede') (= *immediately*); heiler Haut davon kommen (*to come off* [litr.] 'of whole skin' (= without ones skull broken). — Unverrichteter Sache abziehen (Lat.) *infecta re abire*.

Ausgenommen, *except*, is constructed in the same manner, with a preceding accusative case; e. g. in dem Zuchthause ist Alles schlecht, was man bekommt, die Prügel ausgenommen. (Hebel.) Die Lacedämonier hatten alle Völker des Peloponnes, die Argiver und Achäer ausgenommen, auf ihrer Seite. When however the participle *ausgenommen* precedes its object, the latter must agree in case with the substantive of which it is to be *excepted*; e. g. es ist allen Brüdern angenehm, ausgenommen dem jüngsten. Alle Brüder wollen es, ausgenommen der älteste.

An *adjective*, undeclined, takes sometimes the place of a *Gerund*; e. g. traurig saß die Jungfrau dort. (Uhl.) Uneingedenk gemeinen Lohnes seid Ihr beharrlich, emsig, treu. (Uhl.) Könnten wir nicht harmlos vergnügliche Tage spinnen, lustig das leichte Leben gewinnen. (Sch.)

2. Prepositions.

323 *Co-existence* is denoted in a positive manner by *mit*, with the dative, and in a negative manner by *ohne* with the accusative; e. g. ich denke daran mit Widerwillen, doch ohne Reue. Schaffet fort am guten Werke mit Besonnenheit und Stärke. (Uhl.) Ich liebe ohne Hoffnung,

*) In old German: frohes Muthes.

mit Todesangst und mit Gefahr des Lebens. (Sch.) Ich weile gern mit stillem Weh in froher Menschen Schwarm. (Uhl.) Ohn' Ursach sollen wir nie zucken unsern Degen; Ohn' Ehre sollen wir ihn drauf nie niederlegen. (Logau.) So wie es selten Komplimente gibt, ohne alle Lüge; so finden sich auch selten Grobheiten ohne alle Wahrheit. (Less.)

When *ohne* is followed by a verb, it must be in the supine, and not as in English in the present participle; e. g. ich kam zurück ohne etwas gesehen zu haben (without *having* etc.); ich erwachte ohne zu wissen, wo ich war (*I awoke without knowing, where I was*); ohne eine Thräne zu vergießen (*without shedding a tear*).

Some other prepositions are used instead of *mit*, viz. *in*, *unter*, and *bei*.

The preposition *in* is employed, when the co-existent object is not an action, but a *state of being*; e. g. er spricht im Schlafe. Da liegen sie alle in milder Ruhe. (Uhl.) Da steh' ich in fürchterlicher Einsamkeit. (Sch.) Vergesst, was ich im wachen Traum gesprochen. (Sch.) In diesem Glauben will ich handeln. (Sch.)

The preposition *unter* (with the dative) is employed, when the object is an action, performed by another subject, or an extrinsic incident, conceived as a condition; it is therefore always used with the substantive *Bedingung* (condition); e. g. Sie schlossen unter günstigen Bedingungen Frieden. Ich will unter keiner Bedingung zurückkehren. Er lebt unter Aufsicht seines Onkels. Cambray öffnete seinem Erzbischof unter freudigem Zurufe die Thore wieder. (Sch.) Die Reformation machte unter dem Schutze der ständischen Freiheit, unter der Decke des Tumults merkliche Fortschritte. (Sch.)

The preposition *bei* (*cum dat.*) when denoting a relation of *co-existence*, may, in most cases, be rendered by the prepos. *with* in English; e. g. er schläft bei offenen Fenstern, *he sleeps with the windows open*. Er predigt bei voller Kirche, *he preaches with a full church* (= before a large congregation).

The same preposition may also imply a relation of *causality*; e. g. bei dem heftigen Froste erfrieren alle Blüten, (litr. 'by') = *the frost being violent, all the blossoms are killed*. Bei seiner Lebensweise kann er nicht gesund sein (litr. 'by' = *leading a life, as he does, he can not be healthy*). It also denotes *an adversative relation*; e. g. er hat sich bei aller Klugheit überlisten lassen (*with all [= in spite of all] his prudence he has allowed himself to be deceived*).

S E C T I O N IV.

SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

If two sentences are connected with one another in 324 such a manner as to express continuity of *one single thought* or rather a *logically connected train of ideas*, the whole is termed a *compound sentence*. The two members now, of a compound sentence, may be connected either by way of *Subordination*, or by way of *Co-ordination*. They are connected by way of *Subordination*, when one of them (*the accessory sentence*) is to be considered as the subject or as an attribute or object of the other (i. e. *the principal sentence*) (cf. §. 325). Two sentences are, on the other hand, connected by way of *Co-ordination*, when they are *not* in this manner *dependent* one upon the other; e. g. Nicht Mitleid darf ich fühlen; ich darf nur blutige Gedanken haben. (Sch.) Das treulose Glück verließ Karl den Kühnen in drei schrecklichen Schlachten; und der schwindelnde Eroberer ging unter den Lebenden und Todten verloren. (Sch.) When two *co-ordinate* sentences have either the same subject, or the same *predicate* or another essential part common to both sentences; e. g. *he eats* and *he drinks*; the two sentences are frequently *contracted* into one; as: *he eats and drinks*.

CHAPTER XVII.

ACCESSORY SENTENCES.

325 When a *simple sentence* is extended in such a manner as to form a *compound sentence* (cf. §. 324) by any of its component parts (the *subject*, *object* or *attribute*) being expressed by a connected *phrase* or *clause*, that phrase or clause of the sentence is termed *accessory*, and the relation of the *latter* part of the sentence to the *former* (i. e. the *principal* member) is a *subordinate* one. If we say: '*I know the contents of the letter*' (ich kenne den Inhalt des Briefes) this is a *simple* sentence, the *object* of which is expressed by *the contents of the letter*; but if we change this sentence, by introducing a *conjunction*, as for instance: *I am well aware, that he knows the contents of the letter* (es ist mir wohl bekannt, daß er den Inhalt des Briefes kennt), the second member of the sentence, *that he knows the contents* etc. comprehending as it were the *object*, is the *objective clause* which, relative to the *first* clause '*I am well aware*', bears or assumes a *subordinate relation*, or is an *accessory sentence* (or more *strictly* speaking an *accessory member* or *clause*).

The accessory sentence then, is a combination of a *subject* and *predicate*, the whole of which constitutes part of another (the *principal*) sentence (§. 27).

The relation between the accessory and the principal sentences is expressed by a *relative pronoun* or, as just before stated, by a *conjunction* beginning the accessory sentence, and by a particular construction, the predicate conjugated being always last (§. 187). The pronoun or conjunction is frequently omitted in English; e. g. '*the pleasure it gave me*', instead of: '*the pleasure which it gave me*'. They sat down on the bench (which) we have mentioned. The palace was founded, (as) it is said, by king John etc. This omission is not allowed in German, and in translating into

German, the respective *conjunctions* or *relative pronouns* must always be added; the exceptions of this rule are very limited and will be mentioned in its proper place. Here it is only to be observed, that such introductory sentences as: *I hope, I know, 'tis true, you see, you know* etc., may be followed by a sentence without a conjunction and with the construction of a principal sentence, in German as well as in English; e. g. Ich hoffe, Sie befinden sich wohl, I hope you are well. Ich gestehe, ich weiß nichts davon. Sie wissen, der Herzog ist jetzt bei Hofe. Ich glaube, mein Bruder ist krank.

The *order* observed in the arrangement of the *accessory member or clause* of a *compound sentence*, differs from the order followed in the *principal sentence*, in as much as the verb of the *accessory* or *dependent clause* *) is placed at the *end*, whereas in the *principal sentence* it, on the contrary, immediately follows the subject (§. 187); e. g. Sein Vater ist gestern angekommen (principal sentence); ich weiß, daß er gestern angekommen ist (accessory sentence). When however the predicate is a compound expression, connected with two auxiliary verbs, the regular construction of an accessory sentence would offend the laws of eurythmy; e. g. wenn er gestern ankommen können hätte; therefore the auxiliary verb conjugated, is placed before the principal verb; e. g. wenn er gestern hätte ankommen können. — Kann ich vergessen, wie es hätte kommen können? (Sch.)

If however, in a similar sentence, other objects occur or any *accessory complements* or *adverbial expressions*, extending the notion conveyed by the sentence, such expressions *precede* the auxiliary verb, e. g. Wenn er gestern, zu dieser Zeit, in unserer Stadt hätte ankommen können (*if he had been able to arrive yesterday, at this time, in our city*).

But when the auxiliary verb is readily understood, from the context, it is usually omitted; e. g. Mir kam die Kunde zu, daß Ihr meinem Oheim übergeben worden (wäret). (Sch.) Was war mein Dank dafür, daß ich der

*) See the definitions of *principal, accessory clause* etc. at the beginning of this Chapt. XVII.

Völker Fluch auf mich gebürdet (hatte), diesen Krieg, der ihn nur groß gemacht (hat), die Fürsten (hatte) zahlen lassen? (Sch.)

When the subject of an accessory sentence is to be pointed out *emphatically*, it is placed among the objects; e. g. Sollen wir erleiden von dem fremden Knecht, was uns in seiner Macht kein Kaiser durfte bieten? (Sch.) Mir ist sichere Kunde zugekommen, daß zwischen diesen stolzen Lords und meinem Better nicht Alles mehr so steht wie sonst. (Sch.)

- 327 An *accessory* sentence, representing, as it were, the subject, attribute, or object of a *principal* sentence, is considered as occupying the place of a *substantive*, *adjective*, or *adverb*; e. g. it is to be regretted *that he died* (= his *death* is to be regretted). A person who is ignorant (= an *ignorant person*). He was quite well *when I saw him last* (he was quite well *yesterday*).

Accessory sentences, accordingly, are divided into:

- Substantive accessory sentences,*
- Adjective accessory sentences, and*
- Adverbial accessory sentences.*

A *substantive* accessory sentence is a sentence which is equivalent to an abstract substantive.

An *adjective* accessory sentence is a sentence, equivalent to an adjective, used either as an attribute to qualify a substantive, or as a substantive-adjective (§. 127) to express some person or thing.

An *adverbial* accessory sentence is a sentence, equivalent to an adverb or adverbial phrase, having the value of an adverbial object (of *place*, *time*, *manner*, *causality* or *co-existence*).

1. Substantive accessory sentence.

- 328 A *substantive* accessory sentence is either *affirmative*, or *interrogative*; the former takes the conjunction *daß* *that*; the latter *ob* *if*, *whether*, or one of the interro-

gative pronouns; e. g. ich weiß, daß es wahr ist, I know that it is true. Ich weiß nicht, ob es wahr ist, I do not know if it is true. Ich weiß nicht, wer es ist, or wo er ist, I do not know, who it is, or where he is. — Drum trag' ich darauf an, daß der Befehl zur Hinrichtung gleich ausgefertigt werde. (Sch.) Ich muß darauf bestehen, daß *) Herzog Friedland breche mit dem Kaiser. (Sch.) Ich soll erkennen, daß mich Niemand haßt, daß Niemand mich verfolgt. (G.) Daß er betrogen ist, kann er nicht sehen; daß sie Betrüger sind, kann ich nicht zeigen. (G.) Jeder Schritt des Lebens zeigt, daß die Klugheit nöthig sei. (G.) Fragt Euch nur bei jedem Gedicht, ob es ein Erlebtes enthalte, und ob dies Erlebte Euch gefördert habe. (G.)

a. When the *predicate* of the *principal sentence* governs a preposition, a demonstrative pronoun must be added which is compounded with the preposition, according to §. 143; e. g. Ich weiß nichts davon, daß er krank ist, *litr.* 'I know nothing *thereof that* etc.' (= *I know nothing of his being ill*). Mein größter Vortheil bestand darin, daß die Liebe zur Stille herrschend war (G.) (*my greatest advantage consisted [litr. 'therein that' =] in the love for tranquillity being prevailing*).

b. In *quotations*, the conjunction daß is generally left out; the *accessory sentence* is constructed as a *principal* and its predicate is put in the conjunctive or conditional mood; e. g. er sagt, er sei krank, he says, he is ill.

2. Adjective accessory sentence.

Adjective sentences are connected with the principal 329 sentence by a *demonstrative* pronoun in the *principal*,

*) Similar combinations in which *conjunctions* are employed in German, are frequently expressed in *English* by the *participial construction* dependent on a *preposition*, thus: *I must insist [litr.] 'that Duke Friedland should break with the emperor' = upon his breaking* (i. e. *upon a rupture* etc.) (*comp.* also §. 328, b in the *text*) and the numerous instances on '*Participial construction*' in '*First German Book*'.

and a *relative* pronoun in the *accessory* sentence. The demonstrative pronoun in the principal sentence is frequently omitted in German as well as in English; but the relative pronoun must always be expressed in German, though it be omitted in English; e. g. the trees (which) you have planted grow very well, die Bäume, welche ihr gepflanzt habt, wachsen sehr gut; the first battle they fought was with two Sarazens, die erste Schlacht, die sie lieferten, war gegen zwei Sarazenen.

An adjective accessory sentence is either to be considered as an attribute, qualifying a substantive contained in the principal sentence, as in the examples just adduced; or it is used substantively itself, the general notion of a person or thing being understood; e. g. Handsome is *that handsome does*.

- 330 a. *Attributive adjective sentences* take the adjective relative pronoun *welcher, welche, welches, or der, die das*, agreeing in gender and number with the substantive referred to (in the principal sentence), and taking that form (case or preposition) corresponding to its office in the accessory sentence; e. g. *der Mann, welchen (Acc. sing. masc.) ich gesehen habe; die Frau, der (Dat. sing. fem.) ich das Geld gegeben habe. Das Lied, das aus der Kehle dringt, ist Lohn, der reichlich lohnet. (G.)*

Gehn wir ins Gefild hervor,
Das sich stolz dem Himmel zeigt,
Der so feierlich empor
Über'm Erdenfrühling steigt. (Uhl.)

Menschen, die das Glück mit einem Lohn überraschte, zu welchem sie keinen natürlichen Grund in ihren Handlungen finden, werden sehr leicht versucht, den nothwendigen Zusammenhang zwischen Ursache und Wirkung überhaupt zu verlernen. (Sch.)

The genitive cases, *welches* and *welcher*, of the relative pronoun are not used in this way, the genitive of *der* (*dessen, deren*, §. 140) being always employed

instead of them; e. g. der Wein, dessen ich bedarf; die Frau, deren Sohn gestorben ist; die Eltern, deren Kind krank ist &c.

When the substantive referred to expresses a place, 331
time, or manner, *adverbial relative pronouns* are made use of, instead of the adjective pronouns and prepositions, viz. wo, *in which place*; da, wenn, als, *in which time*, and wie *in which manner*; e. g. Darum suchte er ihn nach Madrid zu locken, wo er der leitenden Aufsicht eines höheren Vorstandes entzogen war. (Sch.) In Frankfurt ist noch das Haus zu sehen, wo Göthe geboren worden. Um die Zeit, wenn die Trauben reifen; in derselben Stunde, als er starb; die Art, wie er mich empfing. — So hab' ich nun die Stadt verlassen, wo ich gelebet lange Zeit. (Uhl.) Kennst du das Land, wo die Citronen blühen? (G.) O schöner Tag, wenn endlich der Soldat ins Leben einkehrt, in die Menschlichkeit. (Sch.) Man war in Zweifel über die Art, wie der Krieg geführt werden sollte. (Sch.)

The demonstrative pronoun, *solch such*, is in German always followed by the adjective pronoun and not by the *relative* adverb *as*, as in English; e. g. such animals *as* live in the water, solche Thiere, die im Wasser leben. — Zeigt einen Weg mir an aus diesem Drang, hülfreiche Mächte, einen solchen zeiget mir, den ich vermag zu gehn. (Sch.) But it is also followed by *wie*; e. g. Von solchen Schiffen, wie jetzt gebaut werden, hat man früher Nichts gewußt. Solche Kranke, wie Du, verlangen gute Pflege.

In certain cases however the *German* idiom agrees with the *English*, the adverbial pronoun *wie* (*as*) being employed when the demonstrative *solch* is understood; e. g. Da ward ein Angriff und ein Widerstand, wie ihn kein glücklich Auge noch gesehen. (Sch.) Drauf fiel er mir um den Hals und zeigte eine Rührung, wie jener kleine Dienst sie gar nicht werth war. (Sch.)

b. *Adjective sentences, used substantively*, take the sub- 332
stantive relative pronoun, *wer who*, *was what*, referring to the demonstrative pronoun *der, das* in the principal sentence; the personal pronoun *er he*, which is in

English employed in the principal sentence (e. g. *he who lies will steal*), is not admitted in German: *Wer lügt, der stiehlt.* — *Was Morgenträume mir verhiessen, das machte stets der Abend wahr.* (Uhl.) *Wer besitzt, der lerne verlieren; wer im Glück ist, der lerne den Schmerz.* (Sch.)

Wer nie sein Brod mit Thränen aß,
 Wer nie die kummervollen Nächte
 Auf seinem Bette weinend saß,
 Der kennt euch nicht, ihr himmlischen Mächte. (G.)

The demonstrative pronoun *der*, *that*, is frequently used instead of the relative *wer*, when the accessory sentence is placed after the principal; e. g. *Man tadelt den, der seine Thaten wägt.* (G.) *Wohl dem, der seiner Väter gern gedenkt.* (G.)

The demonstrative pronoun in the principal sentence, when in the genitive or dative case, assumes the forms:

Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neut. *dessen*, Gen. Plur. *derer*,
 „ „ Fem. *deren*, Dat. „ *denen*;
 e. g. *Wer lügt, dessen Ehre ist verloren.* *Bergieb denen, die dich beleidigt haben.* *Mir liegt nichts (I do not mind) an der Meinung derer, die ich verachte.* When however the accessory sentence precedes the principal sentence, the gen. plur. *deren* is used instead of *derer*; e. g. *die ich verachte, an deren Meinung liegt mir nichts.*

The demonstrative pronoun in the principal sentence is frequently omitted; e. g. *Wer Pech angreift, besudelt sich.* *Prov.* *Singe (der), wem Gesang gegeben.* (Uhl.) *Wer Ohren hat, (der) soll hören.* (G.) *Wer viel weiß, hat viel zu sorgen.* (Less.) *Was man Berruchten thut, wird nicht gesegnet.* (G.) *Was nicht verboten ist, ist erlaubt.* (Sch.)

The demonstrative pronoun however must be added, when there is a preposition governing it; and such contractions as: an account *of what* happened; to take notice *of what* passes, are not conformable to the German idiom; it is, moreover, to be observed, that in this case the demonstrative pronoun cannot be contracted

with the preposition (conf. §. 328); e. g. ein Bericht über das, was sich ereignete. Mein Vater sagte mir wenig von dem (not davon), was er mit ihm geredet hatte. (G.) Bergebens erinnerte der Abgeordnete den Eroberer an das (not daran), was die Gerechtigkeit von ihm forderte. (Sch.) Er sprach verschiedene Mal mit mir über das (not darüber), was er für sie und ihre Kinder zu thun denke. (G.) Es war mir auffallend, daß er von dem (not davon), worin der Grund aller meiner Handlungen lag, offenbar keinen Begriff hatte. (G.)

The following accessory sentences are of the same **333** description, and take the relative *wer, was* (and not *welcher*).

a. Those referring to an indefinite pronoun or numeral, viz. *etwas, nichts, alles, eins, manches, viel, wenig*; e. g. Es ist nichts groß, was nicht gut ist; und es ist nichts wahr, was nicht besteht. (Claudius.) Es ist nicht alles Gold, was glänzt. *Prov.* Es ist nur eins, was uns retten kann. (Sch.) Nun ist nichts, was dem Vertrauen noch im Wege stände. (Sch.) Vieles, was sie thaten, machte ihnen die Selbstvertheidigung zur Pflicht. (Sch.) Dies Haus versammelt alles, was mir theuer ist. (Sch.)

b. Those referring to the neuter of an adjective in the superlative degree; e. g. Das Beste, was ich habe. — Dem Herrlichsten, was auch der Geist empfangen, drängt immer fremder Stoff sich an. (H.) Das Beste, was man von ihm lernt, ist nicht mitzutheilen. (G.) Er preiset das Höchste, das Beste, was das Herz sich wünscht, was der Sinn begehrt. (Sch.) Das Schönste sucht er auf den Fluren, womit er seine Liebe schmückt. (Sch.)

c. Those referring to a personal pronoun. In this case the accessory sentence always takes the pronoun *der, die, das* (not *wer*); and when the accessory sentence refers to a pronoun of the first or second person, this pronoun is generally repeated in the accessory sentence; e. g. Sei (Du) mir willkommen, *der* Du mit mir gleiche Gefühle theilest. (Sch.) Das wissen wir, *die* wir die Gemsen jagen. (Sch.) Wie veracht' ich Euch, *die*

Ihr Euch selbst und die Welt belügt. (Sch.) Hören sie ihn, der ein Held ist und ein Mensch zugleich. (Sch.) Sie wollten auch im Tode nicht von ihm lassen, der ihres Lebens Führer war. (Sch.) Ihr, die Ihr Krieg führt gegen meinen Sohn. (Sch.)

OBSERVATION: — It must be observed that, when the personal pronoun *he, they*, does not denote a certain person, but only has the value of a demonstrative pronoun, the German idiom requires a demonstrative pronoun; e. g. they who know it, die, welche es wissen. *He who* escapes from death is not pardoned, wer dem Tode entgeht, der wird nicht begnadigt.

3. Adverbial accessory sentences.

334 The adverbial accessory sentences are distinguished according to the different *adverbial relations* which the action, expressed by the predicate, bears with reference to the *locality, time, manner, causality, co-existence*, or intensity, and are connected with their principal sentence by different conjunctions according to their different meanings.

a. Adverbial accessory sentence of locality.

The *principal* sentence in its complete form takes a *demonstrative* adverb of locality, and the accessory sentence a *relative*, as follows:

<i>Principal sentence.</i>	<i>Accessory sentence.</i>
da	wo (rest in a place),
dahin	wohin (motion towards a place),
daher, or von da	woher (motion from a place).

Remark. These *relations of locality* must not be confounded with *adjective sentences*, in which *wo* represents the *relative pronoun* preceded by a *preposition of place*; e. g. Kennst du das Land, wo (= in dem) die Citronen blühen? *knowest thou the land where (= in which) the citrons bloom?* — or with the *dependent clause* of a question introduced by *wo*; e. g. Ich will wissen, wo er ist, *I will know where he is.*

The demonstrative adverb in the principal sentence is frequently omitted when followed by the corresponding *relative*, but it must be expressed, when the predicate of the accessory sentence requires a different relative; e. g. Ich wohne (da), wo er wohnt. Ich gehe (dahin), wohin er geht. Gehen Sie, wohin die Pflicht Sie ruft = (dahin) wo zc. Wo das Nas ist, da sammeln sich die Adler. Ich komme (daher), woher er kommt. But: Ich wohne da, wohin Niemand kommt. Ich gehe dahin, wo er wohnt. Ich komme daher, wo er wohnt. Wo Gott eine Kirche hat, da will der Teufel eine Kapelle haben. *Prov.* Wo euer Schatz ist, da ist euer Herz. Das Gedeihen bleibet fern, wo Liebe fehlet und Vertrauen. (Uhl.) Wo rohe Kräfte sinnlos walten, da kann sich kein Gebild gestalten. (Sch.) Wo das Strenge mit dem Zarten, wo Starkes sich und Mildes paarten, da gibt es einen guten Klang. (Sch.) Die größten Schwierigkeiten liegen da, wo wir sie nicht suchen. (G.) Nicht überall, wo Wasser ist, sind Frösche; aber wo man Frösche hört, ist Wasser. (G.) Nicht wo die goldne Ceres lacht, wo das Eisen wächst in der Berge Schacht, da entspringen der Erde Gebieter. (Sch.) Wenn ich mich in einer mittleren oder großen Stadt umsehe und bemerke, wo denn die Menschen sich hinwenden, um ihren Abend zuzubringen, so findet sich immer, daß man dahin geht, wo man grüßend begrüßt wird, wo man gerne hört und gehört wird, wo man beim geselligen Gespräch und Spiel immer gewiß ist, seine Partie zu finden. (G.)

Remark. Some adverbial sentences are simply connected by a *preposition*, which latter then serves the part of a *conjunction*; e. g. Ich kam, während (daß) er schlief, und wartete, bis (daß) er erwachte, I came while he slept and waited till he awoke. The addition of *daß* is considered obsolete at present.

b. Adverbial accessory sentences of time.

Accessory sentences of time take the conjunctions: 335 *da, als, wenn, nachdem, seit, bis*, which denote the different relations of time, explained in Chapter XIII.

I. *Point of time.*

When the event, expressed in the *principal* sentence is represented as *quite simultaneous* with that expressed in the *accessory* sentence, the accessory sentence takes the conjunctions *als*, *da*, or *wenn*.

The conjunctions *als* and *da* *) are used, when the time of an action relates to *a definite event in past time*; on the other hand, *wenn* is employed, when time is fixed by an *indefinite* past event, or by some event in present or future time. Thus, *als* (or *da*) *ich ihn fragte, gab er mir keine Antwort*, when (i. e. at the time when) I asked him, he gave me no answer; but, *wenn ich ihn fragte, gab er mir keine Antwort*, whenever I asked him, he would give me no answer. The conjunction *als* is, accordingly, only used with the imperfect tense, when a single definite fact is mentioned. In all other cases *wenn* must be employed, instead of which the obsolete form *wann* is sometimes used.

Additional examples.

Als Griechenland auf den Ruhm der Gelehrsamkeit am stolzesten sein konnte, mußte es sich in das macedonische Joch fügen. (Lessing.) Wie? *da* noch Alles lag in weiter Ferne, *da* hattest du Entschluß und Muth, und jetzt, *da* aus dem Traume Wahrheit werden will, *da* die Vollendung nahe, *da* fängst du an zu zagen. (Sch.) *Wenn* ich mich in einer mittleren oder großen Stadt umsehe und bemerke zc. (s. §. 334). Zeit ist, die Unfälle zu beweinen, *wenn* sie kommen und wirklich erscheinen. (Sch.)

The *principal* sentence, when placed after the *accessory*, sometimes takes the demonstrative *da*, or, after *wann*, the corresponding *dann*. *Wann* die Abendglocke hallt, *da* red' ich, Herr, mit dir. (Uhl.) *Wann* Blicke zucken, Donner rollt, *wann* Sturm erbraust im Wald, *dann*

*) The conjunction *da*, being generally employed to denote causality, time is more commonly expressed by *als*.

greift er träumend nach dem Schwert, der alte Held Harald. (Uhl.) Sonst, wenn der Vater auszog, da war ein Freuen, wenn er wiederkam. (Sch.) Wenn die Wolken gethürmt den Himmel schwärzen, wenn dumpfstosend der Donner hallt, da, da fühlen sich alle Herzen in des furchtbaren Schicksals Gewalt. (Sch.)

As soon as is expressed by *sobald als*, or merely *sobald*; e. g. Sobald die ersten Lerchen schwirren, erschien ein Mädchen wunderbar; doch schnell war ihre Spur verloren, sobald das Mädchen Abschied nahm. (Sch.) Das Gerüste wird abgerissen, sobald der Bau vollendet ist. (Lessing.) *Sobald* is also employed for *no sooner — than*; e. g. they had no sooner left Dunkirk road, than the wind became contrary, sobald sie die Rhede von Dünkirchen verlassen hatten, wurde der Wind ungünstig. They no sooner entered the wood, than they perceived the habitations of men, sobald sie den Wald betraten, erblickten sie menschliche Wohnungen.

When the predicate of the *principal* sentence *precedes* 336 or follows in time that of the *accessory* sentence, the conjunctions *ehe*, *before*, and *nachdem*, *after*, are employed in the same way as the corresponding conjunctions in English; the conjunction *bevor*, *before*, is obsolete. Nimm der Stunde wahr, eh' sie entschlüpft. (Sch.) Ehe das dritte Morgenroth scheint, hat er schnell mit dem Gatten die Schwester vereint. (Sch.) Ehe die Kunst unser Betragen gebildet und die Leidenschaften eine geborgte Sprache gelehrt hatte, waren unsere Sitten bäurisch, aber natürlich. (Lessing.) Nachdem sein Vater gestorben war, verkaufte er sein Haus. Der König verließ Nürnberg, nachdem er es mit einer hinlänglichen Besatzung versehen hatte. (Sch.)

II. Duration of time.

The duration of time of the predicate is denoted by *seitdem* or *seit* (*since* *) and *bis* (*till*, *until*). Both con-

*) It must be observed, that *seit* and *seitdem* are not, like *since*, used in a causal signification.

vey the notion of a fixed limitation relative to time, *seitdem*, designating the point of commencement, and *bis* the point of termination of any action or state expressed by the predicate; e. g. *Seitdem der König seinen Sohn verloren, vertraut er Wenigen der Seinen mehr.* (G.) *Die Deutschen können erst über Literatur urtheilen, seit sie selbst eine Literatur haben.* (G.) *Ich will nicht eher meine Sterne loben, bis ich das Ende dieser Thaten sehe.* (Sch.) *Der Rechtsgelehrte hält Jeden für einen ehrlichen Mann, bis das Gegentheil erwiesen ist.*

The conjunction *whilst*, which denotes a co-incident duration of time, is expressed by *während*, *indefß*; see §. 344.

c. Adverbial accessory sentences of manner.

- 337 Manner is expressed either by comparing one action with another, or by expressing the effect of the action; e. g. *he speaks as he thinks*; or: — *he speaks so that he is never understood.*

When one action is compared with another, the accessory sentence takes the conjunction *wie*, *as*, if it is a real action; if it is not real, *als ob*, or *als wenn*, *as if*, are employed, and the latter conjunctions are followed by the conditional or conjunctive mood. *Er sieht aus, als ob er krank sei.* *Er sieht aus, als wenn er krank wäre.* *Thut, als wenn Ihr zu Hause wäret.* (G.) *Er sieht aus, als wenn er in der Ueberzeugung lebe, er sei Herr.* (G.) *Es scheint, als ob die natürlichen Empfindungen bei gemeinen Leuten stärker wären, als bei anderen.* (Lessing.) The *comparative adverbial* members of a *sentence* are combined by the demonstrative *so* (or *also*) either *expressed* or *understood* in the *principal* and the *relative* *wie* in the *accessory* member; e. g. *Wie sich die Neigung anders wendet, also steigt und fällt des Urtheils Woge.* (Sch.) *Wie der Pilger sich nach Osten wendet, so kehret sich mein Hoffen und mein Sehnen dem Einen hellen Himmelspunkte zu.* (Sch.) *Wie Geister in der Luft verwehen, (so) entschwand sie mir und ward nicht mehr gesehen.* (Sch.)

So wie der Weibrauch das Leben einer Kohle erfrischt, so erfrischt das Gebet die Hoffnungen des Herzens. (G.) Ich soll leben, wie ich nicht leben mag. (G.) Des Fürsten und des Volkes Rechte sind verwoben, wie sich Ulm' und Reb' umschlingen. (Uhl.) Wie man aus versunkenen Städten erhabne Götterbilder gräbt, so ist manch heilig Recht zu retten, das unter wüsten Trümmern lebt. (Uhl.)

The conjunctions *wenn*, *ob* are sometimes omitted, in consequence of which the accessory sentence must be constructed like an interrogative sentence; e. g. er sieht aus, als sei er krank. Er thut, als wäre er unschuldig. Thut, als wäret Ihr zu Hause.

Remark. Similar sentences are usually contracted in English, by omission of the verb of the consequent clause; e. g. *'he walked as if tired'*. This ellipsis can not take place in German.

From comparative accessory sentences of manner, 338 expressed by *wie*, we must distinguish such sentences as express the *degree of intensity* of the principal sentence; e. g. he is *as* rich, *as* he wishes to be; he is *as* rich *as* his brother; he is richer *than* his brother. Sentences of this description take the conjunction *als* (not *wie*), when the preceding adjective is in the positive degree, as well as when it is in the comparative; e. g. er ist so reich, als er zu sein wünscht; er ist reicher, als er weiß. Ich dachte so edel nicht, als du mich gerne glauben machen möchtest. (Sch.) Sie sind kränker, als Sie uns glauben machen wollen. (Sch.) Ariostens Lob hat mich mehr ergötzt, als daß es mich beleidigt hätte. (G.)

OBSERVATION. — The adverb of intensity *als* (as, than) is to be distinguished from the conjunction *als*, following a negation. The latter answers to the English *but*; e. g. ich habe Keinen gesehen als dich, I have seen none *but* you, er hat nichts als Wasser getrunken, he drank nothing *but* water.

When the accessory sentence precedes the principal one, it takes *so*, instead of *als*, and the corresponding adjective or adverb is immediately connected with *so*; e. g. so hoch er stand, so tief war sein Fall. (Sch.) So

wichtige Ursachen Ludwig hatte, die Neutralität zu Stande zu bringen, so triftige Gründe hatte Gustav Adolf, das Gegenteil zu wünschen. (Sch.) So viel Kindisches in dem Vorgang war, so viel trug er zur Bildung meines Herzens bei. (G.) So ersten Grund Du hast, dies Licht zu fliehen, so dringenden hab' ich, daß ich Dir's gebe. (Sch.)

The relation of *intensity* referring to a *comparative* degree (expressed in English by *the—the* (e. g. *the more—the better*) is denoted in German by *je* (relative) in the accessory and *desto* (demonstrative) in the principal clause of the sentence; e. g. *je mehr er hat, desto mehr will er* (the more he has, the more he wants); e. g. *je weiter man in der Erfahrung fortrückt, desto näher kommt man dem Unerforschlichen; je mehr man die Erfahrung zu nutzen weiß, desto mehr sieht man, daß das Unerforschliche keinen praktischen Nutzen hat.* (G.) *Je mehr ihm sein Gedächtniß zu Statten kam, desto mehr wuchs sein Muth.* (G.) *Je genauer ich sie beobachtete, desto mehr beschämte sie mich.* (G.) *Je sanfter diese Erfahrungen waren, desto öfter suchte ich sie zu erneuern.* (G.) Instead of *desto*, we sometimes employ *je* in the principal clause, as: *Je länger je lieber.*

- 339 The intensity of an action is frequently expressed as proportionate to its effect; in this case the accessory sentence takes the conjunction *daß*, *that*, and the principal the adverb *so*; e. g. *er spricht so, daß man ihn verstehen kann; er spricht so schnell, daß man ihn nicht verstehen kann.* In English this relation is generally expressed in a peculiar way by *so—as to, such—as to*; e. g. *he was so full of thought as not to notice any one about him. We find no people so rude, as to be without any rules of politeness, nor any so polite, as not to have some remains of rudeness.* (*Franklin*). In German this construction is not allowed*); there must always be a complete accessory sentence with *daß*;

*) A few phrases only are of a similar construction, as: *Seien Sie so gut, mir zu sagen u. Er war so freundlich (gütig), mir den Weg zu zeigen.*

e. g. er war so in Gedanken, daß er Niemanden bemerkte. Wir finden kein Volk so roh, daß es ohne Regeln der Höflichkeit wäre, und keins so höflich, daß es nicht einige Spuren von Rohheit hätte. So tief bin ich gefallen, bin so arm geworden, daß ich an unsre frühen Kinderjahre dich mahnen muß, daß ich dich bitten muß, die lang vergebnen Schulden abzutragen. (Sch.) Noch ist kein Fürst so hoch gefürstet, so auserwählt kein ird'scher Mann, daß, wenn die Welt nach Freiheit dürstet, er sie mit Freiheit tränken kann. (Uhl.)

Additional Examples.

Die Abschrift ist doch so verfaßt, daß man sie leicht verwechselt. (Sch.) Er bewilligte den Truppen die Winterquartiere, doch so, daß sie aufs Schnellste konnten versammelt werden. (Sch.)

The demonstrative *so*, in some cases, is omitted in the principal sentence, e. g. er stellte seine Armee in einer gedoppelten Linie in Schlachtordnung (*so*), daß die zweite anrücken konnte, wenn die erste zum Weichen gebracht worden war. (Sch.)

If the intensity of an action, is represented as disproportionate, relative to its *effect*, the intensive adverb *zu* is employed in the *principal* clause, followed by *als daß* in the *consequent*, the verb of the latter clause being in the conditional mood; e. g. er ist zu schwach, als daß er seine Vertheidigung versuchte, he is *too* weak to attempt his defence; er ist zu ehrlich, als daß er eine Unwahrheit sagen sollte, he is *too* honest to tell a lie. The accessory sentence of this description may, however, be again abridged into a supine, as in English; but then *als* is omitted, and the preposition *um* is frequently placed before the supine; e. g. zu schwach, seine Vertheidigung zu versuchen; zu redlich, um eine Unwahrheit zu reden.

Extracts from Authors.

Nur zu beschäftigt find' ich ihn, als daß er Zeit und Muße könnte haben, an unser Glück zu denken. (Sch.) Das

Unglück war zu offenbar, als daß man sie nicht aufs Neue hätte verrufen und verbannen sollen. (G.) Eure Versöhnung war ein wenig zu schnell, als daß sie dauerhaft hätte sein sollen. (G.) Der zahlreichere Theil der Menschen wird durch den Kampf mit der Noth viel zu sehr ermüdet und abgESPANNT, als daß er sich zu einem neuen und härtern Kampfe mit dem Irrthum aufraffen sollte. (Sch.) Der Name Cook ist zu allgemein bekannt, als daß Jemand fragen könnte: Wer ist Cook. (Foster).

d. Adverbial accessory sentences of causality.

340 A real cause, and a motive is expressed by *weil*, *because*, and *da*, *since*, *as*; the principal sentence, when following the accessory, sometimes takes the adverb *so*; e. g. er kann nicht gehen, weil er ein Bein gebrochen hat. Weil ich ihm getraut bis heute, will ich auch heut' ihm trauen. (Sch.) Die Unbequemlichkeit wurde von der Jugend weniger empfunden, weil ihr etwas mehr Spielraum gelassen ward. (G.) Sollt' ich's nun im Ernst erfüllen müssen, weil ich zu frei gescherzt mit dem Gedanken? Ich müßte die That vollbringen, weil ich sie gedacht? (Sch.)

If the ground or motive is to be rendered particularly *prominent* in the sentence, this is chiefly effected by introducing into the *principal* clause one of the prepositions, *darum*, *deswegen*, *desßhalb*; e. g. *darum eben weil ich den Frieden suche, muß ich fallen* (Sch.), *just for that very reason*, because I seek (= I am inclined) for peace, I am to fall. *Deswegen bleib' ich, weil es dich verdrießt* (G.), it is *precisely* for that reason I stay, because it annoys you.

If an *effect* is denoted as resulting from any given cause, the latter is generally expressed by an *adverbial sentence* connected by the *relative* *da*, and the *principal* clause, if following the *accessory*, is introduced by the *demonstrative* *so*; e. g. *da die Musik unmittelbar auf das Gefühl wirkt, so ist sie die geistigste aller Kräfte. Da das Auge gewohnt ist, Alles zu sehen, so ist ihm eine Mißgestalt nicht so zuwider, als dem*

Dhre ein Miston. (G.) Dir blüht gewiß das schönste Glück der Erde, da Du so fromm und heilig bist. (Sch.) Ich kann fröhlich scheiden, da meine Augen diesen Tag gesehn. (Sch.) Ich gehe getröstet weg, da ich den Vater beruhigen kann. (Sch.)

The relation of a *real* or *positive* cause is denoted in the principal member of the sentence by a *preposition* which latter is contracted with the relative *da*, into *davon* (denoting *efficient* cause), *dadurch* (denoting *means*) and *daraus*, *daran* (denoting chiefly *inference*). In using this kind of construction, which in fact is entirely *idiomatic*, the dependent adverbial clause is always introduced by *daß*; e. g. er ist *davon* krank geworden, *daß* er ein kaltes Bad genommen hat, he has been taken ill, *by* going into a cold bath. Einer stirbt nicht *davon*, *daß* er einen Tag fastet, a person does not die, *by* fasting for a day (lit. does not die *there of that* he fasts)*). *Daß* er krank ist, schließe ich *daraus*, *daß* er nicht gekommen ist, I infer *from* his not coming, *that* he is ill. Ich erkannte ihn *daran*, *daß* er stammelte, I knew (or recognized) him, *by* his stammering.

Extracts from Authors.

Richelieu mußte sich nur *dadurch* zu helfen, *daß* er den Feindseligkeiten ein schleuniges Ende machte. (Sch.) Den Mangel an Reiterei mußte er *dadurch* zu ersetzen, *daß* er Fußgänger zwischen die Reiter stellte. (Sch.) Unglücklich ist das slavische Volk *dadurch* geworden, *daß* es sich keine dauernde Kriegsverfassung geben konnte. (Herder.)

Conditional sentence.

Conditional sentences are connected with the principal sentence by *wenn*, *if*, the corresponding adverb *so* being expressed or understood in the principal sentence; e. g. *wenn* du heute sparst, (*so*) wirst du morgen keinen Mangel leiden. *Wenn* er schuldig ist, *so* muß er ge-

*) Comp. the Examples given on this Idiom in the (*First German Book*. Appendix p. 56, §. 10—31).

strafft werden. Es wird nie etwas unternommen werden, wenn alle möglichen Einwände erst beseitigt werden müssen. In Gras und Blumen lieg' ich gern, wenn eine Flöte tönt von fern, und wenn hoch obenhin die Frühlingswolken ziehn. (Uhl.) Die Glocke tönet, wenn man sie geschwungen. (Uhl.) Wenn euer Gewissen rein ist, so seid ihr frei. (G.)

The conjunction *wenn* is frequently omitted, and the conditional sentence then assumes the construction of an interrogative sentence; e. g. sparst du heute, so zc. Ist er schuldig, so etc. The same mode of expression is admissible in English, but only when the verb of the accessory sentence is in the conditional mood; e. g. had I been in his place, I should have acted otherwise, wäre ich an seiner Stelle gewesen, so hätte ich anders gehandelt. This restriction does not take place in German.

Gibst du dem Feinde nach, so gibt er dir den Frieden;
Und gibst du dir nicht nach, so ist dir Sieg beschieden.
Rückert.

Sometimes the conditional accessory sentence is constructed like an imperative sentence, and is then connected with the principal sentence by *und*, *and*, as in English, or by *so*; e. g. sei im Besiz, und du wohnst im Recht. (Sch.) Seid gerecht, seid gewissenhaft, wandelt unsträflich; so werden wir uns in der Ewigkeit wieder begegnen. (Sch.)

Concessive and adversative Sentence.

342 If from the *accessory* clause a consequence is drawn, contrary to what the statement contained in the *principle* clause would lead us to expect, the former is termed *concession* al and the sentence formed on *adversative* grounds. If f. i. we say: 'Although he is learned, he is not a good teacher' the first clause involves a concession, viz.: 'he is learned'; since now from this statement, it might be sooner inferred 'that he is a good teacher, than that he is not', the two clauses are said to have an *adversative* relation.

The conjunctions employed in this case are *obgleich*, *obſchon*, *obwol*, *wenn gleich*, *wenn auch*, *wenn ſchon*. The principal clause, if it follows the *accessory*, generally takes the demonstrative *ſo* and at the same time the *modal* adverbs *doch* or *dennoch*.

OBSERVATION. The conjunctions *wenn ſchon*, *wenn gleich*, *wenn auch* are commonly separated by the subject of the sentence.

Extracts from Authors:

Ob man gleich über den erfochtenen Sieg das Tedeum anſtimmte; ſo geſtand doch Wallenſtein ſeine Niederlage. (Sch.) Wenn es gleich dieſen Truppen an Tapferkeit gebracht, ſo reizten ſie doch durch einen glänzenden Aufpuß die Augen. (Sch.) Wenn er es auch nicht war, der die Sachſen nach Prag lockte, ſo war es doch ſein Betragen, was ihnen die Einnahme dieſer Stadt erleichterte. (Sch.) Uns iſt bekannt, wenn gleich der Schwede nichts davon merken ſoll, daß ihr mit Sachſen geheime Unterhandlung pflegt. (Sch.) Wenn er gleich kein freundlich Geſicht macht, ſo ſieht er es doch gern, wenn man ihn beſucht. Obſchon ich weiß, daß er vor Nacht nicht kommt, vermuth' ich ihn doch jeden Augenblick. (G.) Obgleich man dem Feinde nur eine geringe Macht entgegenzuſetzen hatte, ſo konnte man doch hoffen, ſich zu behaupten. (Sch.)

The concessive, like the conditional sentences, frequently assume the form of interrogative and imperative sentences, the conjunction *ob*, or *wenn* being omitted; e. g. *iſt es gleich Nacht, ſo leuchtet unſer Recht; iſt gleich die Zahl nicht voll, das Herz iſt hier des ganzen Volkes; ſind auch die alten Bücher nicht zur Hand, ſie ſind in unſre Herzen eingekrieben.* (Sch.) *Dein Bruder ſterbe oder ſiege, er iſt verloren.* (G.) *Ein Volk, dem das geboten wird, iſt ſchrecklich; es räche oder dulde die Behandlung.* (Sch.)

Concessive sentences, expressed in English by *whoever*, *whatever*, *however* etc., take in German an interrogative pronoun with *auch*; e. g. *wer er auch ſei, ich fürchte ihn nicht. Wie glänzend auch die Sachſen den*

Feldzug eröffnet hatten, so rechtfertigte der Erfolg keineswegs die Erwartung. (S ch.) Wie sehr auch euer Innres widerstrebe, gehorcht der Zeit. (S ch.) Was er auch bringen mag, er darf den Meutern nicht in die Hände fallen. (S ch.)

The adverb *auch* is sometimes understood, and instead of *wie* the conjunction *so* is employed; e. g. nichts zeigt sich mir, wie weit die Blicke tragen. (S ch.) Ich bin euch ein Dorn im Auge, so klein ich bin. (G.)

Purpose.

The *purpose* or *final cause* is denoted by *zu* in simple sentences; e. g. er reiset zu seinem Vergnügen, he travels for his amusement; which is an abridged form. But in *final sentences* the *consequent* clause is joined to the *antecedent* by the conjunction *damit* or simply by *daß*. The *final* sentences derive their appellation from the circumstance of denoting the effect or consequence *intended*. To give prominence, *darum* is often emphatically inserted in the principal sentence, *darum* — *damit* or *weil*, *darum* — *daß* and, although *obsolete*, *auf* — *daß* is sometimes employed. The verb of the *accessory* clause should always be in the *subjunctive*.

Examples to the above rules:

Er spart sein Geld, damit (= auf daß) er im Alter nicht Mangel leide, he is saving his money, that (= in order that) he may not be wanting in his old age.

Extracts from standard German Authors:

Euch künd' ich's an, damit Ihr's Alle wisset. (S ch.) Er eilt heim mit sorgender Seele, damit er die Frist nicht verfehle. (S ch.) O! Überlaß ihn nicht sich selbst, damit in seinem Busen nicht der Unmuth reife. (G.) Bleibt nicht in England, daß der Britte nicht sein stolzes Herz an Eurem Unglück weide. (S ch.) Da setzt ihn der Graf auf sein ritterlich Pferd, daß er labe den Kranken. (S ch.) Ehre Vater und Mutter, auf daß es dir wohl gehe auf Erden. (Luther's

Bibel.) Alte Rechte sind darum so angenehm, weil sie Schlupfwinkel bilden, in welchen der Kluge und Mächtige zum Schaden des Volks sich verbergen oder durchschleichen kann. (G.) Die Natur ist roh und wild, damit der Mensch gezwungen würde, aus dem unthätigen Naturstande herauszugehen und sie zu bearbeiten, damit er selbst aus einem bloßen Naturprodukte ein freies Wesen würde. (Fichte.)

e. Adverbial accessory sentences of co-existence.

When an object of co-existence (§. 320) is expressed 344 by an accessory sentence, it takes the conjunction *indem*. This conjunction is peculiar to the German language, co-existence being in English always expressed by a Gerund; as: Columbus was the eldest of four children, *having* two brothers and one sister. He took leave of me, *shaking* hands with me most kindly. — The Gerund (*having, shaking*) has in such constructions, the value of a co-ordinate sentence (he took leave, *and* shook hands. — I went *and*, at etc.), and must in German be translated by an accessory sentence with *indem*; as: Kolumbus war der älteste von vier Kindern, *indem* er zwei Brüder und eine Schwester hatte. Er nahm Abschied, *indem* er mir aufs freundlichste die Hand drückte. *Indem* er sich auf sie stützte, kam er die Treppe langsam herauf. (G.)

When not only the co-existence of two facts, but the co-incident *duration of time* is to be pointed out, the accessory sentence takes the conjunction *während*, *indefß*, *indefßen*, *whilst* *); e. g. Während ihn die Rache sucht, genießt er seines Frevels Frucht. (Sch.) Du wirst diesmal noch Dein altes Amt verwalten, *indefß* wir hier des Herrn Geschäfte treiben. (Sch.)

When the co-existence of some circumstance is to be denied, the accessory sentence takes *ohne daß*;

*) The use of *weil* in this sense is rather obsolete; e. g. Man muß das Eisen schmieden, *weil* es glüht. *Proverb.*

e. g. Es geschah, ohne daß ich es wußte, it happened without my knowing it. Der Zweikampf war vorüber, ohne daß ich etwas davon erfahren hatte. (G.)

CHAPTER XVIII.

OF VERBALS, AND CONTRACTED ACCESSORY SENTENCES.

345 An important difference between the German and English languages results from their different practice in the use of participles and infinitives, the English language having adopted, from the French or Latin language, a great number of verbal constructions which are not conformable to the German idiom.

In order to understand the following, it is necessary to repeat the definitions of infinitive and participle. Both of them are *Verbals*, i. e. they express actions, and are qualified or individualized by objects, like verbs; but they take at the same time the place, and have the value of *substantives* or *adjectives*, according as they are either subjects, or attributes, or objects. Verbals are, accordingly, either *Verbal substantives*, i. e. *Infinitives*, or *Verbal adjectives*, i. e. *Participles*, or they must be considered as *Contracted accessory sentences*.

1. *Verbal substantives*, or *Infinitives* are those which stand in the place of a substantive, being either subject of the sentence (in the nominative), or attributive substantives (in the genitive), or objects (in the accusative or genitive case); e. g. walking (subj.) is pleasant; the pleasure of walking (attr.); I am fond of walking (obj.); I like walking (obj.).

2. *Verbal adjectives*, or *Participles* are those which

stand in the place of an attributive adjective *); as: *the sleeping child, the dying man.*

3. A Verbal which has its proper subject, expressed or understood, must always be considered as a *contracted accessory sentence*; e. g. *our going thither* is uncertain; he recollected *his being undressed*; my wife knew *herself* to be the cause of it; they will deny *it* to be natural. In such expressions the verbal, *going, being undressed* etc., cannot be constructed without its proper subject; thus *our going* is the subject in the first sentence, *his being undressed* is the object in the second etc., and these compound expressions, being equivalent to the accessory sentences: whether we shall go, that he was undressed etc., are termed contracted accessory sentences.

Infinitive.

The infinitive, without the preposition *zu*, is used:

a. as the *subject* of a sentence; e. g. *Geben ist seliger, 346 als nehmen. Sorgen macht Sorgen. Handeln ist leicht, denken schwer, nach dem Gedachten handeln unbequem. (G.) Frei athmen macht das Leben nicht allein. (G.) Sorgen ist viel besser nicht als betteln, sowie leihen nicht viel besser ist als stehlen. (Less.)*

b. as an object after the following verbs only:

lehren to teach,	hören to hear,
lernen to learn,	sehen to see,
helfen to help,	fühlen to feel,
lassen to let, to command,	finden to find,
machen to make,	bleiben to remain,
heißen to order, to call,	nennen to call.

*) These two definitions are to be carefully observed; for, in English, the verbal in *ing*, which is originally a participle, is frequently employed as *infinitive*, as in the above examples; and the infinitive of the future tense is used as a participle, as in: A copy of a letter *to be sent* to the ladies. *Goldsm.*

Das Leben lehrt uns weniger mit uns und Anderen streng sein. (G.) Ruhm und Tadel muß man ertragen lernen. (G.) Er hilft mir arbeiten. Ich lasse ihn arbeiten. Heiß mich nicht reden, heiß mich schweigen. (G.) Schnell wirst Du die Nothwendigkeit verschwinden und Recht in Unrecht sich verwandeln sehen. (Sch.) Hörst' ich das Pförtchen nicht gehn? (Sch.) Aurora fand mich schlafen. (G.) Ihr macht mich zittern. (Sch.)

The infinitive is moreover used in some idiomatic expressions, as: spazieren gehen, to take a walk; spazieren fahren, reiten, to take a ride; betteln gehen, to go a begging etc.

The infinitive, when used as a subject, frequently assumes the preposition zu (Supine); this is generally the case, when it is accompanied by objects, and when it takes its place after the predicate; e. g. Euch zu gefallen, war mein höchster Wunsch; Euch zu ergötzen, war mein letzter Zweck. (G.) Es ist eine Wollust, einen großen Mann zu sehen. (G.) Gibt's schönre Pflichten für ein edles Herz, als ein Bertheidiger der Unschuld sein, das Recht der Unterdrückten zu beschirmen? (Sch.) Wehe thut's, des Lebens kleine Bierden zu entbehren. (Sch.)

The *supine* (with zu) must be employed when the infinitive is an attribute or object (except after the verbs, above mentioned); e. g. die Hoffnung, ihn zu sehen (of seeing him); die Furcht, ihn zu beleidigen; die Kraft, Gutes zu thun; — ich hoffe, ihn zu sehen; ich fürchte, ihn zu beleidigen; ich vermag, Gutes zu thun. — Wer zu bereuen nicht erröthet, wird sich Reue nie ersparen. (Sch.) Es glaubt der Mensch, sein Leben zu leiten, sich selbst zu führen. (G.)

OBSERVATION. — It has been observed already §. 278, that after those verbs which require a preposition, as: an, über, auf, this preposition must, before the supine, be compounded with the demonstrative pronoun, as: daran, darüber, darauf &c.

The supine is employed after the prepositions: ohne, without; anstatt, instead of, and um, in order to; e. g.

man kann nicht leben, ohne zu athmen; anstatt zu arbeiten, geht er spazieren; er kam, um mich zu besuchen.

Participle.

The present and past participles are, in common 347 discourse, only employed when they are not enlarged by objects, and when they have the value

a. of an attributive adjective, qualifying a substantive — or

b. of an object of co-existence (*Gerund*, §. 321);
e. g. der schlafende Knabe; er lag schlafend im Gras; der zerbrochne Stab; ein gelungenes Gemälde; ich fand ihn malend; er kam weinend, erschrocken zu mir.

In more pathetic language the use of participles is not so limited; e. g. Ich zweifle nicht, daß ein Gesetz, ausdrücklich auf mich gemacht, verfaßt, mich zu verderben, sich gegen mich wird brauchen lassen. (Sch.) Sind sie nicht unser, diese Saaten, diese Ulmen, von Reben umspinnen? (Sch.) Dies alles bei mir denkend, schlief ich ein. (Sch.) Im schnellen Lauf durchzog ich Frankreich, das gepriesene Italien mit heißem Wunsche suchend. (Sch.) But such constructions are rather poetical, and must, in common prose, be transformed into accessory sentences.

Contracted accessory sentences.

The transformation of compound verbal constructions into accessory sentences has no difficulty, if the learner has been accustomed to distinguish the different grammatical relations, by which such contracted sentences are connected with the principal ones. It will, therefore, be sufficient to give some examples, arranged according to the different kinds of accessory sentences.

a. *Substantive accessory sentences.*

In such a sentence, as: she knew herself to be the cause of it — it is obvious that *'herself to be the cause*

of it, is the object of *knew*; in this compound expression we can distinguish a subject (*herself*), and a predicate (*to be the cause*), and the whole of it, having the value of a suffering object, must be transformed into a substantive accessory sentence: she knew that she was the cause of it.

Thus: I allow his sentiments to be wrong, must be translated: Ich gebe zu, daß seine Grundsätze falsch sind. If such a sentence be expressed in the passive form, as: his sentiments are allowed to be wrong, the principal sentence only, in German, is constructed in the passive form: es wird zugegeben, daß seine Grundsätze falsch sind. When the object contains a question, as: he knew not which way to go, he instructed her what to say, — it must be translated by an interrogative accessory sentence: er mußte nicht, welchen Weg er nehmen sollte; er lehrte sie, was sie sagen sollte.

Examples.

She made each person in the house do just what she pleased.	Sie machte, daß Jedermann im Hause thun mußte, was ihr gefiel.
He recollected his being undressed.	Er erinnerte sich, daß er nicht angezogen war.
You will excuse my speaking to you in my native language.	Sie werden entschuldigen, daß ich zu Ihnen in meiner Muttersprache spreche.
I have found my liveliest pleasures to arise from illusions.	Ich habe gefunden, daß meine lebhaftesten Freuden aus Täuschungen entspringen.
Their union was soon found to be disagreeable.	Es fand sich bald, daß ihre Verbindung unpassend war.
The letter-case was quickly known to belong to Mr. B.	Es wurde bald bekannt, daß die Briefftasche Herrn B. gehörte.
He seemed at a loss what to say, or whither to direct his way.	Er schien in Verlegenheit, was er sagen, oder wohin er gehen sollte.

I hesitated which alternative to choose.	Ich zweifelte, welche Wahl ich treffen sollte.
I cannot tell what to think of it.	Ich kann nicht sagen, was ich davon denken soll.

Sentences of this kind can also be governed by a substantive, or by a preposition.

The recollection of his having been in danger.	Der Gedanke, daß er in Gefahr gewesen.
He concluded with saying etc.	Er schloß damit, daß er sagte zc.
Jones felt more delight in having saved Sophia, than she herself received from being saved.	Jonas fühlte mehr Freude darüber, daß er Sophien gerettet hatte, als sie darüber, daß sie gerettet war.

b. *Adjective accessory sentences.*

Participles, attended by objects, are generally transformed into accessory sentences with a relative pronoun (*welcher* or *der*). 349

Examples.

The miseries, attending a youth of levity and extravagance	Das Elend, welches eine leichtsinnige und ausschweifende Jugend erwartet.
A virtuous man, struggling with misfortunes.	Ein tugendhafter Mann, der mit Mißgeschicken kämpft.
The favour, shown by Mr. A. to the foundling.	Die Gunst, die Herr A. dem Findling erwies.
I entered a ship bound for New-York.	Ich bestieg ein Schiff, das nach Neu-York bestimmt war.

This transformation, however, is only admitted, when the participle really qualifies the substantive; in all other cases it must be transformed into an adverbial accessory sentence, according to §. 350.

The infinitive passive is used in English as an attributive participle, and must, accordingly, be trans-

formed into an adjective sentence. As it denotes either possibility or necessity, one of the auxiliary verbs: können, sollen, or müssen must be added, or the supine of the active verb is used.

Examples.

Ambition is a thing, never to be satisfied.	Ehrgeiz ist ein Trieb, der nie befriedigt werden kann, or der nie zu befriedigen ist.
I embraced her with an ecstasy not to be described.	Ich umarmte sie mit einem Entzücken, das nicht zu beschreiben ist.
The copy of a letter to be sent to Mr. N.	Die Abschrift eines Briefes, der an Herrn N. geschickt werden soll.

c. Adverbial accessory sentences.

350 A contracted sentence, expressing *time, manner, causality, or co-existence*, is transformed into an accessory sentence with the conjunction, required in each particular case.

Examples.

This being resolved, my wife undertook to manage the business herself.	Nachdem dies beschlossen war, unternahm meine Frau, das Geschäft auszuführen.
Having spent some minutes on his knees, he was preparing to step into bed.	Nachdem er einige Minuten auf den Knien gelegen, wollte er zu Bette gehen.
Upon my going to church I entertained myself with —.	Als ich zur Kirche ging, unterhielt ich mich mit —.
While very young, he was taught reading.	Als er sehr jung war, hatte er lesen gelernt.
When at Boston, I had been accustomed to —.	Als ich in Boston war, hatte ich mich an — gewöhnt.

- She leaned upon his arm, as if still willing to receive assistance. Sie stützte sich auf seinen Arm, als ob sie noch Hülfe annehmen wollte.
- Showing a rare capacity for business, he was appointed Lord High Commissioner. Da er eine seltene Tüchtigkeit in Geschäften zeigte, wurde er zum königlichen Bevollmächtigten ernannt.
- The neighbours, hearing what was going forward, came flocking about us. Da die Nachbarn hörten, was vorging, so umringten sie uns schaarenweise.
- The horse was unfit for the road as wanting an eye. Das Pferd war untauglich, da es nur Ein Auge hatte.
- Disguising himself in the habit of a peasant, Codrus proceeded to the quarters of the enemy. Codrus ging in das feindliche Lager, indem er sich als Bauer verkleidete.
- My greatest struggle was to come, in facing my wife and daughters. I was determined, however, to anticipate their fury, by first falling into a passion myself. But upon entering, I found the family no way disposed for battle. My wife and girls were all in tears, Mr. Thornhill having been there to inform them, that their journey to town was entirely over. The two ladies, having heard reports of us from some malicious person, were that day set out for London. Mein größter Kampf sollte noch kommen, wenn ich meiner Frau und meinen Töchtern begegnete. Ich war jedoch entschlossen, ihrer Wuth zuvorzukommen, indem ich selbst zuerst in Zorn gerieth. Aber als ich eintrat, fand ich die Familie keineswegs zum Kampf geneigt. Meine Frau und Töchter waren sämmtlich in Thränen, da Herr Thornhill da gewesen war, um ihnen zu sagen, daß es mit der Reise nach der Stadt aus sei. Da die zwei Damen von einem böswilligen Menschen Schlechtes von uns erfahren hatten, so waren sie den Tag nach London abgereist.

Participles, expressing *co-existence*, are even transformed into co-ordinate principal sentences, if the sense allows it.

Examples.

<p>The Saracen, lifting up his sword, struck off the poor dwarf's arm; but the giant, coming to his assistance, in a short time left the two Saracens dead on the plain.</p>	<p>Der Sarazene schwang sein Schwert und hieb dem armen Zwerg den Arm ab; aber der Riese kam ihm zu Hülfe und ließ bald die zwei Sarazenen todt auf dem Schlachtfeld.</p>
--	---

CHAPTER XIX.

CO-ORDINATION.

351 When two sentences, although not dependent one upon the other, are connected in such a manner as to express only one thought, they are termed *Co-ordinate sentences*. The different relations of Co-ordination are denoted by Co-ordinative conjunctions, the use of which is explained in this chapter. But as most of them are employed and constructed in a manner entirely analogous to the English, it will be sufficient to point out only the difference between the two languages.

The *adversative conjunctions* *aber*, *allein*, *sondern*, and *hingegen*, although rendered in English by the same conjunction, *but*, differ one from another. *Aber* denotes the limitation of an *antecedent* by the *consequent* in the most indefinite manner, and implies only that the consequent is *different* from what is comprehended or supposed to be comprehended in the antecedent; e. g. Die Sinne trügen nicht, aber das Urtheil trügt. (G.) Der Haß

ist partiisch, aber die Liebe noch mehr. (Less.) Der Schwärmer thut oft sehr richtige Blicke in die Zukunft; aber er kann diese Zukunft nur nicht erwarten. (Less.) Niemand weiß, was er thut, wenn er recht handelt; aber des Unrechtes sind wir uns immer bewußt. (G.) Heilig achten wir die Geister, aber Namen sind uns Dunst; würdig ehren wir die Meister, aber frei ist uns die Kunst. (Uhl.)

Allein and doch limit the *antecedent* by expressing a *negation* of what might be inferred or concluded from the antecedent; e. g. Er ist sehr reich (und könnte wol Gutes thun); allein er ist geizig. Er will deutsch lernen; allein er findet keinen Lehrer. Das, was geschehen ist, kränkt mich nicht so tief; allein das kränkt mich, was es nur bedeutet. (G.) Gern erkenn' ich an, Du willst mein Wohl; allein verlange nicht, daß ich auf Deinem Weg es finden soll. (Sch.) Der Krieg ist schrecklich, wie des Himmels Plagen; doch er ist gut, ist ein Geschick, wie sie. (Sch.) Leicht bei einander wohnen die Gedanken, doch hart im Raume stoßen sich die Sachen. (Sch.) Der Deutsche ehrt in allen Zeiten der Fürsten heiligen Beruf; doch liebt er frei einherzuschreiten, und aufrecht, wie ihn Gott erschuf. (Uhl.)

Aber may always be employed instead of allein and doch, but not *vice versa*.

Hingegen and dagegen denote a contrast of two thoughts which, however, do not limit or contradict each other; jedoch and indessen are employed like the English *however*; e. g. Der Poet vergeudet die ihm verliehene Gabe im Genuß, um Genuß hervorzubringen; der Prophet hingegen sieht nur auf einen einzigen bestimmten Zweck. (G.) Antonio geht frei umher und spricht mit seinem Fürsten; Tasso bleibt dagegen verbannt in seinem Zimmer und allein. (G.)

The conjunction *sondern* requires particular attention, being peculiar to the German language. *Sondern* is only employed, when the consequent sentence asserts in a positive manner, what was expressed negatively in the *antecedent*; e. g. Er ist nicht ein Eng- 352

länder, sondern ein Franzose. Ich habe nicht geschlafen, sondern gearbeitet. Sie wagten sich nicht in die Nähe des Feindes, sondern kehrten unverrichteter Sachen zurück. (Sch.)

The above definition shows, that *sondern* must always be preceded by a negative sentence, but a negative sentence is not always followed by *sondern*; for we say, e. g. *er ist kein Engländer, aber er spricht englisch*; *ich habe gut geschlafen und doch bin ich müde*, because in these examples the consequent sentence contains something entirely different from the antecedent.

353 The conjunctions *doch* and *dennoch* are used to express by way of co-ordination, what is denoted by *obgleich* &c., *though*, and an accessory sentence (§. 319), viz. that some effect is not in conformity, but in opposition to a cause or motive. When the consequent sentence contains the cause or motive, it takes *doch*, which is then unaccented and has the place of an adverb; but when the consequent contains the effect, it takes *dennoch*. In the latter case *doch* may also be employed, but it is accentuated and generally takes the first place. Thus the sentences: *he was in the company, though he had not been invited*; *he mistrusts me, though I gave him proofs of my affection*, can be translated in two different ways: *er war in der Gesellschaft und war doch nicht eingeladen*; or: *er war nicht eingeladen, und dennoch (doch) kam er in die Gesellschaft. Er trauet mir nicht, und ich habe ihm doch Beweise meiner Freundschaft gegeben*; or: *ich habe ihm Beweise meiner Freundschaft gegeben, und dennoch traut er mir nicht*.

OBSERVATION. — *Doch* is employed elliptically, when the speaker passes over to another object; e. g. *Man könnte über diese Sache viel sagen, doch, das gehört nicht hierher, or doch, laßt uns von etwas Anderm reden*. — *Doch* has the same adverbative signification in many expressions, in which it is rather an adverb of *modality* than a *conjunction*, implying a more intense mode of affirming or asking; in these cases it cannot be translated into English; e. g. *er geht doch (accented) mit uns, he does go with us. Ihr eilet ja, als wenn*

ihr Flügel hättet, wartet doch. (Sch.) Waret Ihr doch sonst so froh. (Sch.) Das ist doch seltsam. (Sch.)

Sonst and es sei denn, daß (with the conjunctive) denote a conditional negation, like, *else* and *unless*. They must be distinguished like doch and dennoch; e. g. Du mußt sparen, sonst wirst du darben. — Du wirst darben, es sei denn, daß du sparest. Das Wahre muß gleich genutzt werden, sonst ist es nicht da. (G.) Instead of es sei denn, daß, which expression is not very usual, the adverb denn is also employed; e. g. Niemand soll lange Reden komponiren, um die Leute zu beschämen; er müßte sie denn vor dem Spiegel halten wollen. (G.)

The causal conjunction denn (*for*) denotes that the 354 clause, which it introduces, is the *ground* upon which the *antecedent* is founded; e. g. Er ist schuldig, denn er hat das Verbrechen eingestanden (*he is guilty, for he has confessed his crime*). So in the following sentence: Vorwärts mußt Du; denn rückwärts kannst Du nun nicht mehr.

The causal conjunctions also, folglich, accordingly, consequently; daher, therefore; deswegen, deshalb, on account of that; darum, for that purpose; demnach accordingly etc., are employed, generally speaking, like the corresponding conjunctions in English; e. g. Die größte Wahrscheinlichkeit der Erfüllung läßt noch einen Zweifel zu; daher ist das Gehoffte, wenn es in die Wirklichkeit tritt, jederzeit überraschend. (G.)

Final observations on the latter conjunctions:

a) For the sake of giving greater prominence to the clause denoted by weil, one of the conjunctions darum, deshalb, deswegen, daher may also be inserted into the *antecedent* (i. e. the *principal* clause) of the sentence; e. g. Ich thue es darum (deshalb u.), weil es meine Pflicht ist, *I am doing it, because it is my duty (I should do so)*.

b) The *moral ground* in particular is denoted by deswegen, deshalb (*on account of that*) and the *purpose* or

368 Syntax of the Compound sentence. Co-ordination.

final cause by *darum* (*therefore, for that purpose*); e. g. Seine Tochter ist krank, er bleibt deswegen or deshalb zu Hause (*his daughter is ill, on that account he stays at home*). Ich will sie befreien, darum bin ich hier (*I will free her, for that purpose I am here*); cf. §. 340.

I N D E X.

A.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>Über §. 182.</p> <p>Abstract substantives §. 38.</p> <p>Accessory sentences §. 27. 325.</p> <p>— — their construction §. 187. 326.</p> <p>— — their different kinds §. 327.</p> <p>Accusative case §. 260.</p> <p>— — governed by prepositions §. 176.</p> <p>— — — by verbs and adjectives §. 260. 276.</p> <p>— — expressive of the factitive relation §. 282.</p> <p>— — — of time §. 302. 306.</p> <p>Adjective-pronouns §. 137.</p> <p>— sentences §. 234. 327. 329.</p> <p>— — used subst. §. 332.</p> <p>Adjectives §. 24. 40. 127.</p> <p>— their comparison §. 135.</p> <p>— their declension §. 129.</p> <p>— governing the accusative §. 276.</p> <p>— — the dative §. 269.</p> <p>— — the genitive §. 275.</p> <p>— attributive §. 235.</p> <p>— primary derivative §. 51. 57.</p> <p>— secondary — §. 53. 56.</p> <p>— standing after substantives §. 236.</p> <p>— used substantively §. 133.</p> | <p>Adverbs §. 25. 41. 48. 166.</p> <p>— of frequency §. 173.</p> <p>— of intensity §. 172.</p> <p>— of manner §. 167. 309.</p> <p>— of mood §. 174.</p> <p>— of locality §. 169. 297.</p> <p>— of time §. 170. 307.</p> <p>— of causality §. 171.</p> <p>— used as predicate §. 201.</p> <p>— their comparison §. 167.</p> <p>Adverbial objects §. 247.</p> <p>— pronouns §. 137.</p> <p>— sentences §. 327. 334.</p> <p>— — causal §. 340.</p> <p>— — comparative §. 337.</p> <p>Adverbial sentences concessive §. 342.</p> <p>— — conditional §. 341.</p> <p>— — of manner §. 337.</p> <p>— — of locality §. 334.</p> <p>— — of time §. 335.</p> <p>Affixes §. 53.</p> <p>The affix bar §. 57.</p> <p>— — <i>chen</i> „ 54.</p> <p>— — <i>e</i> „ 55.</p> <p>— — <i>ei</i> „ 55.</p> <p>— — <i>en</i> „ 57.</p> <p>— — <i>er</i> „ 54.</p> <p>— — <i>ig, icht</i> „ 57.</p> <p>— — <i>in</i> „ 54.</p> <p>— — <i>isch</i> „ 57.</p> <p>— — <i>haft</i> „ 57.</p> |
|--|--|

- The affix *heit* (*feit*) §. 55.
 — — *lein* „ 54.
 — — *lich* „ 57.
 — — *ling* „ 54.
 — — *niß* „ 55.
 — — *sal* „ 55.
 — — *sam* „ 57.
 — — *schaft* „ 55.
 — — *sel* „ 55.
 — — *thum* „ 55.
 — — *ung* „ 56.
All all §. 161.
All every §. 162.
Allein, conjunction §. 351.
 — in construction §. 188.
Als §. 180.
 — (*as*) §. 180.
 — expressive of the factitive relation (*as*) §. 286.
 — (*when*) §. 335.
 — (*than*) §. 338.
 — (*but*) §. 338.
Als daß §. 339.
Als ob, als wenn §. 337.
Also manner §. 337.
Am with the superlative §. 167.
An §. 175.
 — expressive of the genitive relation §. 277.
 — — of the argument §. 315.
 — — of manner §. 310.
Under §. 165.
Underhalb §. 159.
Any §. 155.
 Ancient form of conjugation §. 69. 78.
 — — of declension §. 110.
 — — of the inflection of adjectives §. 129.
 Apposition §. 237.
 Articles definite and indefinite §. 43.
 — their declension §. 140.
 — their use §. 119.
As §. 338. 340.
 — such as §. 331.
 As much more §. 163. Obs.
 As soon as §. 335.
 Attribute §. 24. 233.
 Attribute expressive by prepos. §. 244.
 — — in the genitive case §. 239.
 Attributive accessory sentence §. 27. 330.
 — — combination §. 233.
Auf §. 277. loc. 294. 295.
 — expressive of the genitive relation §. 277.
 — — — of manner §. 310.
 — with the superlative §. 167.
 Augment (*ge*) in derivation §. 51.
 — in the past participle §. 71. 90.
Aus loc. §. 291.
 — expressive of materials §. 314.
 — — motive §. 316.
 — — argument §. 315.
Ausgenommen §. 322.
 Auxiliary verbs §. 24. 42.
 — — of mood §. 32.
 — — of tenses, conjugated §. 75.
 — — omitted §. 76.
 — — for the perfect and pluperfect tenses of intransitive verbs §. 91.
- B.**
- Bald* §. 307.
Be prefix §. 261.
Bei co-exist. §. 323.
 — local §. 293. 294, time 303.
Beide §. 164.
Bevor §. 336.
Binnen time §. 302.
Bis, prep. §. 306.
 — conj. §. 336.
- C.**
- Cardinal numerals §. 157.
 Cases §. 26.
 Causative verbs §. 260.
 Causal sentences §. 340.
 Causality §. 311.

- Change of the radical vowel §. 51.
 Change of the radical vowel in conjugation §. 69.
 Co-existence §. 254. 320.
 — access. sentence of §. 344.
 Collective nouns §. 38.
 — their formation §. 55.
 Common names §. 38.
 Comparative degree of adjective §. 137.
 — — — of adverbs §. 167.
 — sentences §. 337. 338.
 Comparison of adjectives §. 135.
 — — — irregular §. 136.
 — of adverbs §. 167.
 Completing objects §. 247.
 Composition §. 50. 58.
 Compound sentences §. 27.
 — tenses §. 75.
 — verbs, separable and inseparable §. 61—64.
 — nouns §. 59.
 — adjectives §. 60.
 — verbs §. 61.
 Concessive sentences §. 342.
 Concrete nouns §. 38.
 Conditional mood §. 34.
 — — its use §. 226.
 — sentences §. 341.
 Conjugation §. 66. 69.
 — ancient and modern §. 69.
 — ancient §. 78—90.
 — irregular §. 88.
 Conjunctions §. 28. 47. 178.
 — adversative §. 182.
 — causal §. 182.
 — co-ordinative §. 181.
 — copulative §. 182.
 — subordinative §. 179.
 Conjunctive adverbs §. 181.
 Conjunctive mood §. 34.
 — — — its use §. 228. 231.
 Consonants §. 7.
 — doubled §. 5.
 — final §. 9.
 Construction §. 185.
 — direct and inverted §. 187. 188.
- Construction of accessory sentences §. 187. 326.
 — of the objective combination §. 256.
 Contracted sentences §. 28. 324.
 Co-ordination §. 28. 324—351.
 Co-ordinative conjunctions §. 181.
 Copula §. 42. 184.
 Copulative conjunctions §. 182.
- D.**
- Da, adverb §. 169. 170.
 — conjunction of time §. 335.
 — — cause §. 340.
 Dagegen §. 351.
 Daher §. 354.
 Damit §. 343.
 Dann §. 170.
 Daran, dabei *ic.* §. 142.
 Darum §. 354.
 Daß §. 149.
 Daß §. 328. 340. 343.
 — omitted §. 328.
 Dative case §. 264.
 — — of the possessor §. 271.
 — — expressed by prepositions §. 272.
 Declension of nouns §. 110.
 — of articles §. 110. 140.
 — of cardinal numerals §. 158.
 — of *der, die, das* §. 140.
 — of *derjenige* and *derselbe* §. 126.
 — of foreign substantives §. 112.
 — of indefinite numerals §. 160.
 — of pronouns §. 138—141.
 — — — demonstrative §. 127.
 — — — indefinite §. 155.
 — — — personal §. 138.
 — — — possessive §. 139.
 — of proper names §. 118.
 — of substantives §. 110.
 — — — ancient and modern §. 110.
 — of *welcher* §. 141.
 — of *wer* and *was* §. 141.
 Definite article. See *Article*.

Definite numerals §. 157.
 Demonstrative pronouns §. 140.
 147.
 Denn §. 354.
 Dennoch §. 353.
 Der, die, das, article §. 119.
 — — — demonstrative pronoun
 noun §. 149.
 — — — relative pronoun §. 151.
 330. 332.
 — — — their respective de-
 clension. See *Declension*.
 Derivation §. 50.
 — of verbs §. 52.
 — of words §. 50.
 Derjenige, declined §. 140.
 — welcher he who §. 151.
 Derivatives, primary §. 50.
 — secondary §. 50.
 Derselbe §. 151.
 Deshalb §. 354.
 Desto §. 338.
 Deswegen §. 354.
 Dies §. 148.
 Dieser §. 148.
 Dimidiative numerals §. 159.
 Diminutives §. 54.
 Diphthongs §. 2.
 Direct construction §. 187.
 Doch §. 342. 351. 353.
 Dort §. 169.
 Double consonants §. 7.
 Draußen, droben, drunten §. 169.
 Duration of time §. 306.
 Durch loc. §. 294.
 — as a prefix §. 63.
 — expressive of means §. 313.
 Dürfen its use §. 215. 219.
 — its conjugation §. 89.

E.

Ë, the vowel, dropped in the
 signs of conjugation §. 74.
 — — — — of declension
 §. 111.
 Each §. 162.
 Each other §. 145.

Ëhe §. 336.
 Ein, article §. 30.
 — indefinite pronoun §. 155.
 — numeral §. 157.
 Einander each other §. 145.
 Einige some §. 162.
 Einer von beiden §. 164.
 Einmal, einst §. 307.
 Either §. 164.
 Endlich §. 154.
 Entlang §. 177.
 Entweder — oder §. 155.
 Es §. 138. 143
 — used as predicate §. 301.
 Etliche §. 160.
 Etwa §. 165.
 Etwas §. 155. 162.
 Every §. 162.
 Every body §. 155.

F.

Factitive object §. 252. 280.
 Folglich §. 354.
 For Prepos. §. 175. Conjunct.
 182.
 Foreign substantives, their de-
 clension §. 112.
 — — their gender §. 109.
 Fractional numerals §. 159.
 Frequentative substantives §. 55.
 From §. 175.
 Für purpose §. 272. 285. 317.
 Future tense §. 72. 76, its use
 221.

G.

Geben, es gibt there are §. 211.
 Gegen towards §. 272. about,
 time 302. against 319.
 — against §. 319.
 Gemäß §. 177.
 Gender of substantives §. 97.
 — of foreign nouns §. 109.
 — of names of countries and
 places, seasons, months and
 days §. 96 *Note*.

Genitive, adverbial §. 310 *Obs.*
 — attributive §. 239.
 — — its construction §. 243.
 — — expressed by prepositions §. 277.
 — of manner §. 310.
 — objective §. 251. 274.
 — predicative §. 198.
 — of time §. 302.
Wern §. 168. 216.
 — its comparative and superlative §. 168.
Gerund §. 320. 321.

H.

Haben §. 68.
 — its conjugation §. 75.
 — its use with intransitive verbs §. 91.
 — omitted §. 76.
Halb §. 159.
Halben §. 177.
 He, who §. 151. 333.
Her, hin §. 169.
 — — — and their compounds §. 297.
Hieran, hierbei &c. §. 142.
Hinter §. 294.
 — as a prefix §. 62.
 Historical tenses §. 222.
Höchst §. 136. 172.
Höchstens §. 172.

I.

Imperative mood §. 66. 70.
 — — — its termination dropped in the singular §. 79.
 — — — its use §. 231.
 Imperfect tense §. 66.
 — — — in the ancient and in the modern form §. 69.
 — — — its use §. 223.
 Impersonal verbs §. 209.
In loc. 293, time §. 301. 305. 306.

In expressive of the factitive relation §. 284.
In, co-exist. §. 323.
Indem { §. 344.
Indeß, indeffen }
Innerhalb §. 177, time §. 302.
 Indefinite article. See *Article*.
 — numerals §. 160.
 — pronouns §. 155.
 Indicative mood §. 34. 66.
 — — — its use §. 226.
 Infinitive §. 67.
 — its use §. 346.
 — instead of the past participle §. 90.
 — substantive-infinitives §. 56.
 — with *zu*. See *Supine*.
 Inseparable compound verbs §. 62.
 Interjections §. 49.
 Interrogative pronouns. See *Pronouns*.
 — — sentences §. 213.
 Intransitive verbs §. 37.
 Inverted construction §. 188.
Je — desto §. 338.
Jeder §. 162.
Jedweder §. 160 *Note*.
Jedermann §. 155.
Jeglicher §. 160 *Note*.
Jemand §. 155.
Jener §. 127.
Jenseits §. 177.
Jetzt §. 170.

K.

Keiner §. 160. 165.
Können its use §. 215.
 — its conjugation §. 89.
Kraft prep. §. 177.
Kürzlich §. 170.

L.

Längst §. 177.
Längft §. 170.

Laffen §. 218.
 Laut prep. §. 318.
 Heute §. 125 *Obs.* 1.
 Little (quantity) §. 163.
 Locality §. 290.

M.

Man one indefinite §. 156.
 Manche some §. 162.
 Manner, adverbs of §. 309.
 — object of §. 309.
 Many §. 163.
 Mehr more §. 163.
 Mehrere several §. 163.
 Miß §. 62.
 Mit Dat. §. 272.
 — co-exist. §. 323.
 — expressive of the genitive
 relation §. 278.
 — — — of manner §. 310.
 Modality of the predicate §. 213.
 Modified vowels §. 2.
 — — in comparison §. 135.
 — — in conjugation §. 70. 86.
 — — in declension of nouns
 §. 111. 116.
 — — in derivation §. 53.
 Mögen its use §. 215. 219.
 — its conjugation §. 89.
 Mood §. 34. 66.
 Moods, their use §. 226.
 Much §. 163.
 Multiplicative numerals §. 159.
 Müssen its use §. 217. 219.
 — its conjugation §. 89.

N.

Nach Gen. §. 277, local. §. 293.
 — time §. 305
 — manner §. 310.
 — according to §. 318.
 Nachdem §. 336.
 Nächst §. 177.
 Names of materials §. 38.
 — of measure after numerals
 §. 126.

Names of nations §. 54.
 Neben §. 176.
 Negative sentence §. 213.
 Neulich §. 170.
 Nichts §. 155.
 Niemand §. 155.
 Noch §. 307.
 Nominative case §. 130.
 — — expressive of the factitive
 relation §. 282.
 None §. 165.
 Notions and notional words §. 23.
 Nouns §. 22, their kinds §. 38.
 — primary derivative §. 51.
 — secondary derivative §. 53.
 — their gender §. 97.
 — — declension §. 110.
 Numerals §. 45. 157.

O.

Ob, conjunction §. 328.
 Oberhalb §. 177.
 Obgleich, obgleich, obwohl §. 342.
 Objective combination §. 25. 246.
 — — — its construction §. 256.
 — — — accessory sentence
 §. 27.
 — — — verbs and adjectives
 §. 36. 247.
 Of §. 175.
 — when to be translated by
 von, and when by the geni-
 tive case §. 239. 240. 241.
 — is not translated §. 238. 242.
 Ohne §. 310. 323.
 — with the supine §. 323.
 — daß §. 344.
 On §. 175.
 One, numeral §. 158.
 — indefinite pronoun §. 156.
 Ordinal numerals §. 157.
 Other §. 165.

P.

Paar (ein), a pair, a few §. 242.
 Participles §. 67.

- Participles, their construction §. 347.
 Partitive genitive §. 241.
 Passive voice, its formation §. 77.
 — — its use §. 203.
 Past participle, its formation §. 69.
 — — — with the augment *ge*,
 and without it §. 71.
 — tenses, their use §. 221.
 Perfect, its use §. 224.
 Personal object §. 250. 264.
 — pronouns §. 143.
 — — contracted with *wegen*
 §. 177.
 Plural number of nouns §. 124.
 Point of time §. 301.
 Possessive pronouns §. 146.
 Predicate §. 21. 184. 194.
 Predicative adjective §. 127.
 — combination §. 24.
 — genitive §. 195. 198.
 Prefixes §. 62. 63.
 Prepositions §. 46. 175.
 — before the supine §. 346.
 — cases governed by them
 §. 175. 176.
 — contracted with the definite
 article §. 175.
 — — with pronouns §. 142.
 — expressive of the predicative
 relation §. 200.
 — — of the attributive relation
 (after substantives) §. 244
 Present tense, its use §. 221.
 Primary derivatives, nouns and
 adjectives §. 51.
 Principal sentences §. 186.
 — — their construction §. 187.
 Pronouns §. 44. 137.
 — demonstrative §. 140. 147.
 — indefinite §. 155.
 — interrogative §. 141. 153.
 — personal §. 138. 143.
 — possessive §. 139. 146.
 — reflective §. 144
 — relative §. 151.
 — contracted with prepositions
 §. 142.
- Pronouns in construction §. 259.
 — their inflection. See *Declen-
 sion*.
 Proper names §. 38.
 — — their declension §. 118.
 — — of countries and places,
 their gender §. 96 *Note*.
 — — — — in apposition
 to their common names §. 238.
- R.**
- Reflective pronouns §. 144.
 — verbs §. 205.
 Reiterative numerals §. 159.
 Relations and relational words
 §. 23.
 — of mood §. 34.
 — of notions one to another
 §. 23.
 — to the speaker §. 29. 31.
 — of number §. 30.
 — of personality §. 30.
 — of time §. 31.
 — of limitation §. 30.
 — of modality §. 32.
 Relative pronouns §. 151.
 — — not omitted in German
 §. 329.
 Roots §. 50.
- S.**
- Same §. 151.
Sammt §. 177.
Schon §. 307.
 Secondary derivatives §. 52.
 — substantives §. 53—56.
 — — their gender §. 97.
Sein, to be §. 24.
 — its conjugation §. 75.
 — its use in the conjugation
 of intransitive verbs §. 91.
 — its use with the supine §. 76.
Seit, preposition §. 306.
 — conjunction *seitdem* §. 336.
Selbst §. 144.

Sentence §. 21.
 — accessory §. 324.
 Separable compound verbs §. 64.
 Several §. 163.
 Sid) §. 144.
 So, demonstrative adverb §. 337.
 — adverb of intensity (*tam*) §. 338.
 — conjunction §. 340. 341. 342.
 So — als, as — as §. 338.
 So — daß, so — as §. 339.
 Sowol — als §. 182.
 So, when used as predicate §. 201.
 Sobald als §. 335.
 Solcher §. 150.
 Sollen its use §. 217. 219.
 — its conjugation §. 88.
 Some §. 163.
 Sondern §. 352.
 Sonst, time §. 307. else §. 353.
 Statt §. 177.
 Stehen, used as copula §. 200.
 Subject of the sentence §. 21. 184.
 — — — — expressed by an infinitive or by a supine §. 346.
 — — — — omitted §. 159.
 Subjective accessory sentence §. 27.
 — — verbs §. 36. 247.
 Subordination of the accessory sentence §. 27.
 — of the objective factors in construction §. 258.
 Subordinative conjunctions §. 179.
 Substantive-infinitives §. 56.
 — pronouns §. 137.
 — sentences §. 327. 328.
 — adjective §. 127.
 Substantives in apposition §. 237.
 — their declension. See *Declension*.
 — of two forms of the plural number §. 117.
 — of two genders §. 107.
 — used only in the plural number §. 125.

Substantives used only in the singular number §. 124.
 — verbal §. 56.
 Such §. 150.
 — is not used as predicate §. 201.
 — as §. 152.
 Suffering object §. 249. 260.
 Superlative of adjectives §. 135.
 — of adverbs §. 167.
 — used predicatively §. 197.
 Supine §. 67.
 — after ohne §. 323.
 — after verbs expressing knowledge or opinion etc §. 289.
 — in construction §. 190.
 — its use §. 346.
 — with haben and sein §. 67.

T.

Tenses §. 66.
 — compound §. 76.
 — their use §. 221.
 There is es gibt §. 211.
 Time, obj. of §. 300.
 Titles, their declension §. 238.
 To §. 175.
 Too — to §. 339.
 Transitive verb §. 37. 202. 260.
 Troß §. 319.

U.

Ueber loc. §. 294.
 — as a prefix §. 63.
 — as a preposition of time §. 305.
 — expressive of cause §. 312.
 — — of the genitive relation §. 277.
 Um Gen. §. 277, loc. §. 294.
 — as a prefix §. 63.
 — as a preposition of time §. 301. 302.
 — with the supine §. 346.
 Um — willen §. 316.

Um — wissen contracted with
personal pronouns §. 177.
Un in composition §. 59. 60.
Ungeachtet §. 319.
Unter loc. §. 294. time 303.
— as a prefix §. 63.
— coexist §. 323.
Unterhalb §. 177.
Unweit §. 177.

V.

Variative numerals §. 159.
Verbs §. 22. 65.
— auxiliary. See *Auxiliary verbs*.
— causative §. 260.
— derivative §. 52.
— governing the accusative §. 260.
— — the dative §. 264.
— — the genitive §. 275.
— impersonal §. 209.
— inseparable compound §. 62. 63.
— intransitive §. 37.
— radical §. 50.
— reflective §. 205.
— relational §. 42.
— separable compound §. 64.
— transitive §. 37.
— nouns §. 56.
Verbals §. 345.
Verbal Nouns §. 56.
Vermittelt §. 313.
Vermöge §. 318.
Viel much, many §. 163.
Vielleicht §. 174. 219.
Voll as a prefix §. 62.
Von §. 175.
— locality §. 291.
— cause §. 312. 315.
— materials §. 314.
— expressive of the predicative
relation §. 199.
— — of the attributive relation
§. 240. 241.
— — of the objective genitive
relation §. 277.
— with the passive voice §. 273.
Vor 175. loc. §. 294. dat. §. 277.

Vor time §. 304.
— cause §. 312.
Vowels §. 2.
— changed §. 69. 78.
— dropped §. 74.
— long and short §. 4.
— modified §. 2.

W.

Während, preposition §. 303.
— conjunction §. 344.
Wann §. 335.
Was §. 153.
— its declension §. 141.
— — use §. 332.
Was für Einer §. 154.
Wegen contracted with personal
pronouns §. 177.
— expressive of motive §. 316.
— — cause §. 312.
Weil §. 340.
— expressive of time §. 344
Note.
Welcher §. 151.
— in adjective sentences §. 151.
152. 329.
Welch einer §. 154.
Wenig, weniger few, little §. 163.
Wenigstens §. 172.
Wenn time §. 335.
— condit. §. 341.
— omitted §. 341.
Wenn auch, wenn gleich, wenn
schon §. 342.
Wer, its declension §. 141.
— its use in adjective sentences
§. 332.
— der he who §. 152.
— auch whoever §. 342.
Werden §. 76.
— its conjugation §. 77.
— its use in the formation of
the future tenses §. 76.
— — — — of the passive
voice §. 77.
Whole §. 161.
Wider §. 319.

- Wider** as a prefix §. 62.
Wie like §. 310.
 — in comparative adverbial sentences §. 337.
Wissen, its conjugation §. 89.
Wo §. 334.
Wobei, *worin* &c. §. 142.
Woher and *wohin* §. 334.
Wol §. 219.
Wollen its use §. 217. 219.
 — its conjugation §. 89.
Words, notional and relational §. 32.
 — derivative §. 50.
 — foreign. See *Foreign words*.

Z.

- Zu**, adverb of intensity (*too*) §. 339.
 — preposition, local. §. 293. 295.
 — time §. 301.
 — manner §. 310.
 — purpose §. 317.
 — — as sign of the supine §. 67.
 — — expressive of the factitive relation §. 283.
 — — of manner §. 310.
Zufolge §. 318.
Zuwider §. 319.
Zwischen §. 294.



